

Manual

bintec Rxxx2/RTxxx2

Reference

Copyright© Version 7.0, 2013 Teldat GmbH

Legal Notice

Aim and purpose

This document is part of the user manual for the installation and configuration of Teldat devices. For the latest information and notes on the current software release, please also read our release notes, particularly if you are updating your software to a higher release version. You will find the latest release notes under www.teldat.de.

Liability

This manual has been put together with the greatest possible care. However, the information contained in this manual is not a guarantee of the properties of your product. Teldat GmbH is only liable within the terms of its conditions of sale and supply and accepts no liability for technical inaccuracies and/or omissions.

The information in this manual can be changed without notice. You will find additional information and also release notes for Teldat devices under www.teldat.de.

Teldat devices make WAN connections as a possible function of the system configuration. You must monitor the product in order to avoid unwanted charges. Teldat GmbH accepts no responsibility for data loss, unwanted connection costs and damage caused by unintended operation of the product.

Trademarks

Teldat trademarks and the Teldat logo, bintec trademarks and the bintec logo, elmeg trademarks and the elmeg logo are registered trademarks of Teldat GmbH.

Company and product names mentioned are usually trademarks of the companies or manufacturers concerned.

Copyright

All rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced or further processed in any way without the written consent of Teldat GmbH. The documentation may not be processed and, in particular, translated without the consent of Teldat GmbH.

You will find information on guidelines and standards in the declarations of conformity under www.teldat.de.

How to reach Teldat GmbH

Teldat GmbH, Südwestpark 94, D-90449 Nuremberg, Germany, Phone: +49 911 9673 0, Fax: +49 911 688 07 25

Teldat France S.A.S., 6/8 Avenue de la Grande Lande, F-33174 Gradignan, France, Phone: +33 5 57 35 63 00, Fax: +33 5 56 89 14 05

Internet: www.teldat.de

Table of Contents

Chapter 1	Introduction	1
Chapter 2	About this guide.	3
Chapter 3	Installation.	6
3.1	Setting up and connecting	6
3.2	Cleaning.	8
3.3	Support information	9
Chapter 4	Reset	10
Chapter 5	Technical data	11
5.1	Scope of supply	11
5.2	General Product Features	13
5.3	LEDs	23
5.4	Connectors	25
5.5	Pin Assignments	29
5.5.1	Serial interface	29
5.5.2	Ethernet interface.	29
5.5.3	ADSL interface	30
5.5.4	SHDSL interface	31
5.5.5	VDSL2 interface	32
5.5.6	ISDN-PRI interface	32
5.5.7	ISDN BRI interface	33
5.5.8	FXS interface	34
5.6	WEEE information	35

Chapter 6	Variable switching of S0 interfaces	37
6.1	Switching the S0 interfaces from external to internal	37
Chapter 7	Basic configuration	41
7.1	Presettings	41
7.1.1	Preconfigured data	41
7.1.2	Software update	41
7.2	System requirements	42
7.3	Preparation	42
7.3.1	Gathering data	42
7.3.2	Configuring a PC	44
7.4	Modify system password.	45
7.5	Setting up an internet connection	46
7.5.1	Internet connection over internal ADSL modem	46
7.5.2	Other internet connections	47
7.5.3	Testing the configuration.	47
7.6	Software Update	47
Chapter 8	Access and configuration.	49
8.1	Access Options.	49
8.1.1	Access via LAN	49
8.1.2	Access via the Serial Interface	52
8.1.3	Access over ISDN	54
8.2	Login	54
8.2.1	User names and passwords in ex works state	55
8.2.2	Logging in for Configuration	55
8.3	Configuration options	56

8.3.1	GUI (Graphical User Interface)	57
8.3.2	SNMP shell	66
8.4	BOOTmonitor	66
Chapter 9	Assistants	69
Chapter 10	System Management.	70
10.1	Status.	70
10.2	Global Settings	73
10.2.1	System	73
10.2.2	Passwords.	75
10.2.3	Date and Time	77
10.2.4	System Licences	82
10.3	Interface Mode / Bridge Groups	84
10.3.1	Interfaces	86
10.4	Administrative Access	89
10.4.1	Access	89
10.4.2	SSH	91
10.4.3	SNMP.	95
10.5	Remote Authentication	96
10.5.1	RADIUS	96
10.5.2	TACACS+	102
10.5.3	Options	105
10.6	Certificates	106
10.6.1	Certificate List	107
10.6.2	CRLs	116
10.6.3	Certificate Servers	118
Chapter 11	Physical Interfaces	119

11.1	AUX	119
11.1.1	AUX	119
11.2	Ethernet Ports	122
11.2.1	Port Configuration	123
11.3	ISDN Ports	125
11.3.1	ISDN Configuration	125
11.3.2	MSN Configuration	134
11.4	DSL Modem	137
11.4.1	DSL Configuration	137
11.5	SHDSL	141
11.5.1	SHDSL Configuration	141
Chapter 12	LAN	145
12.1	IP Configuration	145
12.1.1	Interfaces	145
12.2	VLAN	149
12.2.1	VLANs	151
12.2.2	Port Configuration	152
12.2.3	Administration	152
Chapter 13	Wireless LAN Controller	154
13.1	Wizard	154
13.1.1	Basic Settings	155
13.1.2	Radio Profile	156
13.1.3	Wireless Network	156
13.1.4	Start automatic installation	158
13.2	Controller Configuration	160
13.2.1	General	160
13.3	Slave AP configuration	162

13.3.1	Slave Access Points	163
13.3.2	Radio Profiles	167
13.3.3	Wireless Networks (VSS)	174
13.4	Monitoring	181
13.4.1	Active Clients	181
13.4.2	Wireless Networks (VSS)	182
13.4.3	Load Balancing	182
13.4.4	Neighbor APs	183
13.4.5	Rogue APs	184
13.4.6	Rogue Clients	185
13.5	Maintenance	186
13.5.1	Firmware Maintenance	186
Chapter 14	Networking	189
14.1	Routes	189
14.1.1	IPv4 Routes	189
14.1.2	IPv4 Routing Table	195
14.1.3	Options	196
14.2	NAT.	197
14.2.1	NAT Interfaces	197
14.2.2	NAT Configuration	199
14.3	Load Balancing.	205
14.3.1	Load Balancing Groups	205
14.3.2	Special Session Handling	209
14.4	QoS	213
14.4.1	QoS Filter	213
14.4.2	QoS Classification	216
14.4.3	QoS Interfaces/Policies	219
14.5	Access Rules	226
14.5.1	Access Filter	228

14.5.2	Rule Chains	232
14.5.3	Interface Assignment	233
14.6	Drop In	235
14.6.1	Drop In Groups	235
Chapter 15	Routing Protocols	239
15.1	RIP	239
15.1.1	RIP Interfaces	239
15.1.2	RIP Filter	241
15.1.3	RIP Options	244
15.2	OSPF	246
15.2.1	Areas	248
15.2.2	Interfaces	250
15.2.3	Global Settings	252
Chapter 16	Multicast	254
16.1	General	255
16.1.1	General	256
16.2	IGMP	256
16.2.1	IGMP	257
16.2.2	Options	259
16.3	Forwarding	261
16.3.1	Forwarding	261
16.4	PIM	262
16.4.1	PIM Interfaces	262
16.4.2	PIM Rendezvous Points	266
16.4.3	PIM Options	267
Chapter 17	WAN	269

17.1	Internet + Dialup	269
17.1.1	PPPoE	271
17.1.2	PPTP	277
17.1.3	PPPoA	282
17.1.4	ISDN	286
17.1.5	AUX	295
17.1.6	IP Pools	302
17.2	ATM	303
17.2.1	Profiles	304
17.2.2	Service Categories	309
17.2.3	OAM Controlling	311
17.3	Leased Line	315
17.3.1	Interfaces	316
17.4	Real Time Jitter Control	322
17.4.1	Controlled Interfaces	322
Chapter 18	VPN	324
18.1	IPSec	324
18.1.1	IPSec Peers	325
18.1.2	Phase-1 Profiles	341
18.1.3	Phase-2 Profiles	349
18.1.4	XAUTH Profiles	354
18.1.5	IP Pools	356
18.1.6	Options	357
18.2	L2TP	360
18.2.1	Tunnel Profiles	361
18.2.2	Users	364
18.2.3	Options	370
18.3	PPTP	371
18.3.1	PPTP Tunnels	371

18.3.2	Options	378
18.3.3	IP Pools	379
18.4	GRE	380
18.4.1	GRE Tunnels	381
Chapter 19	Firewall	383
19.1	Policies	384
19.1.1	Filter Rules	384
19.1.2	QoS	388
19.1.3	Options	389
19.2	Interfaces	391
19.2.1	Groups	391
19.3	Addresses	392
19.3.1	Address List	392
19.3.2	Groups	393
19.4	Services	394
19.4.1	Service List	394
19.4.2	Groups	396
Chapter 20	VoIP	398
20.1	Application Level Gateway	398
20.1.1	SIP Proxies	398
20.1.2	SIP Endpoints	400
20.2	Media Gateway	402
20.2.1	Extensions	403
20.2.2	SIP Accounts	408
20.2.3	Call Routing	415
20.2.4	CLID Translation	419
20.2.5	Call Translation	421
20.2.6	ISDN Trunks	423

20.2.7	Options	424
20.3	RTSP	427
20.3.1	RTSP Proxy	428
Chapter 21	Local Services	429
21.1	DNS	429
21.1.1	Global Settings	431
21.1.2	DNS Servers	433
21.1.3	Static Hosts	435
21.1.4	Domain Forwarding	436
21.1.5	Cache	438
21.1.6	Statistics	439
21.2	HTTPS	440
21.2.1	HTTPS Server	440
21.3	DynDNS Client	441
21.3.1	DynDNS Update	441
21.3.2	DynDNS Provider	443
21.4	DHCP Server	445
21.4.1	IP Pool Configuration	445
21.4.2	DHCP Configuration	446
21.4.3	IP/MAC Binding	450
21.4.4	DHCP Relay Settings	451
21.5	Web Filter	452
21.5.1	General	453
21.5.2	Filter List	455
21.5.3	Black / White List	457
21.5.4	History	458
21.6	CAPI Server	458
21.6.1	User	458
21.6.2	Options	459

21.7	Scheduling	460
21.7.1	Trigger	461
21.7.2	Actions	467
21.7.3	Options	477
21.8	Surveillance	478
21.8.1	Hosts	478
21.8.2	Interfaces	481
21.8.3	Temperature	482
21.8.4	Ping Generator	484
21.9	ISDN Theft Protection	485
21.9.1	Options	485
21.10	UPnP	487
21.10.1	Interfaces	488
21.10.2	General	489
21.11	HotSpot Gateway	490
21.11.1	HotSpot Gateway	491
21.11.2	Options	495
21.12	BRRP	496
21.12.1	Virtual Routers	497
21.12.2	VR Synchronisation	503
21.12.3	Options	504
Chapter 22	Maintenance	506
22.1	Diagnostics	506
22.1.1	Ping Test	506
22.1.2	DNS Test	507
22.1.3	Traceroute Test	507
22.2	Software & Configuration	508
22.2.1	Options	508

22.3	Reboot	514
22.3.1	System Reboot.	514
Chapter 23	External Reporting	515
23.1	Syslog	515
23.1.1	Syslog Servers	515
23.2	IP Accounting	518
23.2.1	Interfaces	518
23.2.2	Options	518
23.3	Alert Service	520
23.3.1	Alert Recipient	520
23.3.2	Alert Settings	523
23.4	SNMP.	525
23.4.1	SNMP Trap Options.	525
23.4.2	SNMP Trap Hosts	526
23.5	Activity Monitor	527
23.5.1	Options	528
Chapter 24	Monitoring.	530
24.1	Internal Log	530
24.1.1	System Messages	530
24.2	IPSec	531
24.2.1	IPSec Tunnels	531
24.2.2	IPSec Statistics.	533
24.3	ISDN/Modem	534
24.3.1	Current Calls	534
24.3.2	Call History	535
24.4	Interfaces	536
24.4.1	Statistics	536

24.5	Bridges	539
24.5.1	br<x>	539
24.6	HotSpot Gateway	539
24.6.1	HotSpot Gateway	539
24.7	QoS	540
24.7.1	QoS	540
24.8	OSPF	541
24.8.1	Status	541
24.8.2	Statistics	543
24.9	PIM	545
24.9.1	Global Status	545
24.9.2	Not Interface-Specific Status	546
24.9.3	Interface-Specific States	549
	 Glossary.	 553
	 Index	 594

Chapter 1 Introduction

The powerful gateways **R1202 / R3002 / R3502 / R3802 / R4402 / RT1202 / RT3002 / RT3502 / RT4202** have been specially developed for high-speed Internet access and for VPN connections in SMEs and branch offices.

Safety notices

The **safety precautions** brochure, which is supplied with your device, tells you what you need to take into consideration when using your Teldat gateway.

Installation

How to connect your device is shown in [Setting up and connecting](#) on page 6. This chapter also tells you what preliminary tasks are necessary for configuration.

Configuration

How to get your device running is explained in [Basic configuration](#) on page 41. There we show you how to start up your device from a Windows PC and how to install other useful online assistants. At the end of the chapter, you will be in a position to surf the Internet, send or receive e-mails and set up a connection to a partner network to access data at your company head office, for example.

Password

If you are already familiar with configuring Teldat devices and want to get started right away, all you really need to know is the factory default user name and password.



Note

User Name: *admin*

Password: *admin*



Note

Remember to change the password immediately when you log in to the device for the first time. All Teldat devices are supplied with the same password, which means they are not protected against unauthorised access until you change the password. How to change the passwords is described in chapter [Modify system password](#) on page 45.

Workshops

Step-by-step instructions for the most important configuration tasks can be found in the separate **Application Workshop** guide for each application, which can be downloaded from the www.teldat.de website under **Solutions**.

Dime Manager

The devices are also designed for use with **Dime Manager**. The **Dime Manager** management tool can locate your Teldat devices within the network quickly and easily. The .NET-based application, which is designed for up to 50 devices, offers easy to use functions and a comprehensive overview of devices, their parameters and files.

All devices in the local network, including remote devices that can be reached over SNMP, are located using SNMP Multicast irrespective of their current IP address. A new IP address and password and other parameters can also be assigned. A configuration can then be initiated over HTTP or TELNET. If using HTTP, the Dime Manager automatically logs into the devices on your behalf.

System software files and configuration files can be managed individually as required or in logical groups for devices of the same type.

You can find the **Dime Manager** on the enclosed product DVD.

Chapter 2 About this guide

This document is valid for Teldat devices with system software as of software version 9.1.2.

The Reference, which you have in front of you, contains the following chapters:




User's Guide - Reference


Chapter	Description
Introduction	You see an overview of the device:
About this guide	We explain the various components of this manual and how to use it.
Installation	This contains instructions for how to set up and connect your device.
Basic configuration	This chapter provides a step-by-step guide to the basic functions on your device.
Reset	This chapter explains how to reset your device to the ex works state.
Technical data	This section contains a description of all the device's technical properties.
Variable switching of S0 interfaces	This section describes how to switch the S0 interfaces from external to internal.
Access and configuration	This includes explanations about the different access and configuration methods.
Assistants	All the configuration options of the GUI are described in this chapter. The individual menus are described in the order of navigation. The individual chapters also contain more detailed explanations on the subsystem in question.
System Management	
Physical Interfaces	
LAN	
Wireless LAN Controller	
Networking	
Routing Protocols	
Multicast	

Chapter	Description
WAN	
VPN	
Firewall	
VoIP	
Local Services	
Maintenance	
External Reporting	
Monitoring	
Glossary	The glossary contains a reference to the most important technical terms used in network technology.
Index	The index lists all the key terms for operating the device and all the configuration options and gives page numbers so they can be found easily.

To help you locate information easily, this user's guide uses the following visual aids:

List of visual aids

Symbol	Use
	Indicates practical information.
	Indicates general and important points.
	Indicates a warning of risk level Attention (points out possible dangers that may cause damage to property if not observed).

Symbol	Use
	Indicates a warning of risk level Warning (points out possible dangers that may cause physical injury or even death if not observed).

The following typographical elements are used to help you find and interpret the information in this user's guide:

Typographical elements

Typographical element	Use
•	Indicates lists.
Menu->Submenu File->Open	Indicates menus and submenus in the GUI and in the Windows interface.
non-proportional (Courier), e.g. <code>ping</code> <code>192.168.0.254</code>	Indicates commands that you must enter as written.
bold, e.g. Windows Start menu	Indicates keys, key combinations and Windows terms.
bold, e.g. Licence Key	Identifies fields in the GUI .
italic, e.g. <i>none</i>	Indicates values that you enter or that can be configured.
Online: blue and italic, e.g. www.teldat.de	Indicates hyperlinks.

Chapter 3 Installation



Caution

Please read the safety notices carefully before installing and starting up your device. These are supplied with the device.

3.1 Setting up and connecting



Note

All you need for this is the cable supplied with the equipment.



Caution

Incorrect cabling of the ISDN and ETH interfaces may also damage your device. Connect only the ETH interface of the device to the LAN interface of the computer/hub or an ISDN interface of the device, if any, only to the ISDN connection.



Note

If you connect an unconfigured device to an ISDN connection in parallel to a PBX, the PBX cannot take any calls until an ISDN number is configured on the device. If no entry is specified, every incoming ISDN call is accepted by the ISDN Login service.

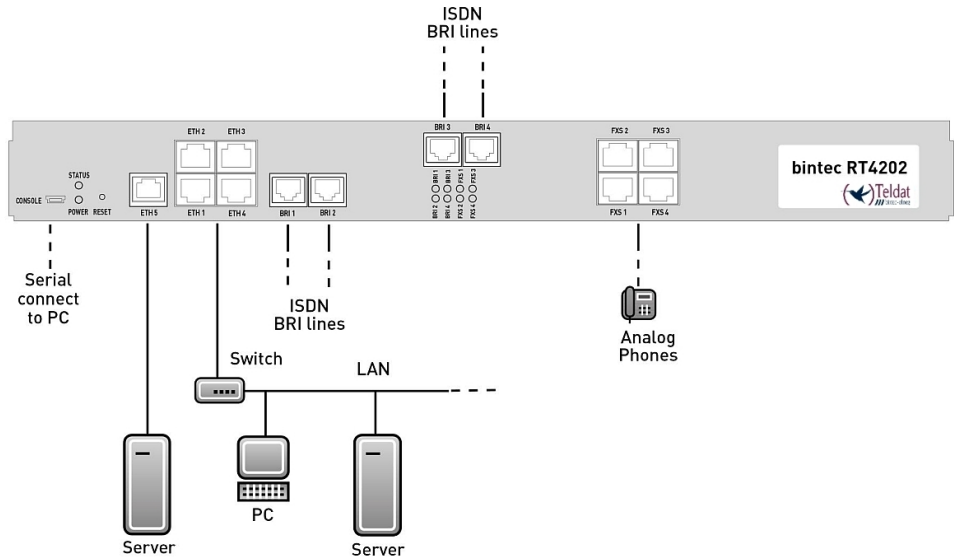


Fig. 2: Connection options using the example of **bintec RT4202**

When setting up and connecting, carry out the steps in the following sequence (refer to the connection diagrams for the individual devices in chapter [Technical data](#) on page 11):

- (1) Affix the rubber feet supplied to the marked areas on the underside of the device.
- (2) Place your device on a fixed, even surface or install your device in a 19 inch cabinet using the supplied bracket.
- (3) LAN
For the standard configuration of your device via Ethernet, connect the first switch port (**ETH1**) of your device to your LAN using the Ethernet cable supplied. The device automatically detects whether it is connected to a switch or directly to a PC.
- (4) ADSL (only **bintec R3002** and **bintec RT3002**)
Connect the DSL interface (**DSL**) of your device to the DSL output of the splitter using the DSL cable supplied.
- (5) SHDSL (only **bintec R3802**)
Connect the SHDSL interface (**SHDSL**) of your device to the SHDSL connection using the DSL cable supplied.
- (6) VDSL (only **bintec R3502** and **bintec RT3502**)
Connect the VDSL2 interface (**VDSL**) of your device to the VDSL connection using the VDSL cable supplied.
- (7) Mains connection
Connect the device to a plug socket. The power connection is located on the back of the device.

You can set up further connections as required:

- ISDN-BRI

(see [Variable switching of S0 interfaces](#) on page 37)

Connect the ISDN BRI interface (**BRI1**, **BRI2** or **BRI3**, **BRI4**) of the device to your ISDN socket using the ISDN BRI cable provided.

- ISDN-PRI (only **bintec R4402**)

Connect the ISDN PRI interface (**PRI-1** or **PRI-2**) of the device to your PRI connection using the ISDN PRI cable provided.

- Other LANs

Connect any other terminals in your network to the remaining switch ports **ETH2**, **ETH3**, **ETH4** or **ETH5**) of your device using other Ethernet cables.

- Serial connection

For alternative configuration possibilities, connect the serial interface of your PC (**COM1** or **COM2**) to the serial interface of the gateway (**console**). However, configuration via the serial interface is not provided by default.

- Analog telephone /analog fax (only **bintec RT4202**)

Connect your analog telephone or your analog fax to the **FXS** connections.

The device is now ready for configuration with the **GUI**. Chapter [Basic configuration](#) on page 41 provides a detailed step-by-step guide to the basic functions on your device.

3.2 Cleaning

You can clean your device easily. Use a damp cloth or antistatic cloth. Do not use solvents. Never use a dry cloth; the electrostatic charge could cause electronic faults. Make sure that no moisture can enter the device and cause damage.

3.3 Support information

If you have any questions about your new product or are looking for additional information, the Teldat GmbH Support Centre can be reached Monday to Friday between the hours of 8 am and 5 pm. They can be contacted as follows:

Email hotline@teldat.de

International Support Coordina- Telephone: +49 911 9673 1550
tion Fax: +49 911 9673 1599

End-customer Hotline 0900 1 38 65 93 (€1.10/min on land-lines in Germany)

For detailed information on our support services, contact www.teldat.de.

Chapter 4 Reset

Resetting the device enables you to return your device to a predefined initial state. This may be necessary if you have made incorrect configuration settings or the device is to be reprogrammed.

Manually resetting the device

You can reset the device to the ex works state with the **RESET** button. Depending on how long it is pressed for, the **RESET** button performs two different functions:

- After pressing briefly once, the device reboots.
- Hold the **RESET** button until the **STATUS** LED starts to flash. The device performs a factory reset. This means the device is returned to its ex works state. The boot configuration is deleted and all passwords are reset.

Chapter 5 Technical data

This chapter summarises all the hardware properties of the **R1202**, **R3002**, **R3502**, **R3802**, **R4402**, **RT1202**, **RT3002**, **RT3502** and **RT4202** devices.

5.1 Scope of supply

Your device is supplied with the following parts:

Product name	Cable sets/other	Software	Documentation
R1202	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
R3002	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable 2 ADSL cables (for Annex A and for Annex B) 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
R3502	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD)

Product name	Cable sets/other	Software	Documentation
	VDSK cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive		Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
R3802	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable SHDSL cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
R4402	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable ISDN PRI cable Serial cable Network cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
RT1202	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
RT3002	Ethernet cable	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed)

Product name	Cable sets/other	Software	Documentation
	ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable 2 ADSL cables (for Annex A and for Annex B) 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive		User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
RT3502	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable VDSK cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)
RT4202	Ethernet cable ISDN BRI cable Serial cable Network cable 19-inch installation kit 4x rubber feet - self-adhesive	Companion DVD	Quick Install Guide and safety notices (printed) User's Guide (on DVD) bintec Dime Manager User's Guide (on DVD) Release Notes, if required Installation poster (printed)

5.2 General Product Features

The general product features cover performance features and the technical prerequisites for installation and operation of your device.

General product features bintec R1202, bintec RT1202

Property	bintec R1202	bintec RT1202
Dimensions and weights:		
Equipment dimensions without cable (B x H x D):	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)
Weight	approx. 2.0 kg	approx. 2.0 kg
Transport weight (incl. documentation, cables, packaging)	approx. 2.6 kg	approx. 2.6 kg
Memory	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM
LEDs	13 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 1x Function)	14 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 2x Function)
Power consumption of the device	max. 15 Watt, normally 13 Watt	max. 15 Watt, normally 13 Watt
Voltage supply	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %
Environmental requirements:		
Storage temperature	-25 °C to +70 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C
Operating temperature	0 °C to +40 °C	0 °C to +40 °C
Relative atmospheric humidity	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored
Room classification	Only use in dry rooms.	Only use in dry rooms.
Available interfaces:		
Ethernet IEEE 802.3 LAN (4-port switch)	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX

Property	bintec R1202	bintec RT1202
ETH5	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX
ISDN-BRI (S0)	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) Only TE mode	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) TE or NT mode
Console/RS232	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud
Available sockets:		
Serial interface V.24	5-pole mini USB socket	5-pole mini USB socket
Ethernet interfaces	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ISDN BRI interface	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
Standards & Guidelines	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states
SAFERNET™ Security Technology	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec
Software supplied	Dime Manager on DVD	Dime Manager on DVD
Documentation included	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster
Online documentation	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required

General product features bintec R3002, bintec R3502, bintec R3802

Property	bintec R3002	bintec R3502	bintec R3802
Dimensions and weights:			
Equipment dimensions without cable (B x H x D):	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)
Weight	approx. 2.0 kg	approx. 2.0 kg	approx. 2.0 kg
Transport weight (incl. documentation, cables, packaging)	approx. 2.6 kg	approx. 2.6 kg	approx. 2.6 kg
Memory	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM
LEDs	14 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 2x Function)	14 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 2x Function)	14 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 2x Function)
Power consumption of the device	max. 15 Watt, normally 13 Watt	max. 15 Watt, normally 13 Watt	max. 15 Watt, normally 13 Watt
Voltage supply	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %
Environmental requirements:			
Storage temperature	-25 °C to +70 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C
Operating temperature	0 °C to +40 °C	0 °C to +40 °C	0 °C to +40 °C
Relative atmospheric humidity	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored
Room classification	Only use in dry rooms.	Only use in dry rooms.	Only use in dry rooms.
Available interfaces:			

Property	bintec R3002	bintec R3502	bintec R3802
ADSL2+ interface	Internal ADSL2+ modem for Annex A and Annex B	-	-
VDSL2 interface	-	In accordance with ITU G.993.2; supports Baud plan ISDN 998. Autodetection of VDSL profile.	-
SHDSL interface	-	-	Supports SHDSL.bis. Internal SHDSL 8 wire modem. Bonding technology with 2-wire/4-wire/6-wire/8-wire as an inverse multiplexer - performed over IMA in accordance with the ATM forum.
Ethernet IEEE 802.3 LAN (4-port switch)	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX
ETH5	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, autosensing, MDIX
ISDN BRI (S0)	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) Only TE mode	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) Only TE mode	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) Only TE mode
Console/RS232	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud
Available sockets:			
Serial interface V.24	5-pole mini USB socket	5-pole mini USB socket	5-pole mini USB socket

Property	bintec R3002	bintec R3502	bintec R3802
Ethernet interfaces	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ISDN BRI interface	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ADSL interface	RJ45 socket	-	-
VDSL2 interface	-	RJ45 socket	-
SHDSL interface	-	-	RJ45 socket
Standards & Guidelines	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states
SAFERNET TM Security Technology	Community pass- words, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Ac- cess Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec	Community pass- words, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Ac- cess Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec	Community pass- words, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Ac- cess Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec
Software supplied	Dime Manager on DVD	Dime Manager on DVD	Dime Manager on DVD
Documentation included	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster
Online documentation	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if re- quired	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if re- quired	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if re- quired

General product features bintec RT3002, bintec RT3502

Property	bintec RT3002	bintec RT3502
Dimensions and weights:		
Equipment dimensions without cable (B x H x D):	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)
Weight	approx. 2.0 kg	approx. 2.0 kg
Transport weight (incl. documentation, cables, packaging)	approx. 2.6 kg	approx. 2.6 kg
Memory	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM
LEDs	17 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 5x Function)	17 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 5x Function)
Power consumption of the device	max. 24 Watt, typically 15 Watt	max. 24 Watt, typically 15 Watt
Voltage supply	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %
Environmental requirements:		
Storage temperature	-25 °C to +70 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C
Operating temperature	0 °C to +40 °C	0 °C to +40 °C
Relative atmospheric humidity	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored
Room classification	Only use in dry rooms.	Only use in dry rooms.
Available interfaces:		
ADSL interface	Internal ADSL2+ modem for Annex A and Annex B	-
VDSL2 interface	-	In accordance with ITU G.993.2;

Property	bintec RT3002	bintec RT3502
		supports Baud plan ISDN 998. Autodetection of VDSL profile.
Ethernet IEEE 802.3 LAN (4-port switch)	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX
ETH5	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX
ISDN BRI (S0)	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) TE or NT mode	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) TE or NT mode
Console/RS232	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud
Available sockets:		
Serial interface V.24	5-pole mini USB socket	5-pole mini USB socket
Ethernet interfaces	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ISDN BRI interface	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ADSL interface	RJ45 socket	-
VDSL2 interface	-	RJ45 socket
Standards & Guidelines	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states
SAFERNET TM Security Technology	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPsec	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPsec
Software supplied	Dime Manager on DVD	Dime Manager on DVD
Documentation included	Quick Install Guide and safety notices	Quick Install Guide and safety notices

Property	bintec RT3002	bintec RT3502
	bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD	bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD
	Installation poster	Installation poster
Online documentation	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required

General product features bintec R4402, bintec RT4202

Property	bintec R4402	bintec RT4202
Dimensions and weights:		
Equipment dimensions without cable (B x H x D):	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)	19" housing (482.6 mm x 220 mm x 45 mm)
Weight	approx. 2.0 kg	approx. 2.0 kg
Transport weight (incl. documentation, cables, packaging)	approx. 2.6 kg	approx. 2.6 kg
Memory	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM	64 MB RAM, 16 MB flash ROM
LEDs	16 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 4x Function)	20 (1x Power, 1x Status, 5x2 Ethernet, 8x Function)
Power consumption of the device	max. 24 Watt, typically 15 Watt	max. 24 Watt, typically 15 Watt
Voltage supply	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %	Voltage Range 85 ~ 264 V AC Frequency Range 47 ~ 63 Hz Efficiency (Typ.) 79 %
Environmental requirements:		
Storage temperature	-25 °C to +70 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C
Operating temperature	0 °C to +40 °C	0 °C to +40 °C

Property	bintec R4402	bintec RT4202
Relative atmospheric humidity	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored	10 % to 90 % non-condensing in operation, 5 % to 95 % non-condensing when stored
Room classification	Only use in dry rooms.	Only use in dry rooms.
Available interfaces:		
Ethernet IEEE 802.3 LAN (4-port switch)	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX
ETH5	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX	Permanently installed (twisted pair only), 10/100/1000 mbps, auto-sensing, MDIX
ISDN BRI (S0)	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) TE or NT mode	Euro-ISDN (point-to-multipoint/point-to-point connection) TE or NT mode
ISDN-PRI (2)	ISDN Primary Rate Interface TE or NT mode	-
Console/RS232	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud	Baudrates: 1200 - 115200 Baud
FXS (internal)	-	4x for connection of analog telephones or FAX
Available sockets:		
Serial interface V.24	5-pole mini USB socket	5-pole mini USB socket
Ethernet interfaces	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ISDN BRI interface	RJ45 socket	RJ45 socket
ISDN-PRI interface	RJ45 socket	-
FXS	-	4x RJ45 sockets
Standards & Guidelines	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states	R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC CE symbol for all EU states

Property	bintec R4402	bintec RT4202
SAFERNET TM Security Technology	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec	Community passwords, PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAP v.2, PPTP, PPPoE, PPPoA, Callback, Access Control Lists, CLID, NAT, SIF, MPPE Encryption, PPTP Encryption, VPN with PPTP or IPSec
Software supplied	Dime Manager on DVD	Dime Manager on DVD
Documentation included	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster	Quick Install Guide and safety notices bintec Dime Manager User's Guide on DVD Installation poster
Online documentation	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required	User's Guide Workshops Release Notes, if required

5.3 LEDs

The device LEDs provide information on certain activities and statuses of the device.

The LEDs are arranged as follows:

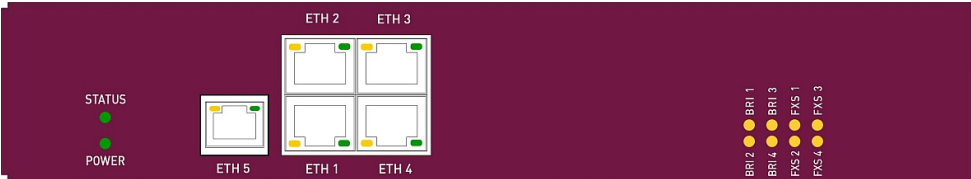


Fig. 3: Arrangement of LEDs

You can determine the status of the router in BRRP operation with the aid of the status LED.

LED BRRP display

LED	Colour	Status	Information
STATUS	green	lights	The device is functioning as a master router.
STATUS	green	off	The device is functioning as a backup

LED	Colour	Status	Information
			router.
STATUS	green	flashing	The device is being initialised.

In operation mode, the LEDs display the following status information for your device:

LED status display

LED	Colour	Status	Information
POWER	green	on	The power supply is connected.
		off	No power supply.
STATUS	green	on	After switching on: The device has started. During operation: An error has occurred.
	green	flashing	The device is active.
	green	off	During operation: An error has occurred.
ETH 1 to 5	green	on	The device is connected to the Ethernet at 1 Gbps
	green	flashing	Data traffic with 1 Gbps.
	orange	on	The device is connected to the Ethernet at 100 mbps.
	orange	flashing	Data traffic with 100 mbps.
	green and orange	on	The device is connected to the Ethernet at 10 mbps.
	green and orange	flashing	Data traffic with 10 mbps.
BRI 1 to 4	orange	on	D-channel is active.
		flashing	At least one B-channel is active.
PRI 1 to 2	orange	on	D-channel is active.
		flashing	At least one B-channel is active.
FXS 1 to 4	orange	on	Incoming call to terminal.
		off	The device is terminated or the connected could not be established.
DSL	orange	on	DSL synchronisation successful. The DSL connection is active (ADSL/SHDSL/VDSL).
		flashing	Data traffic via the DSL connection (ADSL/SHDSL/VDSL).

5.4 Connectors

The network connection and the on/off switch are located on the back of the device.



Fig. 4: Mains connection

All other connections are located on the front of the device.

bintec R1202 has a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface and an ISDN BRI interface.

The connections are arranged as follows:

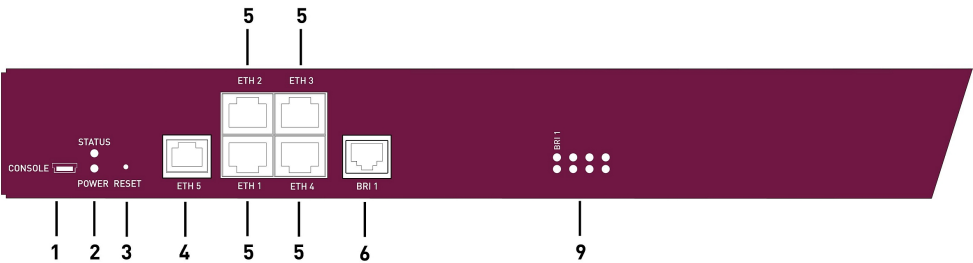


Fig. 5: Front of **bintec R1202**

Front of bintec R1202

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface
5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1	ISDN BRI interface
9	LED	LED display

bintec RT1202 has a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface and two ISDN BRI interfaces.

The connections are arranged as follows:

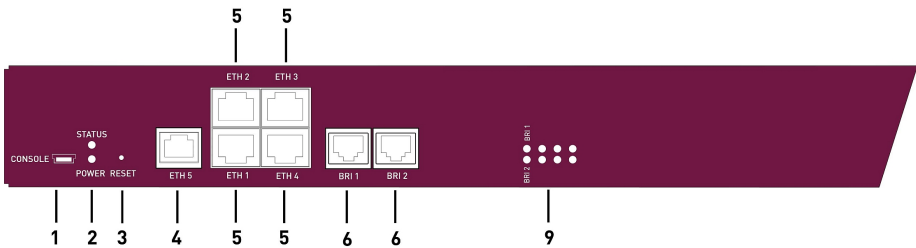


Fig. 6: Front of **bintec RT1202**

Front of bintec RT1202

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface
5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1 - BRI2	ISDN BRI interface
9	LED	LED display

bintec R3002, **bintec R3502** and **bintec 3802** have a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface and an ISDN BRI interface as well as a DSL interface.

The connections are arranged as follows:

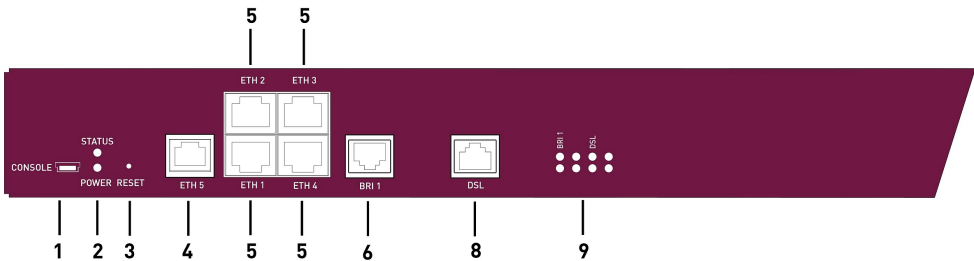


Fig. 7: Front of **bintec R3002**

Front of bintec R3002, bintec R3502, bintec R3802

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface

5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1	ISDN BRI interface
8	DSL	DSL interface (ADSL2+ interface for bintec R3002 , VDSL2 interface for bintec R3502 , SHDSL interface for bintec R3802)
9	LED	LED display

bintec RT3002 and **bintec RT3502** have a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface, four ISDN BRI interfaces as well as a DSL interface.

The connections are arranged as follows:

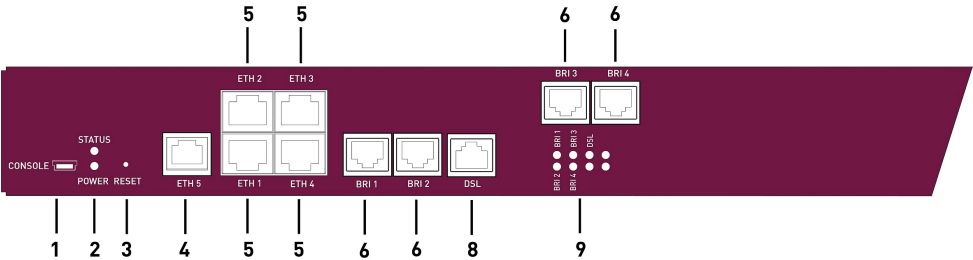


Fig. 8: Front of **bintec RT3002**

Front of bintec RT3002 , bintec RT3502

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface
5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1 - BRI4	ISDN BRI interface
8	DSL	DSL interface (ADSL2+ interface for bintec RT3002 , VDSL2 interface for bintec RT3502)
9	LED	LED display

bintec R4402 has a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface, two ISDN BRI interfaces and two ISDN PRI interfaces.

The connections are arranged as follows:

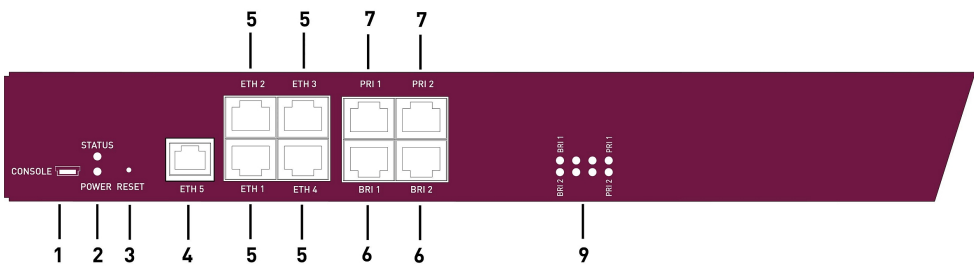


Fig. 9: Front of **bintec R4402**

Front of bintec R4402

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface
5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1 - BRI2	ISDN BRI interface
7	PRI1 - PRI2	ISDN-PRI interface
9	LED	LED display

bintec RT4202 has a 4-port Ethernet switch, a serial interface, an ETH5 interface, four ISDN BRI interfaces and four FXS interfaces.

The connections are arranged as follows:

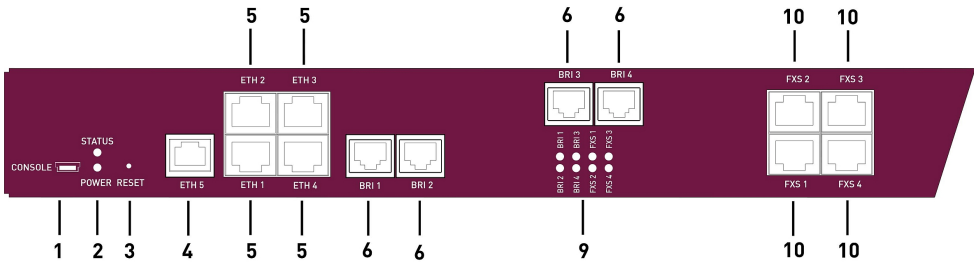


Fig. 10: Front of **bintec RT4202**

Front of bintec RT4202

1	CONSOLE	Serial interface
2	POWER / STATUS	LED display for power and status
3	RESET	Reset button
4	ETH5	Ethernet interface

5	ETH1 - ETH4	10/100/1000 Base-T Ethernet interface
6	BRI1 - BRI4	ISDN BRI interface
9	LED	LED display
10	FXS1 - FXS4	FXS interfaces

5.5 Pin Assignments

5.5.1 Serial interface

Your device has a serial interface for connection to a console. This supports Baud rates from 1200 to 115200 Bps.

The interface is designed as a 5-pole mini USB socket.

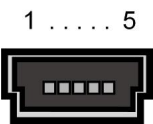


Fig. 11: 5-pole mini USB socket

The pin assignment is as follows:

Pin assignment of the mini USB socket

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	TxD
3	RxD
4	Not used
5	GND

5.5.2 Ethernet interface

The devices have an Ethernet interface with an integrated 4-port switch (ETH1 - ETH4) and a separate Ethernet interface (ETH5).

The 4-port switch is used to connect individual PCs or additional switches. The ETH5 interface can be used to connect an optional DSL modem or a DMZ.

The connection is made via an RJ45 socket.

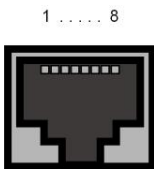


Fig. 12: Ethernet-10/100/1000 Base-T interface (RJ45 connector)

The pin assignment for the Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base-T interface (RJ45 connector) is as follows:

RJ45 socket for Ethernet connection

Pin	Position
1	Pair 0 +
2	Pair 0 -
3	Pair 1 +
4	Pair 2 +
5	Pair 2 -
6	Pair 1 -
7	Pair 3 +
8	Pair 3 -

The Ethernet 10/100/1000 BASE-T interface does not have an Auto-MDI-X function.

5.5.3 ADSL interface

The ADSL interface on **bintec R3002** and **RT3002** is connected via an RJ45 plug. The cable supplied connects the RJ45 plug needed for the device to an RJ11 plug provided for Annex A. The second cable supplied connected the RJ45 plug with an RJ45 plug for Annex B.

The following pins are used for the ADSL connection:

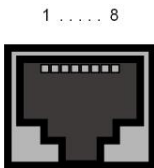


Fig. 13: ADSL interface (RJ45 socket)

The pin assignment for the ADSL interface (RJ45 socket) is as follows:

RJ45 socket for ADSL connection bintec R3002 and RT3002

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Not used
4	Line 1a
5	Line 1b
6	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

5.5.4 SHDSL interface

The SHDSL interface on **bintec R3802** is connected via an RJ45 connector. The cable supplied connects the RJ45 connector needed for the device to an RJ45 connector needed for the SHDSL connection.

The following pins are used for the SHDSL connection:

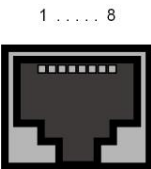


Fig. 14: SHDSL interface (RJ45 connector) **bintec R3802**

The pin assignment for the SHDSL interface (RJ45 connector) is as follows:

RJ45 socket for SHDSL connection bintec R3802

Pin	Position
1	Line a4
2	Line b4
3	Line a3
4	Line a1
5	Line b1
6	Line b3
7	Line a2

Pin	Position
8	Line b2

5.5.5 VDSL2 interface

The VDSL2 interface on **bintec R3502** and **RT3502** is connected via an RJ45 plug.

The following pins are used for the VDSL connection:

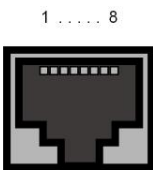


Fig. 15: VDSL2 interface (RJ45 connector) **bintec R3502** and **bintec RT3502**

The pin assignment for the VDSL2 interface (RJ45 connector) is as follows:

RJ45 socket for VDSL connection **bintec R3502** and **bintec RT3502**

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Not used
4	Line 1a
5	Line 1b
6	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

5.5.6 ISDN-PRI interface

Both of the ISDN PRI interfaces on **bintec R4402** are connected via an RJ45 plug. The cable supplied connects the RJ45 plug needed for the device to an RJ45 plug needed for the PRI connection.

The following pins are used for the connection:

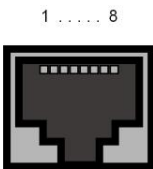


Fig. 16: ISDN PRI interface (RJ45 socket)

The pin assignment for the ISDN PRI interface (RJ45 socket) is as follows:

RJ45 socket for ISDN PRI connection

Pin	Position
1	T+
2	T-
3	Not used
4	R+
5	R-
6	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

Note for NTs in Germany



Note

In Germany, "Transmit" (NT-->TE) is often designated "S2Mab" (a and b) on the plug and "Receive" (TE-->NT) "S2Man" (a and b).

5.5.7 ISDN BRI interface

The devices **bintec R1202**, **R3002**, **R3502** and **R3802** have an ISDN BRI interface, which e.g. can be used for backup functions. The devices **bintec R4402** and **RT1202** have two ISDN BRI interfaces. The devices **bintec RT3002**, **RT3502** and **RT4202** have four ISDN BRI interfaces.

The devices **bintec R1202**, **R3002**, **R3502** and **R3802** can only be operated in TE mode.

The devices **bintec R4402** and **bintec RTxxxx** can be operated in TE mode or in NT mode.

The connection is made via an RJ45 socket:

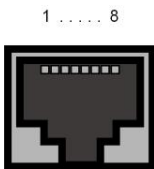


Fig. 17: ISDN BRI interface (RJ45 socket)

The pin assignment for the ISDN BRI interface (RJ45 socket) in TE mode is as follows:

RJ45 socket for ISDN connection in TE mode

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Transmit (+)
4	Receive (+)
5	Receive (-)
6	Transmit (-)
7	Not used
8	Not used

The pin assignment for the ISDN BRI interface (RJ45 socket) in NT mode is as follows:

RJ45 socket for ISDN connection in NT mode

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Receive (+)
4	Transmit (+)
5	Transmit (-)
6	Receive (-)
7	Not used
8	Not used

5.5.8 FXS interface

bintec RT4202 has four FXS interfaces.

The connection is made via an RJ45 socket.

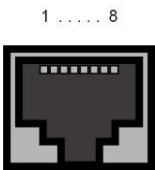


Fig. 18: FXS interface (RJ45 connector)

The pin assignment for the FXS interface (RJ45 connector) is as follows:

RJ45 connector for FXS connection

Pin	Position
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Not used
4	a
5	b
6	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

5.6 WEEE information



The waste container symbol with the »X« through it on the device indicates that the device must be disposed of separately from normal domestic waste at an appropriate waste disposal facility at the end of its useful service life.



Das auf dem Gerät befindliche Symbol mit dem durchgekreuzten Müllcontainer bedeutet, dass das Gerät am Ende der Nutzungsdauer bei den hierfür vorgesehenen Entsorgungsstellen getrennt vom normalen Hausmüll zu entsorgen ist.



Le symbole se trouvant sur l'appareil et qui représente un conteneur à ordures barré signifie que l'appareil, une fois que sa durée d'utilisation a expiré, doit être éliminé dans des poubelles spéciales prévues à cet effet, de manière séparée des ordures ménagères courantes.



Il simbolo raffigurante il bidone della spazzatura barrato riportato sull'apparecchiatura significa che alla fine della durata in vita dell'apparecchiatura questa dovrà essere smaltita separatamente dai rifiuti domestici nei punti di raccolta previsti a tale scopo.



El símbolo del contenedor con la cruz, que se encuentra en el aparato, significa que cuando el equipo haya llegado al final de su vida útil, deberá ser llevado a los centros de recogida previstos, y que su tratamiento debe estar separado del de los residuos urbanos.



Symbolen som sitter på apparaten med den korsade avfallstunnan betyder att apparaten när den tjänat ut ska kasseras och lämnas till de förutsedda sortergårdarna och skiljas från normalt hushållsavfall.



Tegnet på apparatet som viser en avfallcontainer med et kryss over, betyr at apparatet må kastet på hertil egnet avfallssted og ikke sammen med vanlig avfall fra husholdningen.



Το σύμβολο που βρίσκεται στην συσκευή με το σταυρωμένο κοντέινερ απορριμμάτων σημαίνει, ότι η συσκευή στο τέλος της διάρκειας χρήσης της πρέπει να διατεθεί ξεχωριστά από τα κανονικά απορρίμματα στα γι' αυτό τον σκοπό προβλεπόμενα σημεία διάθεσης.



Symbolet med gennemkrydset affaldsbeholder på apparatet betyder, at apparatet, når det ikke kan bruges længere, skal bortskaffes adskilt fra normalt husholdningsaffald på et af de dertil beregnede bortskaffelsessteder.



Znajdujący się na urządzeniu symbol przekreślonego pojemnika na śmieci oznacza, że po upływie żywotności urządzenia należy go oddać do odpowiedniej placówki utylizacyjnej i nie wyrzucać go do normalnych śmieci domowych.



Het doorgehaalde symbool van de afvalcontainer op het apparaat betekent dat het apparaat op het einde van zijn levensduur niet bij het normale huisvuil mag worden verwijderd. Het moet bij een erkend inzamelpunt worden ingeleverd.



O símbolo com um caixote de lixo riscado, que se encontra no aparelho, significa, que o aparelho no fim da sua vida útil deve ser eliminado separadamente do lixo doméstico nos centros de recolha adequados.

Chapter 6 Variable switching of S0 interfaces

6.1 Switching the S0 interfaces from external to internal

The devices **bintec R4402**, **bintec RT1202**, **bintec RT3002**, **bintec RT3502** and **bintec RT4202** have two or four BRI connections. All BRI connections can be operated as internal or as external S0 connections. The external S0 connections are used for connection to the network operator's ISDN network. The internal S0 connections are provided for connecting various ISDN terminals (telephone, PC, etc.). In the ex works state, the BRI connections are configured as external connections.

The two S0 interfaces BRI-1 and BRI-2 can be switch from external (ex works state) to internal via a link plug field on the PCB for the device. Additional interfaces BRI-3 and BRI-4 can be switched via the link plugs on the side of the ISDN-L module.

If you use a S0 interface as an internal connection, you can specify for each interface whether or not the connection is powered via your device when the connected terminal does not have its own power supply. The respective link plugs must be moved to do this.

In addition, you can switch the 100 Ohm terminators on/off for each interface via additional link plugs. You require terminators:

- if you connect an external connection directly with the external NTBA
- for a point-to-point connection
- if the bus starts directly with the connection of your device

You can also connect the interfaces BRI-3 and BRI-4 to each other. This can guarantee the power supply for a terminal on an BRI interface switched to internal mode in the event that your device is switched off or the power supply fails. For example, an external S0 can be placed on an internal S0. In this case, an idle relay loops through from external S0 to internal S0 and so creates an emergency supply for the internal S0 bus/telephone.



Warning

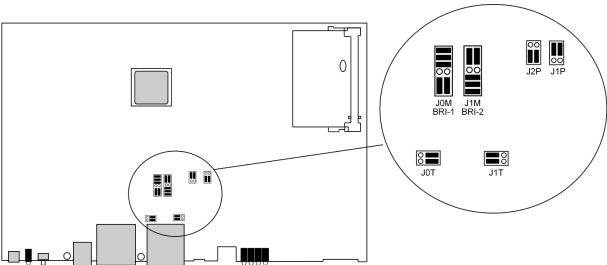
Always remove the power cord before opening the device. This is the only way of ensuring that the internal mains unit is completely dead. If you do not remove the power cord, there is a risk of injury or death.

Note that the device should only be opened by trained service personnel.

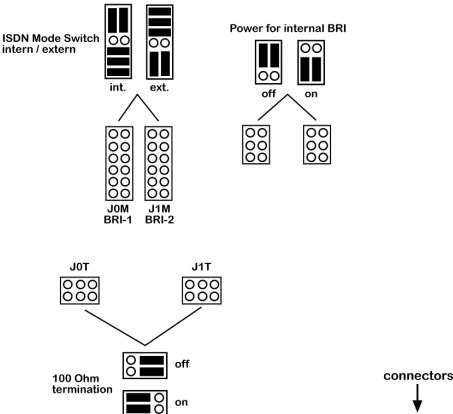
To carry out the switch proceed as follows:













Unscrew the two screws on the back of the device and slide the cover upwards.

The link plugs for the BRI-1 and BRI-2 interfaces can be found on all devices on the main PCB behind the terminal block.

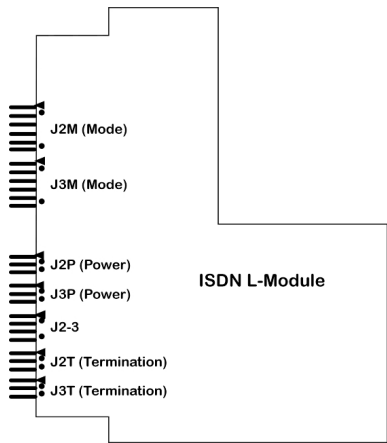


Insert the link plugs for interfaces BRI-1 and BRI-2 as shown in the following figure:

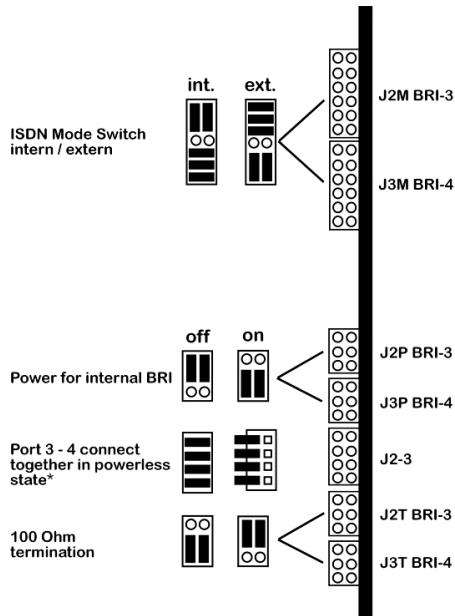


Use	Interface	Link plug area	Position	Position
Internal/external switching	BRI-1	J0M	Internal 	external 
Internal/external switching	BRI-2	J1M	Internal 	external 
Power supply for internal connection	BRI-1	J0P	Off 	On 
Power supply for internal connection	BRI-2	J1P	Off 	On 
100 Ohm terminator	BRI-1	J0T	Off 	On 
100 Ohm terminator	BRI-2	J1T	Off 	On 

You can also switch the interfaces BRI-3 and BRI-4. The link plugs are on the side of the ISDN-L module.

















Insert the link plugs for interfaces BRI-3 and BRI-4 as shown in the following figure:



* "on" position ist only allowed if J2M BRI-3" is in "int." Mode and "J3M BRI-4" is in "ext." Mode

* "on" is only permitted, if J3M BRI-3 is set to internal mode and J4M BRI-4 is set to external mode.

Use	Interface	Link plug area	Position	Position
Internal/external switching	BRI-3	J2M		

Use	Interface	Link plug area	Position	Position
				
Internal/external switching	BRI-4	J3M	Internal 	external 
Power supply for internal connection	BRI-3	J2P	Off 	On 
Power supply for internal connection	BRI-4	J3P	Off 	On 
100 Ohm terminator	BRI-3	J2T	Off 	On 
100 Ohm terminator	BRI-4	J3T	Off 	On 
Connection of BRI-3 and BRI-4	-	J2-3	Off 	On 

Chapter 7 Basic configuration

You configure your device using the **GUI** (Graphical User Interface).

The way to obtain the basic configuration is explained below step-by-step. Detailed knowledge of networks is not necessary. A detailed online help system gives you extra support.

The **Companion DVD** also supplied includes all the tools that you need for the configuration and management of your device.

7.1 Presettings

7.1.1 Preconfigured data

Your device is shipped with a pre-defined IP configuration:

- **IP Address:** *192.168.0.254*
- **Netmask:** *255.255.255.0*

Use the following access data to configure your device in an ex works state:

- **User Name:** *admin*
- **Password:** *admin*



Note

All Teldat devices are delivered with the same username and password. As long as the password remains unchanged, they are therefore not protected against unauthorised use. Make sure you change the passwords to prevent unauthorised access to your device!

How to change the passwords is described in [Modify system password](#) on page 45.

7.1.2 Software update

Your device contains the version of the system software available at the time of production. More recent versions may have since been released. You can easily perform an update with the **GUI** using the **Maintenance->Software & Configuration** menu.

For a description of the update procedure, see [Software Update](#) on page 47.

7.2 System requirements

Your Teldat gateway contains extensive features for encrypted data transfer and Internet access for both individual users and companies.

For configuration of the device, your PC must meet the following system requirements:

- Microsoft Windows operating system Windows 2000 or higher
- Internet Explorer 6 or 7, Mozilla Firefox Version 1.2 or higher
- Installed network card (Ethernet)
- DVD drive
- TCP/IP protocol installed (see [Configuring a PC](#) on page 44)
- High colour display (more than 256 colours) for correct representation of the graphics.

7.3 Preparation

To prepare for configuration, you need to...

- gather the data required for the basic configuration and the Internet connection
- Check whether the PC from which you want to perform the configuration meets the necessary requirements.

You can also...

- install the **Dime Manager** software, which provides more tools for working with your device. This installation is optional and not essential for the configuration or operation of the device.

7.3.1 Gathering data

You can gather the main data for configuration with the **GUI** quickly, because you do not need any information that requires in-depth knowledge of networks.

If necessary, you can use the sample values.

Before you start the configuration, you should gather the data for the following purposes:

- Basic configuration (if your device is in the ex works state)
- Internet access (optional)

The following table shows examples of possible values for the necessary access data. You can enter your personal data in the "Your values" column, so that you can refer to these

values later when needed.

If you configure a new network, you can use the given example values for IP addresses and netmasks. In cases of doubt, ask your system administrator.

Basic configuration

For a basic configuration of your gateway, you need information that relates to your network environment:

Basic information

Access data	Example value	Your values
IP address of your gateway	192.168.0.254	
Netmask of your gateway	255.255.255.0	

Internet access over ADSL

If you want to set up Internet access, you need an Internet Service Provider (ISP). You also receive your personal access data from your ISP. The terms used for the required access data may vary from provider to provider, However, the type of information you need for dial-in is basically the same.

The following table lists the access data that your device also needs for a DSL connection to the Internet.

Data for internet access over ADSL

Access data	Example value	Your values
Provider name	GoInternet	
Protocol	PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE)	
Encapsulation	bridged-no-fcs	
VPI (Virtual Path Identifier)	1	
VCI (Virtual Circuit Identifier)	32	
Your user name	MyName	
Password	TopSecret	

Some Internet Service Providers, such as T-Online, require additional information:

Additional information for T-Online

Access data	Example value	Your values
User account (12 digits)	000123456789	

Access data	Example value	Your values
T-Online number (usually 12 digits)	06112345678	
Joint user account	0001	



Note

To configure T-Online Internet access, enter the following succession of numbers without intervening spaces in the **User Name** field:

User account (12 digits) + T-Online number (usually 12 digits) + co-user number (for the main user, always 0001).

If your T-Online number is less than 12 digits long, a "#" character is required between the T-Online number and the co-user number.

If you use T-DSL, you must add the character string "@t-online.de" at the end of this string of numbers.

You user name could, for example, look like this:

00012345678906112345678#0001 @t-online.de

7.3.2 Configuring a PC

In order to reach your device via the **GUI** and to be able to carry out configuration, the PC used for the configuration has to satisfy some prerequisites.

- Make sure that the TCP/IP protocol is installed on the PC.
- Assign fixed IP address to your PC.

Checking the TCP/IP protocol

Proceed as follows to check whether you have installed the protocol:

- (1) Click the Windows Start button and then **Settings -> Control Panel -> Network Connections** (Windows XP) or **Control Panel -> Network and Sharing Center-> Change Adapter Settings** (Windows 7).
- (2) Click on **LAN Connection**.
- (3) Click on **Properties** in the status window.
- (4) Look for the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** entry in the list of network components.

Installing the TCP/IP protocol

If you cannot find the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** entry, install the TCP/IP protocol as follows:

- (1) First click **Properties**, then **Install** in the status window of the **LAN Connection**.
- (2) Select the **Protocol** entry.
- (3) Click **Add**.
- (4) Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and click on **OK**.
- (5) Follow the on-screen instructions and restart your PC when you have finished.

Allocating PC IP address

Allocate an IP address to your PC as follows:

- (1) Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and click **Properties**.
- (2) Choose **Use next IP address** and enter a suitable IP address.

Entering the gateway IP address in your PC

Then continue by entering the IP address of the gateway in the configuration of your PC as follows:

- (1) In **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** -> **Properties** under **Default gateway**, enter the IP address of your gateway.
- (2) Enter the IP address of your device under **Use next DNS server address**.
- (3) Click **OK**.
- (4) Close the status window with **OK**.

The computer now has an IPSec configuration.



Note

You can now launch the **GUI** for configuration by entering the IP address of your device (192.168.0.250) in a supported browser (Internet Explorer 6 or later, Mozilla Firefox 1.2 or later) and entering the pre-configured login information (**User:** *admin*, **Password:** *admin*).

7.4 Modify system password

All Teldat devices are delivered with the same username and password. As long as the password remains unchanged, they are therefore not protected against unauthorised use. Make sure you change the passwords to prevent unauthorised access to your device!

Proceed as follows:

- (a) Go to the **System Management->Global Settings->Passwords** menu.
- (b) Enter a new password for **System Admin Password**.
- (c) Enter the new password again under **Confirm Admin Password**.
- (d) Click **OK**.
- (e) Store the configuration using the **Save configuration** button above the menu navigation.

Note the following rules on password use:

- The password must not be easy to guess. Names, car registration numbers, dates of birth, etc. should not be chosen as passwords.
- The password should contain at least one character that is not a letter (special character or number).
- The password should be at least 8 characters long.
- Change your password regularly, e.g. every 90 days.

7.5 Setting up an internet connection

You can establish various types of internet connection with your device. The most common configuration is described below. The **GUI** internet wizard can be used to help configure alternative configuration types.

7.5.1 Internet connection over internal ADSL modem

The devices **R3002** and **RT3002** have an integrated ADSL2+ modem for establishing a fast internet connection. To make it easier to configure an ADSL internet connection, the **GUI** has a **Assistants** to guide you through the connection set-up process simply and quickly. A selection of preconfigured connections from leading providers (T-Home, Arcor) makes configuration even easier.

- (1) In **GUI** select the **Assistants->Internet Access** menu.
- (2) With **New** make a new entry and take over the **Connection Type** *Internal ADSL Modem*.
- (3) Follow the steps shown by the wizard. The wizard has its own online help, which offers all of the information you may require.
- (4) Once you have exited the wizard, save the configuration by clicking on the **Save configuration** button above the menu navigation.

7.5.2 Other internet connections

In addition to an ADSL connection over the internal ADSL2+ modem, you can connect your device over other connection types with the internet or over an external modem (e.g. a cable modem) or an external gateway. The corresponding wizard in **GUI** provides support for configurations of this type. You can find the Internet wizards and other wizards for easy configuration of various applications at the top of the menu tree under **Assistants**.

7.5.3 Testing the configuration

Once you have completed the configuration of your device, you can test the connection in your LAN and to the Internet.

Carry out the following steps to test your device:

- (1) Test the connection to your device. Click **Run** in the Start menu and enter `ping`, followed by a space and the IP address of your system (e.g. `192.168.0.254`). A window appears with the response "Reply from...".
- (2) Test the internet access by entering www.teldat.de in the internet browser. Teldat GmbH's Internet site offers you the latest news, updates and documentation.



Note

Incorrect configuration of the devices in your LAN may result in unwanted connections and increased charges! Monitor your device and make sure it only sets up connections at the times you want it to. Watch the LEDs on your device (LED for ISDN, ADSL and the Ethernet interface to which you have connected one or more WANs).

7.6 Software Update

The range of functions of Teldat devices is continuously being extended. These extensions are made available to you by Teldat GmbH free of charge. Checking for new software versions and the installation of updates can be carried out easily with the **GUI**. An existing internet connection is needed for an automatic update.

Proceed as follows:

- (1) Go to the **Maintenance->Software & Configuration** menu.
- (2) Select under **Action** *Update system software* and under **Source Location** *Current Software from Teldat Server*
- (3) Confirm with **Go**.

Options

Currently Installed Software	
BOSS	V.9.1 Rev. 1 IPSec from 2012/03/23 00:00:00
System Logic	1.0
ADSL Logic	E.74.2.53
Software and Configuration Options	
Action	Update system software
Source Location	Current Software from Teldat Server
Go	

The device will now connect to the Teldat GmbH download server and check whether an updated version of the system software is available. If so, your device will be updated automatically. When installation of the new software is complete, you will be invited to restart the device.



Caution

Once you have clicked on **GO** , the update cannot be cancelled/interrupted. If an error occurs during the update, do not re-start the device and contact support.

Chapter 8 Access and configuration

This chapter describes all the access and configuration options.

8.1 Access Options

The various access options are presented below. Select the procedure to suit your needs.

There are various ways you can access your device to configure it:

- Via your LAN
- Via the serial interface
- Via an ISDN connection

8.1.1 Access via LAN

Access via one of the Ethernet interfaces of your device allows you to open the **GUI** in a web browser for configuration purposes and to access your device via Telnet or SSH.



Caution

If you carry out the initial configuration with the **GUI**, this can result in inconsistencies or malfunctions, as soon as you carry out additional settings using other configuration options. Therefore, it is recommended that the configuration is continued with the **GUI**. If you use SNMP shell commands, continue with this configuration method.

8.1.1.1 HTTP/HTTPS

With a current web browser, you can use the HTML interfaces to configure your device. For this, enter the following in your web browser's address field:

- `http://192.168.0.254`
- or
- `https://192.168.0.254`

8.1.1.2 Telnet

Apart from configuration using a web browser, with a Telnet connection you can also access the SNMP shell and use other configuration options.

You do not need any additional software on your PC to set up a Telnet connection to your device: Telnet is available on all operating systems.

Proceed as follows:

Windows

- (1) Click **Run...** in the Windows Start menu.
- (2) Enter `telnet <IP address of your device>`.
- (3) Click **OK**.
A window with the login prompt appears. You are now in the SNMP shell of your device.
- (4) Continue with [Logging in for Configuration](#) on page 55.

Unix

You can also set up a Telnet connection on UNIX and Linux without any problem:

- (1) Enter `telnet <IP address of your device>` in a terminal.
A window with the login prompt appears. You are now in the SNMP shell of your device.
- (2) Continue with [Logging in for Configuration](#) on page 55.

8.1.1.3 SSH

In addition to the unencrypted and potentially viewable Telnet session, you can also connect to your device via an SSH connection. This is encrypted, so all the remote maintenance options can be carried out securely.

The following preconditions must be met in order to connect to the device via SSH:

- The encryption keys needed for the process must be available on the device.
- An SSH client must be installed on your PC.

Encryption keys

First of all, make sure that the keys for encrypting the connection are available on your device:

- (1) Log in to one of the types already available on your device (e.g. via Telnet - for login

see [Login](#) on page 54).

- (2) Enter `update -i` for the input prompt. You are now in the Flash Management shell.
- (3) Call up a list of all the files saved on the device: `ls -al`.

If you see a display like the one below, the keys needed are already there and you can connect to the device via SSH:

```
Flash-Sh > ls -al

Flags Version Length Date Name ...

Vr-xpbc-B 7.1.04 2994754 2004/09/02 14:11:48 box150_srel.ppc860

Vrw-pl--f 0.0 350 2004/09/07 10:44:14 sshd_host_rsa_key.pub

Vrw-pl--f 0.0 1011 2004/09/07 10:44:12 sshd_host_rsa_key

Vrw-pl--f 0.0.01 730 2004/09/07 10:42:17 sshd_host_dsa_key.pub

Vrw-pl--f 0.0.01 796 2004/09/07 10:42:16 sshd_host_dsa_key

Flash-Sh >
```



Note

The device generates a key pair for each of the algorithms (RSA and DSA), i.e. two files must be stored in the flash for each algorithm (see example at above).

If no keys are available, you have to generate these first. Proceed as follows:

- (1) Leave the Flash Management shell with `exit`.
- (2) Launch the **GUI** and log on to your device (see [Call up the GUI](#) on page 58).
- (3) Make sure that *Deutsch* is selected as the language.
- (4) Check the key status in the **System Management->Administrative Access->SSH** menu. If both keys are available, you'll see in both fields **RSA Key Status** and **DSA Key Status** the value *Generated*.
- (5) If one or both of these fields contains the value *Not generated*, you must generate the relevant key. To have the device generate the key, click **Generate**.
The device generates the corresponding key and stores it in the FlashROM. *Generated* indicates successful generation.
- (6) Make sure that both keys have been successfully generated. If necessary, repeat the procedure described above.

Login via SSH

Proceed as follows to log in on your device via SSH:

If you have made sure that all the keys needed are available on the device, you have to check whether an SSH client is installed on your PC. Most UNIX and Linux distributions install a SSH client by default. Additional software, e.g. PuTTY, usually has to be installed on a Windows PC.

Proceed as follows to log in on your device via SSH:

UNIX

- (1) Enter `ssh <IP address of the device>` in a terminal.
The login prompt window appears. This is located in the SNMP shell of the device.
- (2) Continue with [Login](#) on page 54.

Windows

- (1) How an SSH connection is set up very much depends on the software used. Consult the documentation for the program you are using.
As soon as you have connected to the device, the login prompt window will appear.
You are now in the SNMP shell of the device.
- (2) Continue with [Login](#) on page 54.



Note

PuTTY requires certain settings for a connection to a Teldat device. The support pages of <http://www.teldat.de> include FAQs, which list the required settings.

8.1.2 Access via the Serial Interface

Each Teldat gateway has a serial interface, with which a PC can be connected directly. The following chapter describes what you have to remember when setting up a serial connection and what you can do to configure your device in this way.

Access via the serial interface is ideal if you are setting up an initial configuration of your device and a LAN access is not possible via the pre-configured IP address (192.168.0.254/255.255.255.0).

Windows

If you are using a Windows PC, you need a terminal program for the serial connection, e.g. HyperTerminal. Make sure that HyperTerminal was also installed on the PC with the Windows installation. However, you can also use any other terminal program that can be set to the corresponding parameters (see below).

Proceed as follows to access your device via the serial interface:

- (1) In the Windows Start menu, click **Programs -> Accessories -> Communication -> HyperTerminal -> Device on COM1** (or **Device on COM2**, if you use the COM2 port of your PC) to start HyperTerminal.
- (2) Press **Return** (at least once) after the HyperTerminal window opens.

A window with the login prompt appears. You are now in the SNMP shell of your device. You can now log in on your device and start the configuration.

Check

If the login prompt does not appear after you press **Return** several times, the connection to your device has not been set up successfully.

Therefore, check the COM1 or COM2 settings on your PC.

- (1) Click on **File -> Properties**.
- (2) Click **Configure** in the **Connect to** tab.
The following settings are necessary:
 - Bits per second: *9600*
 - Data bits: *8*
 - Parity: *open*
 - Stopbits: *1*
 - Flow control: *open*
- (3) Enter the values and click **OK**.
- (4) Make the following settings in the **Settings** tab:
 - Emulation: *VT100*
- (5) Click **OK**.

The changes to the terminal program settings do not take effect until you disconnect the connection to your device and then make the connection again.

If you use HyperTerminal, there may be problems with displaying umlauts and other special characters. If necessary, therefore, set HyperTerminal to *Autodetection* instead of *VT100*.

Unix

You will require a terminal program such as `cu` (on System V), `tip` (on BSD) or `minicom` (on Linux). The settings for these programs correspond to those listed above.

Example of a command line for using `cu`: `cu: cu -s 9600 -c/dev/ttyS1`

Example of a command line for using `tip`: `tip: tip -9600 /dev/ttyS1`

8.1.3 Access over ISDN

All devices that have an ISDN interface can be accessed and configured from another device via an ISDN call.

Access over ISDN with ISDN Login is especially recommended if your device is to be remotely configured or maintained. This is also possible even if your device is still in the ex works state. Access is then obtained with the aid of a device that is already configured or a PC with an ISDN card in the remote LAN. The device to be configured in your own LAN is reached via a number of the ISDN connection (e.g. 1234). This enables the administrator in the Remote LAN to configure your device remotely, for example.



Note

If you connect an unconfigured device to an ISDN connection in parallel to a PBX, the PBX cannot take any calls until an ISDN number is configured on the device.

Access over ISDN costs money. If your device and your computer are in the LAN, it is cheaper to access your device via the LAN or via the serial interface.

Your device in your LAN merely needs to be connected to the ISDN connection and switched on.

To reach your device over ISDN Login, proceed as follows:

- (1) Connect your device to the ISDN.
- (2) Log in as administrator on your device in the remote LAN in the usual way.
- (3) In the SNMP shell, type in `isdnlogin <number of the ISDN connection of your device>`, e.g. `isdnlogin 1234`.
- (4) The login prompt appears. You are now in the SNMP shell of your device.

Continue with [Logging in for Configuration](#) on page 55.

8.2 Login

With certain access data, you can log in on your device and carry out different actions. The extent of the actions available depend on the authorisations of the user concerned.

A login prompt appears first, regardless of how you access your device. You cannot view any information on the device or change the configuration without authentication.

8.2.1 User names and passwords in ex works state

In its ex works state, your device is provided with the following user names and passwords:

User names and passwords in ex works state

Login name	Password	Authorisations
admin	admin	Read and change system variables, save configurations; use GUI.
write	public	Read and write system variables (except passwords) (changes are lost when you switch off your device).
read	public	Read system variables (except passwords).

It is only possible to change and save configurations if you log in with the user name `admin`. Access information (user names and passwords) can also only be changed if you log in with the user name `admin`. For security reasons, passwords are normally shown not in plain text but only as asterisks. The user names, on the other hand, are displayed as plain text.

The security concept of your device enables you to read all the other configuration settings with the user name `read`, but not the access information. It is therefore impossible to log in with `read`, read the password of the `admin` user and subsequently log in with `admin` and make changes to the configuration.



Caution

All Teldat devices are delivered with the same username and password. As long as the password remains unchanged, they are therefore not protected against unauthorised use. How to change the passwords is described in [Passwords](#) on page 75.

Make sure you change the passwords to prevent unauthorised access to your device!

If you have forgotten your password, you must reset your device to the ex works state, which means your configuration will be lost.

8.2.2 Logging in for Configuration

Set up a connection to the device. The access options are described in [Access Options](#) on page 49.

GUI (Graphical User Interface)

Log in via the HTML surface as follows:

- (1) Enter your user name in the **User** field of the input window.
- (2) Enter your password in the **Password** field of the input window and confirm with **Return** or click the **Login** button.

The status page of the **GUI** opens in the browser.

SNMP shell

Log into the SNMP shell as follows:

- (1) Enter your user name e.g. `admin`, and confirm with **Return**.
- (2) Enter your user password, e.g. `admin`, and confirm with **Return**.

Your device logs in with the input prompt, e.g. `R4402:>`. The login was successful. You are now in the SNMP shell.


To leave the SNMP shell after completing the configuration, enter `exit` and press **Return**.

8.3 Configuration options

This chapter first offers an overview of the various tools you can use for configuration of your device.

You can configure your device in the following ways:

- **GUI**
- Assistant
- SNMP shell commands



Note

The detailed help system of the Wizard will help you to clarify any questions you may have. Therefore the wizard will not be discussed in any greater detail in this document.

The configuration options available to you depend on the type of connection to your device:

Types of connections and configurations

Type of connection	Possible types of configuration
LAN	Assistant, GUI , shell command
Serial connection	Shell command

The following chapters describe the configuration based on **GUI**.



Note

To change the device configuration, you must log in with the user name `admin`. If you do not know the password, you cannot make any configuration settings. This applies to all types of configuration.

8.3.1 GUI (Graphical User Interface)

The **GUI** is a web-based graphic user surface that you can use from any PC with an up-to-date Web browser via an HTTP or HTTPS connection.

With the **GUI** you can perform all the configuration tasks easily and conveniently. It is integrated in your device and is available in English. If required, other languages can be downloaded from the download area [Software & Configuration](#) on page 508 of www.teldat.de and installed on your device. To do this, proceed as described in [Options](#) on page 508.

The settings you make with the **GUI** are applied with the **OK** or **Apply** button of the menu, and you do not have to restart the device.

If you finish the configuration and want to save your settings so that they are loaded as the boot configuration when you reboot your device, save these by clicking the **Save configuration** button.

You can also use the **GUI** to monitor the most important function parameters of your device.

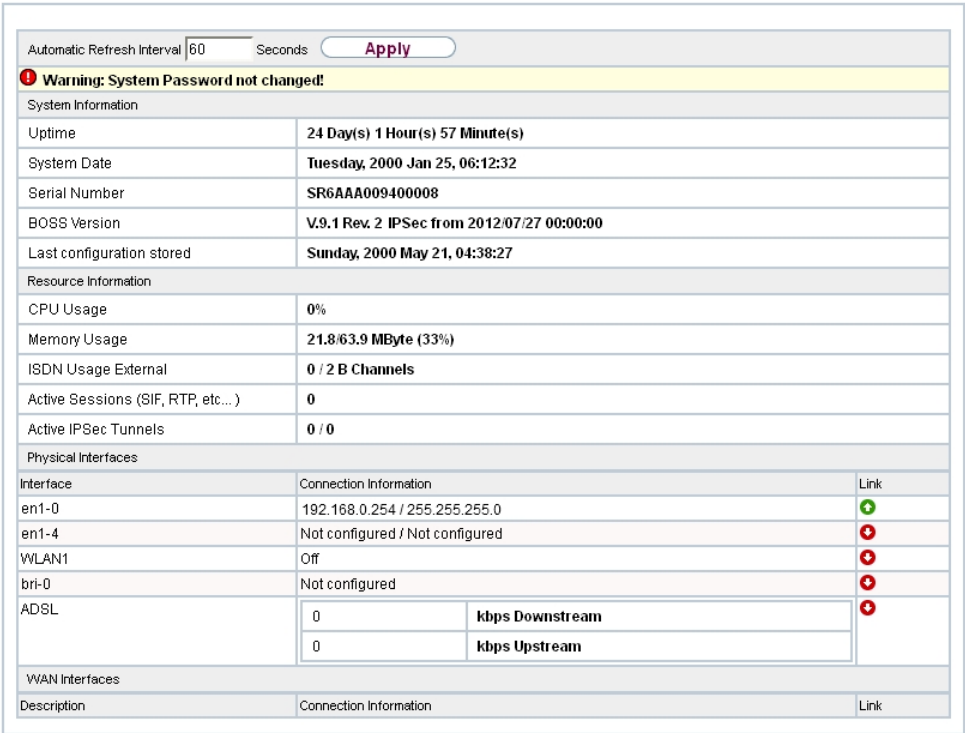


Fig. 20: GUI Home page

8.3.1.1 Call up the GUI .

- (1) Check whether the device is connected and switched on and that all the necessary cables are correctly connected (see *Setting up and connecting* on page 6).
- (2) Check the settings of the PC from which you want to configure your device (see *Configuring a PC* on page 44).
- (3) Open a web browser.
- (4) Enter `http://192.168.0.254` in the address field of the web browser.
- (5) Enter `admin` in the **User** field and enter `admin` in the **Password** field and click **LOGIN**.

You are now in the status menu of your device's **GUI** (see *Status* on page 70).

8.3.1.2 Operating elements

GUI window

The **GUI** window is divided into three areas:

- The header
- The navigation bar
- The main configuration window

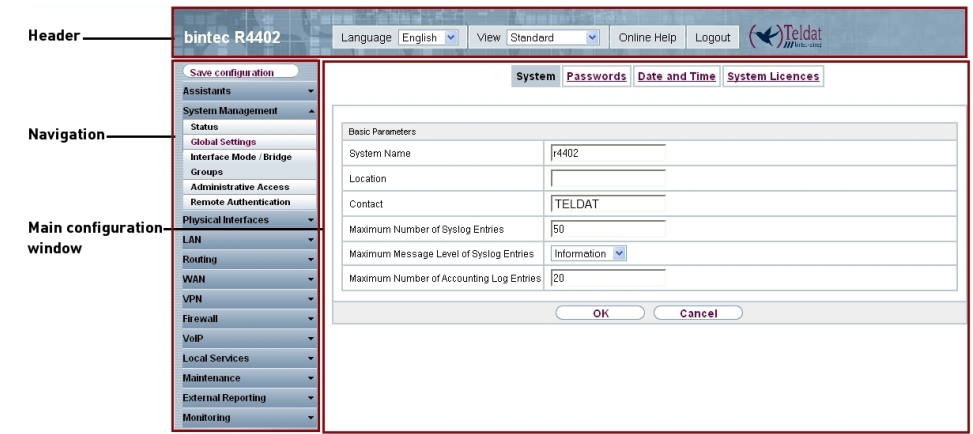


Fig. 21: Areas of the GUI

Header

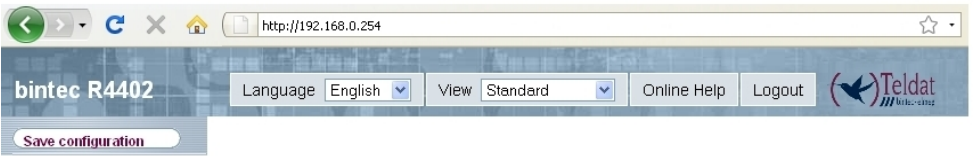
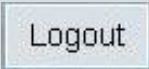


Fig. 22: GUI Header

GUI Header

Menu	Position
<div>LanguageEnglish</div>	Language: In the dropdown menu, choose the language in which you want to display the GUI . Here you can choose the language in which you perform the configuration. German and English are available.
<div>ViewStandard</div>	View: Select the desired view from the dropdown menu. Stand-ard and SNMP browsers can be selected.
<div>Online Help</div>	Online Help: Click this button if you want help with the menu now active. The description of the sub-menu where you are now is displayed.

Menu	Position
	<p>Logout: If you want to end the configuration, click this button to log out of your device. A window is opened offering you the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Save configuration, save previous boot configuration, then exit.• Save configuration, then exit.• Exit without saving.

Navigation bar



Fig. 23: Save Configuration button

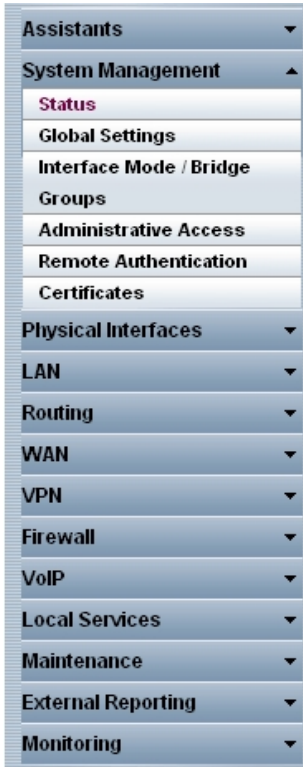


Fig. 24: Menus

The **Save configuration** button is found in the navigation bar.

If you save a current configuration, you can save this as the boot configuration or you can also archive the previous boot configuration as a backup.

If you click the **Save configuration** button in the **GUI**, you will be asked "Do you really want to save the current configuration as a boot configuration?"

You have the following two options:

- *Save configuration*, i.e. save the current configuration as the boot configuration
- *Save configuration with boot backup* i.e. save current configuration as boot configuration while also archiving previous boot configuration as backup.

If you want to load the archived boot configuration into your device, go to the **Maintenance->Software & Configuration** menu, select **Action = Import configuration** and click on **Go**. The archived backup is used as the current boot configuration.

The navigation bar also contains the main configuration menus and their sub-menus.

Click the main menu you require. The corresponding sub-menu then opens.

If you click the sub-menu you want, the entry selected will be displayed in red. All the other sub-menus will be closed. You can see at a glance the sub-menu you are in.

Status page

If you launch the **GUI**, the status page of your device is displayed after you log in. The most important data of your device can be seen on this at a glance.


Main configuration window


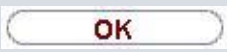
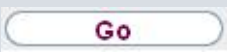


The sub-menus generally contain several pages. These are called using the buttons at the top of the main window. If you click a button, the window is opened with the basic parameters. You can extend this by clicking the **Advanced Settings** tab, which displays the additional options.

Configuration elements


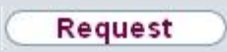


The various actions that you can perform when configuring your device in the **GUI** are triggered by means of the following buttons:

GUI buttons

Button	Position
	Updates the view.








Button	Position
	If you do not want to save a newly configured list entry, cancel this and any settings made by pressing Cancel .
	Confirms the settings of a new entry and the parameter changes in a list.
	Immediately starts the configured action.
	Calls the sub-menu to create a new entry.
	Inserts an entry in an internal list.










GUI buttons for special functions

Button	Position
	In the System Management->Certificates->Certificate List menu and the System Management->Certificates->CRLs menu, this button activates the sub-menus for configuration of the certificate or CRL imports.
	In the System Management->Certificates->Certificate List menu, this button activates the sub-menu for the configuration of the certificate request.
	In the Monitoring->ISDN/Modem->Current Calls menu, pressing this button ends the active calls selected in the  column.

Various icons indicate the following possible actions or statuses:

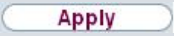



GUI Icons

Symbol	Position
	Deletes the list entry.
	Displays the menu for changing the settings of an entry.
	Displays the details for an entry.
	Moves an entry. A combo box opens in which you can choose the list entry that selected entry is to be placed in front of/after.
	Creates another list entry first and opens the configuration menu.
	Sets the status of the entry to <i>Inactive</i> .
	Sets the status of the entry to <i>Active</i> .

Symbol	Position
	Indicates "Dormant" status for an interface or connection.
	Indicates "Up" status for an interface or connection.
	Indicates "Down" status for an interface or connection.
	Indicates "Blocked" status for an interface or connection.
	Indicates "Going up" status for an interface or connection.
	Indicates that data traffic is encrypted.
	Triggers a WLAN bandscan.
	Displays the next page in a list.
	Displays the previous page in a list.

You can select the following operating functions in the list view:

GUI List options

Menu	Position
Update Interval	<p>Here you can set the interval in which the view is to be updated.</p> <p>To do this, enter a period in seconds in the input field and confirm it with .</p>
Filter	<p>You can have the list entries filtered and displayed according to certain criteria.</p> <p>You can determine the number of entries displayed per page by entering the required number in View x per page.</p> <p>Use the  and  buttons to scroll one page forward and one page back.</p> <p>You can filter according to certain keywords within the configuration parameters by selecting the filter rule you want under Filter in x <Option> y and entering the search word in the input field.  launches filter operation.</p>
Configuration elements	<p>Some lists contain configuration elements.</p> <p>You can therefore change the configuration of the correspond-</p>

Menu	Position
	ing list entry directly in the list.

Automatic Refresh Interval60

Seconds

Apply

Fig. 25: Configuration of the update interval

View

20

per page

<<>>

Filter in

None

>

equal

>

Go

Fig. 26: Filter list

Structure of the GUI configuration menu

The menus of the **GUI** contain the following basic structures:


GUI menu structure

Menu	Position
Basic configuration menu/list	<p>When you select a menu from the navigation bar, the menu of basic parameters is displayed first. In a sub-menu containing several pages, the menu containing the basic parameters is displayed on the first page.</p> <p>The menu contains either a list of all the configured entries or the basic settings for the function concerned.</p>
Sub-menu <div>New</div>	<p>The New button is available in each menu in which a list of all the configured entries is displayed. Click the button to display the configuration menu for creating a new list entry.</p>
Sub-menu <div></div>	<p>Click this button to process the existing list entry. You go to the configuration menu.</p>
Menu <div>Advanced Settings</div>	<p>Click this tab to display extended configuration options.</p>

The following options are available for the configuration:

GUI Configuration elements

Menu	Position
Input fields	<p>e.g. empty text field</p> <div></div> <p>Text field with hidden input</p> <div></div>

Menu	Position
	Enter the data.
Radio buttons	<div>e.g.<div><div>Address Mode</div><div><input checked="" type="radio"/> Static <input type="radio"/> DHCP</div></div><div>Select the corresponding option.</div></div>
Checkboxes	<div>e.g. activation by selecting checkbox<div><input type="checkbox"/> Enabled</div><div>Selection of several possible options<div><div><div>Encryption Algorithms</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Blowfish <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES-128 <input type="checkbox"/> AES-256</div></div><div><div>Hashing Algorithms</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MD5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SHA-1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RIPEMD160</div></div></div></div></div>
Dropdown menus	<div>e.g.<div><div>Configured Speed / Mode</div><div><div>Full Autonegotiation</div><div>Full Autonegotiation</div><div>Full Autonegotiation</div><div>Full Autonegotiation</div></div></div><div>Click the arrow to open the list. Select the required option using the mouse.</div></div>
Internal lists	<div>e.g.<div><div><div>Remote IP Address</div><div>Netmask</div><div><div></div><div>255.255.255.0</div><div></div></div><div>Add</div></div><div>Click <div>Add</div> . A new list entry is created. Enter the corresponding data. If list input fields remain empty, these are not saved when you confirm with OK. Delete the entries by clicking the .</div></div></div>

Display of options that are not available



Options that are not available because they depend on the selection of other options are generally hidden. If the display of these options could be helpful for a configuration decision, they are instead greyed out and cannot be selected.



Important

Please look at the messages displayed in the sub-menus. These provide information on any incorrect configurations.

Warning symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	This symbol appears in messages referring you to settings that were made with the Setup Tool.
	This symbol appears in messages referring you to the fact that values were entered or selected incorrectly.
<p>Pay particular attention to the following message:</p> <p>"Warning: Changes not supported by the Setup Tool!" If you change them with the GUI, this can cause inconsistencies or malfunctions. Therefore, it is recommended that the configuration is continued with the Setup Tool.</p>	

8.3.1.3 GUI menus

The configuration options of your device are contained in the sub-menus, which are displayed in the navigation bar in the left-hand part of the window.



Note

Please note that not all devices have the full range of functions. Check the software of your device on the corresponding product page under www.teldat.de.

8.3.2 SNMP shell

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol that defines how you can access the configuration settings.

All configuration settings are stored in the MIB (Management Information Base) in the form of MIB tables and MIB variables. You can access these directly from the SNMP shell via SNMP commands. This type of configuration requires a detailed knowledge of our devices.

8.4 BOOTmonitor

The BOOTmonitor is only available over a serial connection to the device.

The BOOTmonitor provides the following functions, which you select by entering the corresponding number:

- (1) Boot System (reboot the system):

The device loads the compressed boot file from the flash memory to the working memory. This happens automatically on starting.

- (2) Software Update via TFTP:
The device performs a software update via a TFTP server.
- (3) Software Update via XMODEM:
The device performs a software update via a serial interface with XMODEM.
- (4) Delete configuration:
The device is reset to the ex works state. All configuration files are deleted and the BOOTmonitor settings are set to the default values.
- (5) Default BOOTmonitor Parameters:
You can change the default settings of the BOOTmonitor of the device, e.g. the baud rate for serial connections.
- (6) Show System Information:
Shows useful information about your device, e.g. serial number, MAC address and software versions.

The BOOTmonitor is started as follows.

The device passes through various functional states when starting:

- Start mode
- BOOTmonitor mode
- Normal mode

After some self-tests have been successfully carried out in the start mode, your device reaches the BOOTmonitor mode. The BOOTmonitor prompt is displayed if you are serially connected to your device.

Press <sp> for boot monitor or any other key to boot system

```
R4402 Bootmonitor V.7.9 Rev.1 from 2009/10/19 00:00:00
Copyright (c) 1996-2005 by Teldat GmbH
```

```
(1) Boot System
(2) Software Update via TFTP
(3) Software Update via XMODEM
(4) Delete Configuration
(5) Default Bootmonitor Parameters
(6) Show System Information
```

```
Your Choice> _
```

After display of the BOOTmonitor prompt, press the space bar within four seconds to use the functions of the BOOTmonitor. If you do not make an entry within four seconds, the device changes back to normal operating mode.

**Note**

If you change the baudrate (the preset value is 9600 baud), make sure the terminal program used also uses this baudrate. If this is not the case, you will not be able to establish a serial connection to the device.

Chapter 9 Assistants

The **Assistants** menu offers step-by-step instructions for the following basic configuration tasks:

- **First steps**
- **Internet Access**
- **VPN**
- **SWYX** (only with active optional DSP module)
- **VoIP PBX in LAN**

Choose the corresponding task from the navigation bar and follow the instructions and explanations on the separate pages of the Wizard.

Chapter 10 System Management

The **System Management** menu contains general system information and settings.

You see a system status overview. Global system parameters such as the system name, date/time, passwords and licences are managed and the access and authentication methods are configured.

10.1 Status

If you log into the **GUI**, your device's status page is displayed, which shows the most important system information.

You see an overview of the following data:

- System status
- Your device's activities: Resource utilisation, active sessions and tunnels
- Status and basic configuration of the LAN, WAN, ISDN, and ADSL interfaces
- Information on plugged add-on modules (if any)

You can customise the update interval of the status page by entering the desired period in seconds as **Automatic Refresh Interval** and clicking on the **Apply** button.



Caution

Under **Automatic Refresh Interval** do not enter a value of less than 5 seconds, otherwise the refresh interval of the screen will be too short to make further changes!

Automatic Refresh Interval Seconds Apply

Warning: System Password not changed!

System Information

Uptime	0 Day(s) 0 Hour(s) 36 Minute(s)	
System Date	Saturday, 2004 Feb 07, 23:37:45	
Serial Number	RNB060011DF0309	
BOSS Version	V.9.1 Rev. 2 IPSec from 2012/08/31 00:00:00	
Back-up of configuration on SD card	Not available	
Last configuration stored	Saturday, 2004 Feb 07, 21:46:44	

Resource Information

CPU Usage	0%	
Memory Usage	32.5/1023.9 MByte (3%)	
Memory Card	0.324/987.738 MByte (0%)	
ISDN Usage External	0 / 2 B Channels	
Active Sessions (SIF, RTP, etc...)	0	
Active IPSec Tunnels	0 / 0	

Physical Interfaces

Interface	Connection Information	Link
en1-0	172.16.105.140 / 255.255.255.224	<div></div>
en1-5	Not configured / Not configured	<div></div>
LTE-6-0	<div></div> -113 dBm	<div></div>
bri-0	Not configured	<div></div>

WAN Interfaces

Description	Connection Information	Link
LTE	172.22.129.38 Obtained by server	<div></div>

Fig. 28: System Management->Status

The menu **System Management->Status** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the System Information menu.

Field	Value
Uptime	Displays the time past since the device was rebooted.
System Date	Displays the current system date and system time.
Serial Number	Displays the device serial number.
BOSS Version	Displays the currently loaded version of the system software.
Back-up of configuration on SD card	Only with inserted SD cart visible (RXL1250 / RXL12100). Indicates whether a backup configuration is available on the SD card or not.
Last configuration stored	Displays day, date and time of the last saved configuration (boot configuration in flash).

Fields in the Resource Information menu.

Field	Value
CPU Usage	Displays the CPU usage as a percentage.
Memory Usage	Displays the usage of the working memory in MByte in relation to the available total working memory in MByte. The usage is also displayed in brackets as a percentage.
Memory Card	Shows the status of any optional external memory card that has been inserted, and the size of the memory in GBytes or MBytes.
ISDN Usage Internal	Shows the number of active B channels and the maximum number of available B channels for internal connections.
ISDN Usage External	Shows the number of active B channels and the maximum number of available B channels for external connections.
Active Sessions (SIF, RTP, etc...)	Displays the total of all SIF, TDRS, and IP load balancing sessions.
Active IPSec Tunnels	Displays the number of currently active IPSec tunnels in relation to the number of configured IPSec tunnels.

Fields in the Modules menu

Field	Value
DSP Module	Shows the type of plugged DSP module if any. An acquired fax licence, if any, can be displayed.

Fields in the Physical Interfaces menu.

Field	Value
Interface - Connection Information - Link	<p>The physical interfaces are listed here and their most important settings are shown. The system also displays whether the interface is connected or active.</p> <p>Interface specifics for Ethernet interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IP address• Netmask• Not configured <p>Interface specifics for ISDN interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configured• Not configured <p>Interface specifics for xDSL interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Downstream/Upstream Line Speed

Field	Value
	Interface specifics for LTE connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Current quality of the UMTS/LTE connection

Fields in the WAN Interfaces menu.

Field	Value
Description - Connection Information - Link	All the WAN interfaces are listed here and their most important settings are shown. The system also displays whether the interface is active.

10.2 Global Settings

The basic system parameters are managed in the **Global Settings** menu.

10.2.1 System

Your device's basic system data are entered in the **System Management->Global Settings->System** menu.

System

Passwords

Date and Time

System Licences

Basic Settings

System Name	Product Name
Location	
Contact	TELDAT
Maximum Number of Syslog Entries	50
Maximum Message Level of Syslog Entries	Information
Maximum Number of Accounting Log Entries	20
Manual WLAN Controller IP Address	
LED mode	Status

OK

Cancel

Fig. 29: **System Management->Global Settings->System**

The **System Management->Global Settings->System** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Value
System Name	<p>Enter the system name of your device. This is also used as the PPP host name.</p> <p>A character string with a maximum of 255 characters is possible.</p> <p>The device type is entered as the default value.</p>
Location	<p>Enter the location of your device.</p>
Contact	<p>Enter the relevant contact person. Here you can enter the e-mail address of the system administrator, for example.</p> <p>A character string with a maximum of 255 characters is possible.</p> <p>The default value is <i>TEL DAT</i>.</p>
Maximum Number of Syslog Entries	<p>Enter the maximum number of syslog messages that are stored internally in the device.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>1000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>50</i>. You can display the stored messages in Monitoring->Internal Log.</p>
Maximum Message Level of Syslog Entries	<p>Select the priority of system messages above which a log should be created.</p> <p>System messages are only recorded internally if they have a higher or identical priority to that indicated, i.e. all messages generated are recorded at <i>Debug</i> syslog level.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Emergency</i>: Only messages with emergency priority are recorded. • <i>Alert</i>: Messages with emergency and alert priority are recorded. • <i>Critical</i>: Messages with emergency, alert and critical priority are recorded. • <i>Error</i>: Messages with emergency, alert, critical and error priority are recorded.

Field	Value
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Warning</i>: Messages with emergency, alert, critical, error and warning priority are recorded.• <i>Notice</i>: Messages with emergency, alert, critical, error, warning and notice priority are recorded.• <i>Information</i> (default value): Messages with emergency, alert, critical, error, warning, notice and information priority are recorded.• <i>Debug</i>: All messages are recorded.
Maximum Number of Accounting Log Entries	<p>Enter the maximum number of accounting entries that are stored internally in the device.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>1000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>20</i>.</p>
Manual WLAN Controller IP Address	<p>The feature is only for devices with WLAN controller available.</p> <p>Enter the IP address of the WLAN controller.</p> <p>The value can only be modified if the WLAN controller function is enabled.</p>
LED Mode	<p>The feature is only for W1003n, W2003n, W2003n-ext and W2004n available.</p> <p>Select the lighting scheme of the LEDs.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Status</i> (default value): Only the status LED flashes once per second.• <i>Flashing</i>: All LEDs show their standard behavior.• <i>Off</i>: All LEDs are deactivated.

10.2.2 Passwords

Setting the passwords is another basic system setting.

System

Passwords

Date and Time

System Licences

System Password

System Admin Password

.....

Confirm Admin Password

.....

SNMP Communities

SNMP Read Community

.....

SNMP Write Community

.....

Global Password Options

Show passwords and keys in clear text

Show

OK

Cancel

Fig. 30: **System Management->Global Settings->Passwords**



Note

All Teldat devices are delivered with the same username and password. As long as the password remains unchanged, they are not protected against unauthorised use.

Make sure you change the passwords to prevent unauthorised access to the device

If the password is not changed, under **System Management->Status** there appears the warning: "System password not changed!"

The **System Management->Global Settings->Passwords** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the System Password menu.

Field	Value
System Admin Password	Enter the password for the user name <code>admin</code> . This password is also used with SNMPv3 for authentication (MD5) and encryption (DES).
Confirm Admin Password	Confirm the password by entering it again.

Fields in the SNMP Communities menu.

Field	Value
SNMP Read Community	Enter the password for the user name <code>read</code> .
SNMP Write Com-	Enter the password for the user name <code>write</code> .

Field	Value
munity	

Fields in the Global Password Options menu

Field	Value
Show passwords and keys in clear text	<p>Define whether the passwords are to be displayed in clear text (plain text).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Show</i></p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>If you activate the function, all passwords and keys in all menus are displayed and can be edited in plain text.</p> <p>One exception is IPSec keys. They can only be entered in plain text. If you press OK or call the menu again, they are displayed as asterisks.</p>

10.2.3 Date and Time

You need the system time for tasks such as correct timestamps for system messages, accounting or IPSec certificates.

System

Passwords

Date and Time

System Licences

Basic Settings

Time Zone

Europe/Berlin

Current Local Time

Saturday, 2000 Apr 29, 05:35:41

Manual Time Settings

Set Date

Day

Month

Year

Set Time

Hour

Minute

Automatic Time Settings (Time Protocol)

ISDN Timeserver

☐ Enabled

First Timeserver

SNTP

Second Timeserver

SNTP

Third Timeserver

SNTP

Time Update Interval

1440

Minute(s)

Time Update Policy

Normal

Internal Time Server

☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 31: **System Management->Global Settings->Date and Time**

You have the following options for determining the system time (local time):

ISDN/Manual

The system time is updated via ISDN, i.e. the date and time are taken from the ISDN when the first outgoing call is made, or is set manually on the device.


If the correct location of the device (country/city) is set for the **Time Zone**, switching from summer time to winter time (and back) is automatic. This is independent of the exchange time or the ntp server time. Summer time starts on the last Sunday in March by switching from 2 a.m. to 3 a.m. The calendar-related or schedule-related switches that are scheduled for the missing hour are then carried out. Winter time starts on the last Sunday in October by switching from 3 a.m. to 2 a.m. The calendar-related or schedule-related switches that are scheduled for the additional hour are then carried out.

If a value other than Universal Time Coordinated (UTC), option *UTC+-x*, has been chosen for the **Time Zone**, the switch from summer to winter time must be carried out manually when required.

Time server

You can obtain the system time automatically, e.g. using various time servers. To ensure

that the device uses the desired current time, you should configure one or more time servers. Switching from summer time to winter time (and back) must be carried out manually if the time is derived using this method by changing the value in the **Time Zone** field with an option UTC+ or UTC-.



Note

If a method for automatically deriving the time is defined on the device, the values obtained in this way automatically have higher priority. A manually entered system time is therefore overwritten.

The menu **System Management->Global Settings->Date and Time** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
Time Zone	Select the time zone in which your device is installed. You can select Universal Time Coordinated (UTC) plus or minus the deviation in hours or a predefined location, e.g. <i>Europe/Berlin</i> .
Current Local Time	The current date and current system time are shown here. The entry cannot be changed.

Fields in the Manual Time Settings menu.

Field	Description
Set Date	Enter a new date. Format: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Day: dd• Month: mm• Year: yyyy
Set Time	Enter a new time. Format: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Hour: hh• Minute: mm

Fields in the Automatic Time Settings (Time Protocol) menu.

Field	Description
ISDN Timeserver	<p>Only for devices with ISDN interface.</p> <p>Determine whether the system time is to be updated via ISDN.</p> <p>If a time server is configured, the time is only determined over ISDN until a successful update is received from this time server. Updating over ISDN is deactivated for the period in which the time is determined by means of a time server.</p> <p>The function is activated with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
First Timeserver	<p>Enter the primary time server, by using either a domain name or an IP address.</p> <p>In addition, select the protocol for the time server request.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>SNTP</i> (default value): This server uses the simple network time protocol via UDP port 123.• <i>Time Service / UDP</i>: This server uses the Time service with UDP port 37.• <i>Time Service / TCP</i>: This server uses the Time service with TCP port 37.• <i>None</i>: This time server is not currently used for the time request.
Second Timeserver	<p>Enter the secondary time server, by using either a domain name or an IP address.</p> <p>In addition, select the protocol for the time server request.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>SNTP</i> (default value): This server uses the simple network time protocol via UDP port 123.• <i>Time Service / UDP</i>: This server uses the Time service with UDP port 37.• <i>Time Service / TCP</i>: This server uses the Time service with TCP port 37.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i>: This time server is not currently used for the time request.
Third Timeserver	<p>Enter the third time server, by using either a domain name or an IP address.</p> <p>In addition, select the protocol for the time server request.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>SNTP</i> (default value): This server uses the simple network time protocol via UDP port 123.• <i>Time Service / UDP</i>: This server uses the Time service with UDP port 37.• <i>Time Service / TCP</i>: This server uses the Time service with TCP port 37.• <i>None</i>: This time server is not currently used for the time request.
Time Update Interval	<p>Enter the time interval in minutes at which the time is automatically updated.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1440</i>.</p>
Time Update Policy	<p>Enter the time period after which the system attempts to contact the time server again following a failed time update.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Normal</i> (default value): The system attempts to contact the time server after 1, 2, 4, 8, and 16 minutes.• <i>Aggressive</i>: For ten minutes, the system attempts to contact the time server after 1, 2, 4, 8 seconds and then every 10 seconds.• <i>Endless</i>: For an unlimited period, the system attempts to contact the time server after 1, 2, 4, 8 seconds and then every 10 seconds. <p>If certificates are used to encrypt data traffic in a VPN, it is extremely important that the correct time is set on the device. To ensure this is the case, for Time Update Policy, select the value <i>Endless</i>.</p>

Field	Description
Internal Time Server	<p>Select whether the internal timeserver is to be used.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>. Time requests from a client will be answered with the current system time. This is given as GMT, without offset.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default. Time requests from a client are not answered.</p>

10.2.4 System Licences

This chapter describes how to activate the functions of the software licences you have purchased.

The following licence types exist:

- Licences already available in the device's ex works state
- Free extra licences
- Extra licences at additional cost

The data sheet for your device tells you which licences are available in the device's ex works state and which can also be obtained free of charge or at additional cost. You can access this data sheet at www.teldat.de.

Entering licence data

You can obtain the licence data for extra licences via the online licensing pages in the support section at www.teldat.de. Please follow the online licensing instructions. (Please also note the information on the licence card for licences at additional cost.) You will then receive an e-mail containing the following data:

- **Licence Key** and
- **Licence Serial Number**.

You enter this data in the **System Management->Global Settings->System Licences->New** menu.

In the **System Management->Global Settings->System Licences->New** menu, a list of all registered licences is displayed (**Description**, **Licence Type**, **Licence Serial Number**, **Status**).

Possible values for Status

Licence	Meaning
OK	Subsystem is activated.
Not OK	Subsystem is not activated.
Not supported	You have entered a licence for a subsystem your device does not support.


In addition, above the list is shown the **System Licence ID** required for online licensing.



Note

To restore the standard licences for a device, click the **Default Licences** button (standard licences).

10.2.4.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to enter more licences.

System

Passwords

Date and Time

System Licences

Basic Settings

Licence Serial Number

Licence Key

OK

Cancel

Fig. 32: System Management->Global Settings->System Licences->New

Activating extra licences

You activate extra licences by adding the received licence information in the **System Management->Global Settings->System Licences->New** menu.

The menu **System Management->Global Settings->System Licences->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Value
Licence Serial Number	Enter the licence serial number you received when you bought the licence.
Licence Key	Enter the licence key you received by e-mail.



Note


If *Not OK* is displayed as the status:

- Enter the licence data again.
- Check your hardware serial number.

If *Not Supported* is displayed as the status, you have entered a license for a sub-system that your device does not support. This means you cannot use the functions of this licence.

Deactivating a licence

Proceed as follows to deactivate a licence:

- (1) Go to **System Management**->**Global Settings**->**System Licences**->**New**.
- (2) Press the  icon in the line containing the licence you want to delete.
- (3) Confirm with **OK**.

The licence is deactivated. You can reactivate your additional licence at any time by entering the valid licence key and licence serial number.

10.3 Interface Mode / Bridge Groups

In this menu, you define the operation mode for your device's interfaces.

Routing versus bridging

Bridging connects networks of the same type. In contrast to routing, bridges operate at layer 2 of the OSI model (data link layer), are independent of higher-level protocols and transmit data packets using MAC addresses. Data transmission is transparent, which means the information contained in the data packets is not interpreted.

With routing, different networks are connected at layer 3 (network layer) of the OSI model and information is routed from one network to the other.

Conventions for port/interface names

If your device has a radio port, it receives the interface name WLAN. If there are several radio modules, the names of wireless ports in the user interface of your device are made up of the following parts:

- (a) WLAN
- (b) Number of the physical port (1 or 2)

Example: *WLAN1* The name of the Ethernet port is made up of the following parts:

- (a) ETH
- (b) Number of the port

Example: *ETH1*

The name of the interface connected to an Ethernet port is made up of the following parts:

- (a) Abbreviation for interface type, whereby *en* stands for internet.
- (b) Number of the Ethernet port
- (c) Number of the interface

Example: *en1-0* (first interface on the first Ethernet port)

The name of the bridge group is made up of the following parts:

- (a) Abbreviation for interface type, whereby *br* stands for bridge group.
- (b) Number of the bridge group

Example: *br0* (first bridge group)

The name of the wireless network (VSS) is made up of the following parts:

Abbreviation for interface type, whereby *vss* stands for wireless network.

- (a) Number of the wireless module
- (b) Number of the interface

Example: *vss1-0* (first wireless network on the first wireless module)

The name of the WDS link or bridge link is made up of the following parts:

- (a) Abbreviation for interface type
- (b) Number of the wireless module on which the WDS link or bridge link is configured
- (c) Number of the WDS link or bridge link

Example: *wds1-0* (first WDS link or bridge link on the first wireless module)

The name of the client link is made up of the following parts:

- (a) Abbreviation for interface type
- (b) Number of the wireless module on which the client link is configured
- (c) Number of the client link

Example: `sta1-0` (first client link on the first wireless module)

The name of the virtual interface connected to an Ethernet port is made up of the following parts:

- (a) Abbreviation for interface type
- (b) Number of the Ethernet port
- (c) Number of the interface connected to the Ethernet port
- (d) Number of the virtual interface

Example: `en1-0-1` (first virtual interface based on the first interface on the first Ethernet port)

10.3.1 Interfaces

You define separately whether each interface is to operate in routing or bridging mode.

If you want to set bridging mode, you can either use existing bridge groups or create a new bridge group.

The default setting for all existing interfaces is routing mode. When selecting the option *New Bridge Group* for **Mode / Bridge Group**, a bridge group, i.e. `br0`, `br1` etc. is automatically created and the interface is run in bridging mode.

Interfaces

#	Interface Description	Mode / Bridge Group
1	en1-0	Routing Mode
2	en1-4	Routing Mode

Configuration Interface Select one

OKCancel

Fig. 33: **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces**

The **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Interfaces menu.

Field	Description
Interface Description	Displays the name of the interface.
Mode / Bridge Group	Select whether you want to run the interface in <i>Routing Mode</i> or whether you want to assign the interface to an existing (<i>br0</i> , <i>br1</i> etc.) or new bridge group (<i>New Bridge Group</i>).

Field	Description
	When selecting <i>New Bridge Group</i> , a new bridge group is automatically created after you click the OK button.
Configuration Interface	<div>Select the interface via which the configuration is to be carried out.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Select one</i> (default value): Ex works setting The right configuration interface must be selected from the other options.• <i>Ignore</i>: No interface is defined as configuration interface.• <i><Interface name></i>: Select the interface to be used for configuration. If this interface is in a bridge group, it is assigned the group's IP address when it is taken out of the group.

10.3.1.1 Add

Add

Choose the **New** button to edit the mode of PPP interfaces.

Interfaces

Interface

Select one

OK

Cancel


Fig. 34: System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces->Add

The **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces->Add** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Interfaces menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface whose status should be changed.

Edit for devices the Wlxxxxn and RS series

For WLAN clients in bridge mode (so-called MAC Bridge) you can also edit additional settings via the  icon.

Interfaces

Layer-2.5 Options

Interface	sta1-0
Wildcard Mode	last

OK

Cancel

Fig. 35: **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces->Add**
You can realise bridging for devices behind access clients with the MAC Bridge function. In wildcard mode you cannot define how Unicast non-IP frames or non-ARP frames are processed. To use the MAC bridge function, you must carry out configuration steps in several menus.

- (1)


Select **GUI** menu **Wireless LAN->WLAN->Radio Settings** and click the icon to modify an entry.
- (2)

Select **Operation Mode** = *Access Client* and save the settings with **OK**.
- (3)

Select the **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces** menu. The additional interface **sta1-0** is displayed.
- (4)

For interface **sta1-0** select Mode / Bridge Group = *br0* (<IPAddress>) and **Configuration Interface**= *en1-0* and save the settings with **OK**.
- (5)

Click the **Save configuration** button to save all of the configuration settings. You can use the MAC Bridge.

The **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces->** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Layer-2.5 Options menu.

Field	Value
Interface	Shows the interface that is being edited.
Wildcard Mode	<div>Select the Wildcard mode you want to use on the interface.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>none</i> (default value): Wildcard mode is not used.<i>static</i>: With this setting, you must enter the MAC address of a device that is connected over IP under Wildcard MAC Address. Each packet without IP and without ARP is forwarded to this device. This occurs even when the device is no longer connected.<i>first</i>: If you choose this setting, the MAC address of the first non-IP unicast frame or non-ARP unicast frame, which occurs</div>

Field	Value
	<p>on any of the Ethernet interfaces, is used as the wildcard MAC address. This wildcard MAC address can only be reset by rebooting the device or by selecting another wildcard mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>last</i>: If you choose this setting, the internal WLAN MAC address is used to establish a connection to the access point. As soon as a non-IP unicast frame or non-ARP unicast frame appears, it is forwarded to the MAC address from which the last non-IP unicast frame or non-ARP unicast frame was received on the Ethernet interface of the device. This wildcard MAC address is renewed with each non-IP unicast frame or non-ARP unicast frame.
Wildcard MAC Address	<p>Only for Wildcard Mode = <i>static</i></p> <p>Enter the MAC address of a device that is connected over IP.</p>
Transparent MAC Address	<p>Only for Wildcard Mode = <i>static, first</i></p> <p>Choose whether or not the Wildcard MAC Address are used in addition as WLAN MAC address to establish the connection to the access point.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

10.4 Administrative Access

In this menu, you can configure the administrative access to the device.

10.4.1 Access

In the **System Management->Administrative Access->Access** menu, a list of all IP-capable interfaces is displayed.

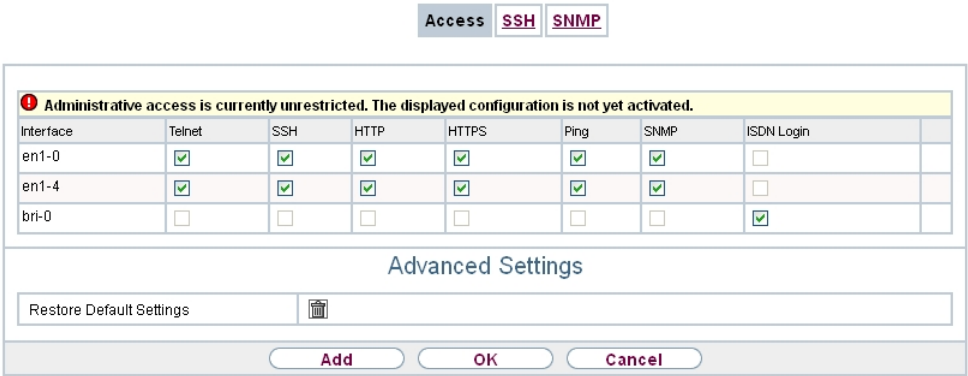



Fig. 36: System Management->Administrative Access->Access

For an Ethernet interface you can select the access parameters *Telnet*, *SSH*, *HTTP*, *HTTPS*, *Ping*, *SNMP* and for the ISDN interfaces *ISDN Login*.

Only for **hybird** devices: You can also authorise your device for maintenance work from Teldat's Customer Service department. You do this you enable either **Service Login (ISDN Web-Access)** or **Service Call Ticket (SSH Web Access)**, depending on the service you require, and select the **OK** button. Follow the instructions given by Telekom's Customer Service!

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu **Advanced Settings**

Field	Description
Restore Default Settings	Only when you make changes to the administrative access configuration are relevant access rules set up and activated. You can restore the default settings with the  icon.

10.4.1.1 Add

Select the **Add** button to configure administrative access for additional interfaces.



Fig. 37: System Management->Administrative Access->Access->Add

The **System Management->Administrative Access->Access->Add** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Access

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface for which administrative access is to be configured.

10.4.2 SSH

Your devices offers encrypted access to the shell. You can enable or disable this access in the **System Management->Administrative Access->SSH Enabled** menu (standard value). You can also access the options for configuring the SSH login.

AccessSSHSNMP

SSH (Secure Shell) Parameters

SSH service active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
SSH Port	<input type="text" value="22"/>
Maximum number of concurrent connections	<input type="text" value="1"/>

Authentication and Encryption Parameters

Encryption Algorithms	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Blowfish <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES-128 <input type="checkbox"/> AES-256
Hashing Algorithms	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MD5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SHA-1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RipeMD 160
Key Status	
RSA Key Status	Generated
DSA Key Status	Not generated [Generate]

Advanced Settings

Login Grace Time	<input type="text" value="600"/> Seconds
Compression	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
TCP Keepalives	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Logging Level	<div>Information</div>

OKCancel

Fig. 38: **System Management->Administrative Access->SSH**

You need an SSH client application, e.g. PuTTY, to be able to reach the SSH Daemon.

If you wish to use SSH Login together with the PuTTY client, you may need to comply with some special configuration requirements, for which we have prepared FAQs. You will find these in the Service/Support section at www.teldat.de.

To be able to reach the shell of your device via an SSH client, make sure the settings for the SSH Daemon and SSH client are the same.



Note

If configuration of an SSH connection is not possible, restart the device to initialise the SSH Daemon correctly.

The **System Management->Administrative Access->SSH** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu SSH (Secure Shell) Parameters

Field	Value
SSH service active	<p>Select whether the SSH Daemon is to be enabled for the interface.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
SSH Port	<p>Here you can enter the port via which the SSH connection is to be established.</p> <p>The default value is <i>22</i>.</p>
Maximum number of concurrent connections	<p>Enter the maximum number of simultaneously active SSH connections.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>

Fields in the menu Authentication and Encryption Parameters

Field	Value
Encryption Algorithms	<p>Select the algorithms that are to be used to encrypt the SSH connection.</p> <p>Possible options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>3DES</i>• <i>Blowfish</i>• <i>AES-128</i>• <i>AES-256</i>

Field	Value
	By default <i>3DES</i> , <i>Blowfish</i> and <i>AES-128</i> are enabled.
Hashing Algorithms	<p>Select the algorithms that are to be available for message authentication of the SSH connection.</p> <p>Possible options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>MD5</i>• <i>SHA-1</i>• <i>RipeMD 160</i> <p>By default <i>MD5</i>, <i>SHA-1</i> and <i>RipeMD 160</i> are enabled.</p>

Fields in the menu Key Status

Field	Value
RSA Key Status	<p>Shows the status of the RSA key.</p> <p>If an RSA key has not been generated yet, <i>Not generated</i> is displayed in red and a link, <i>Generate</i>, is provided. If you select the link, the generation process is triggered and the view is updated. The <i>Generating</i> status is displayed in green. When generation has been completed successfully, the status changes from <i>Generating</i> to <i>Generated</i>. If an error occurs during the generation, <i>Not generated</i> and the <i>Generate</i> link are displayed again. You can then repeat generation.</p> <p>If the <i>Unknown</i> status is displayed, generation of a key is not possible, for example because there is not enough space in the FlashROM.</p>
DSA Key Status	<p>Shows the status of the DSA key.</p> <p>If no DSA key has yet been generated, <i>Not generated</i> is displayed in red and a link, <i>Generate</i>, is provided. If you select the link, the generation process is triggered and the view is updated. The <i>Generating</i> status is displayed in green. When generation has been completed successfully, the status changes from <i>Generating</i> to <i>Generated</i>. If an error occurs during the generation, <i>Not generated</i> and the <i>Generate</i> link are displayed again. You can then repeat generation.</p> <p>If the <i>Unknown</i> status is displayed, generation of a key is not</p>

Field	Value
	possible, for example because there is not enough space in the FlashROM.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Advanced Settings

Field	Value
Login Grace Time	<p>Enter the time (in seconds) that is available for establishing the connection. If a client cannot be successfully authenticated during this time, the connection is terminated.</p> <p>The default value is <i>600</i> seconds.</p>
Compression	<p>Select whether data compression should be used.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
TCP Keepalives	<p>Select whether the device is to send keepalive packets.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Logging Level	<p>Select the syslog level for the syslog messages generated by the SSH Daemon.</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Information</i> (default value): Fatal and simple errors of the SSH Daemon and information messages are recorded.• <i>Fatal</i>: Only fatal errors of the SSH Daemon are recorded.• <i>Error</i>: Fatal and simple errors of the SSH Daemon are recorded.• <i>Debug</i>: All messages are recorded.

10.4.3 SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a network protocol used to monitor and control network elements (e.g. routers, servers, switches, printers, computers etc.) from a central station. SNMP controls communication between the monitored devices and monitoring station. The protocol describes the structure of the data packets that can be transmitted, as well as the communication process.

The data objects queried via SNMP are structured in tables and variables and defined in the MIB (Management Information Base). This contains all the configuration and status variables of the device.

SNMP can be used to perform the following network management tasks:

- Surveillance of network components
- Remote controlling and configuration of network components
- Error detection and notification

You use this menu to configure the use of SNMP.

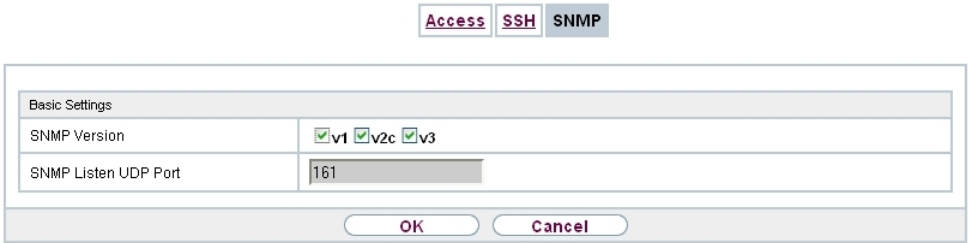



Fig. 39: **System Management->Administrative Access->SNMP**

The menu **System Management->Administrative Access->SNMP** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Value
SNMP Version	<div>Select the SNMP version your device is to use to listen for external SNMP access.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• v1: SNMP Version 1• v2c: Community-Based SNMP Version 2• v3: SNMP Version 3</div>

Field	Value
	By default, <code>v1</code> , <code>v2c</code> and <code>v3</code> are enabled. If no option is selected, the function is deactivated.
SNMP Listen UDP Port	Shows the UDP port (<code>161</code>) at which the device receives SNMP requests. The value cannot be changed.



Tip

If your SNMP Manager supports SNMPv3, you should, if possible, use this version as older versions transfer all data unencrypted.

10.5 Remote Authentication

This menu contains the settings for user authentication.

10.5.1 RADIUS

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) is a service that enables authentication and configuration information to be exchanged between your device and a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server administrates a database with information about user authentication and configuration and for statistical recording of connection data.

RADIUS can be used for:

- Authentication
- Accounting
- Exchange of configuration data

For an incoming connection, your device sends a request with user name and password to the RADIUS server, which then searches its database. If the user is found and can be authenticated, the RADIUS server sends corresponding confirmation to your device. This confirmation also contains parameters (called RADIUS attributes), which your device uses as WAN connection parameters.

If the RADIUS server is used for accounting, your device sends an accounting message at the start of the connection and a message at the end of the connection. These start and end messages also contain statistical information about the connection (IP address, user name, throughput, costs).

RADIUS packets


The following types of packets are sent between the RADIUS server and your device (client):

Packet types

Field	Value
ACCESS_REQUEST	<p>Client -> Server</p> <p>If an access request is received by your device, a request is sent to the RADIUS server if no corresponding connection partner has been found on your device.</p>
ACCESS_ACCEPT	<p>Server -> Client</p> <p>If the RADIUS server has authenticated the information contained in the ACCESS_REQUEST, it sends an ACCESS_ACCEPT to your device together with the parameters used for setting up the connection.</p>
ACCESS_REJECT	<p>Server -> Client</p> <p>If the information contained in the ACCESS_REQUEST does not correspond to the information in the user database of the RADIUS server, it sends an ACCESS_REJECT to reject the connection.</p>
ACCOUNTING_START	<p>Client -> Server</p> <p>If a RADIUS server is used for accounting, your device sends an accounting message to the RADIUS server at the start of each connection.</p>
ACCOUNTING_STOP	<p>Client -> Server</p> <p>If a RADIUS server is used for accounting, your device sends an accounting message to the RADIUS server at the end of each connection.</p>

A list of all entered RADIUS servers is displayed in the **System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS** menu.

10.5.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to add RADIUS servers.

RADIUS

TACACS+

Options

Basic Parameters

Authentication Type

PPP Authentication

Server IP Address

RADIUS Secret

••••••••

Default User Password

••••••••

Priority

0

Entry active

☒ Enabled

Group Description

Default Group 0

Advanced Settings

Policy

Authoritative

UDP Port

1812

Server Timeout

1000

Milliseconds

Alive Check

☒ Enabled

Retries

1

RADIUS Dialout

☐ Enabled

Reload Interval

0

Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 40: System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS->New

The **System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Value
Authentication Type	<div>Select what the RADIUS server is to be used for.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>PPP Authentication</i> (default value only for PPP connections): The RADIUS server is used for controlling access to a network.

Field	Value
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Accounting</i> (for PPP connections only): The RADIUS server is used for recording statistical call data. • <i>Login Authentication</i>: The RADIUS server is used for controlling access to the SNMP shell of your device. • <i>IPSec Authentication</i>: The RADIUS server is used for sending configuration data for IPSec peers to your device. • <i>WLAN (802.1x)</i>: The RADIUS server is used for controlling access to a wireless network. • <i>XAUTH</i>: The RADIUS server is used for authenticating IPSec peers via XAuth.
Vendor Mode	<p>Only for Authentication Type = <i>Accounting</i></p> <p>In hotspot applications, select the mode define by the provider.</p> <p>In standard applications, leave the value set to <i>Default</i>.</p> <p>Possible values for hotspot applications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>France Telecom</i>: For France Telecom hotspot applications. • <i>bintec HotSpot Server</i>: For Teldat hotspot applications.
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the RADIUS server.
RADIUS Secret	Enter the shared password used for communication between the RADIUS server and your device.
Default User Password	Some Radius servers require a user password for each RADIUS request. Enter the password that your device sends as the default user password in the prompt for the dialout routes on the RADIUS server.
Priority	<p>If a number of RADIUS server entries were created, the server with the highest priority is used first. If this server does not answer, the server with the next-highest priority is used.</p> <p>Possible values from 0 (highest priority) to 7 (lowest priority).</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p> <p>See also Policy in the Advanced Settings.</p>
Entry active	Select whether the RADIUS server configured in this entry is to

Field	Value
	<p>be used.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Group Description	<p>Define a new RADIUS group description or assign the new RADIUS entry to a predefined group. The configured RADIUS servers for a group are queried according to Priority and the Policy .</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>New</i> (default value): Enter a new group description in the text field.• <i>Default Group 0</i>: Select this entry for special applications, such as Hotspot Server configuration.• <i><Group Name></i>: Select a predefined group from the list.

The **Advanced Settings** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Value
Policy	<p>Select how your device is to react if a negative response to a request is received.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Authoritative</i> (default value): A negative response to a request is accepted.• <i>Non-authoritative</i> : A negative response to a request is not accepted. A request is sent to the next RADIUS server until your device receives a response from a server configured as authoritative.
UDP Port	<p>Enter the UDP port to be used for RADIUS data.</p> <p>RFC 2138 defines the default ports 1812 for authentication (1645 in older RFCs) and 1813 for accounting (1646 in older RFCs). You can obtain the port to be used from the documentation for your RADIUS server.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1812</i>.</p>

Field	Value
Server Timeout	<p>Enter the maximum wait time between ACCESS_REQUEST and response in milliseconds.</p> <p>After timeout, the request is repeated according to Retries or the next configured RADIUS server is requested.</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between <i>50</i> and <i>50000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1000</i> (1 second).</p>
Alive Check	<p>Here you can activate a check of the accessibility of a RADIUS server in Status <i>Down</i> .</p> <p>An Alive Check is carried out regularly (every 20 seconds) by sending an ACCESS_REQUEST to the IP address of the RADIUS server. If the server is reachable, Status is set to <i>alive</i> again. If the RADIUS server is only reachable over a switched line (dialup connection), this can cause additional costs if the server is <i>down</i> for a long time.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Retries	<p>Enter the number of retries for cases when there is no response to a request. If an response has still not been received after these attempts, the Status is set to <i>down</i>. In Alive Check = <i>Enabled</i> your device attempts to reach the server every 20 seconds. If the server responds, Status is set back to <i>alive</i> .</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between <i>0</i> and <i>10</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>. To prevent Status being set to <i>down</i>, set this value to <i>0</i>.</p>
RADIUS Dialout	<p>Only for Authentication Type = <i>PPP Authentication</i> and <i>IPSec Authentication</i>.</p> <p>Select whether your device receives requests from RADIUS server dialout routes. This enables temporary interfaces to be configured automatically and your device can initiate outgoing connections that are not configured permanently.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Value
	<p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>If the function is active, you can enter the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Reload Interval</i>: Enter the time period in seconds between update intervals. <p>The default entry here is 0 i.e. an automatic reload is not carried out.</p>

10.5.2 TACACS+

TACACS+ permits access control for your device, network access servers (NAS) and other network components via one or more central servers.

Like RADIUS, TACACS+ is an AAA protocol and offers authentication, authorisation and accounting services (TACACS+ Accounting is currently not supported by Teldat devices).


The following TACACS+ functions are available on your device:

- Authentication for login shell
- Command authorisation on the shell (e.g. telnet, show)

TACACS+ uses TCP port 49 and establishes a secure and encrypted connection.

A list of all entered TACACS+ servers is displayed in the **System Management->Remote Authentication->TACACS+** menu.

10.5.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to add TACACS+ servers.

RADIUS

TACACS+

Options

Basic Parameters

Authentication Type

Login Authentication

Server IP Address

TACACS+ Secret

••••••••

Priority

0

Entry active

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Policy

Non-authoritative

TCP Port

49

Timeout

3

Seconds

Block Time

60

Seconds

Encryption

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 41: **System Management->Remote Authentication->TACACS+ ->New**

The **System Management->Remote Authentication->TACACS+ ->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Authentication Type	<p>Displays which TACACS+ function is to be used. The value cannot be changed.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Login Authentication</i>: Here, you can define whether the current TACACS+ server is to be used for login authentication to your device.
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the TACACS+ server that is to be requested for login authentication.
TACACS+ Secret	Enter the password to be used to authenticate and, if applicable, encrypt data exchange between the TACACS+ server and the network access server (your device). The maximum length of the entry is 32 characters.
Priority	Assign a priority to the current TACACS+ server. The server with the lowest value is the one used first for TACACS+ login

Field	Description
	<p>authentication. If no response is given or access is denied (only if Policy = <i>Non-authoritative</i>), the entry with the next-highest priority is used.</p> <p>The available values are 0 to 9, the default value is 0.</p>
Entry active	<p>Select whether this server is to be used for login authentication.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Policy	<p>Select the interpretation of the TACACS+ response.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Non-authoritative</i> (default value): The TACACS+ servers are queried in order of their priority (see Priority) until a positive response is received or a negative response has been received from an authoritative server.• <i>Authoritative</i>: A negative response to a request is accepted, i.e. a request is not sent to another TACACS+ server. The device's internal user administration is not turned off by TACACS+. It is checked after all TACACS+ servers have been queried.
TCP Port	<p>Shows the default TCP port (49) used for the TACACS+ protocol. The value cannot be changed.</p>
Timeout	<p>Enter time in seconds for which the NAS is to wait for a response from TACACS+.</p> <p>If a response is not received during the wait time, the next configured TACACS+ server is queried (only if Policy = <i>Non-authoritative</i>) and the status of the current server is set to <i>Blocked</i>.</p> <p>The possible values are 1 to 60, the default value is 3.</p>

Field	Description
Block Time	<p>Enter the time in seconds for which the status of the current server shall remain blocked.</p> <p>When the block has ended, the server is set to the status specified in the Entry active field.</p> <p>The possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i>, the default value is <i>60</i>. The value <i>0</i> means that the server is never set to <i>Blocked</i> status and thus no other servers are queried.</p>
Encryption	<p>Select whether data exchange between the TACACS+ server and the NAS is to be encrypted with MD5.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>If the function is not enabled, the packets and all related information are transferred unencrypted. Unencrypted transfer is not recommended as a default setting and should only be used for debugging.</p>

10.5.3 Options

This setting possible here causes your device to carry out authentication negotiation for incoming calls, if it cannot identify the calling party number (e.g. because the remote terminal does not signal the calling party number). If the data (password, partner PPP ID) obtained by executing the authentication protocol is the same as the data of a listed remote terminal or RADIUS user, your device accepts the incoming call.

RADIUSTACACS+Options

Global RADIUS Options

Authentication for PPP Dialin

☒ Inband
☐ Outband (CLID)

OK

Cancel

Fig. 42: System Management->Remote Authentication->Options

The menu **System Management->Remote Authentication->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global RADIUS Options menu.

Field	Description
Authentication for PPP Dialin	<p>By default, the following authentication sequence is used for incoming calls with RADIUS: First CLID, then PPP and then PPP with RADIUS.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inband</i>: Only inband RADIUS requests (PAP,CHAP, MS-CHAP V1 & V2) (i.e. PPP requests without CLID) are sent to the RADIUS server defined in Server IP Address.• <i>Outband (CLID)</i> : Only outband RADIUS requests (i.e. requests for calling line identification = CLID) are sent to the RADIUS server. <p><i>Inband</i> is enabled by default.</p>

10.6 Certificates

An asymmetric cryptosystem is used to encrypt data to be transported in a network, to generate or check digital signatures and the authenticate users. A key pair consisting of a public key and a private key is used to encrypt and decrypt the data.

For encryption the sender requires the public key of the recipient. The recipient decrypts the data using his private key. To ensure that the public key is the real key of the recipient and is not a forgery, a so-called digital certificate is required.

This confirms the authenticity and the owner of a public key. It is similar to an official passport in that it confirms that the holder of the passport has certain characteristics, such as gender and age, and that the signature on the passport is authentic. As there is more than one certificate issuer, e.g. the passport office for a passport, and as such certificates can be issued by several different issuers and in varying qualities, the trustworthiness of the issuer is extremely important. The quality of a certificate is regulated by the German Signature Act or respective EU Directives.

Certification authorities that issue so-called qualified certificates are organised in a hierarchy with the Federal Network Agency as the higher certifying authority. The structure and content of a certificate are stipulated by the standard used. X.509 is the most important and the most commonly use standard for digital certificates. Qualified certificates are personal and extremely trustworthy.

Digital certificates are part of a so-called Public Key Infrastructure (PKI). PKI refers to a system that can issue, distribute and check digital certificates.


Certificates are issued for a specific period, usually one year, i.e. they have a limited validity period.

Your device is designed to use certificates for VPN connections and for voice connections over Voice over IP.

10.6.1 Certificate List

A list of all existing certificates is displayed in the **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List** menu.

10.6.1.1 Edit

Click the  icon to display the content of the selected object (key, certificate, or request).

Certificate List

CRLs

Certificate Servers

Edit parameters

Description

test

Certificate is CA Certificate

☒ True

Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Checking

☐ Disabled

☐ Always

☒ Only if a CRL Distribution Point is present

☐ Use settings from superior certificate

Force certificate to be trusted

☐ True

View details

Certificate =

SerialNumber = 11

SubjectName = <CN=r1200_aw, OU=Support, O=Teldat GmbH, ST=Bavaria, C=DE>

IssuerName = <CN=linuxCA, OU=Support, O=Teldat GmbH, ST=Bavaria, C=DE>

Validity =

NotBefore = 2006 Sep 15th, 07:07:49 GMT

NotAfter = 2008 Sep 14th, 07:07:49 GMT

PublicKeyInfo =

Algorithm name (X.509) : rsaEncryption

Modulus n (1024 bits) :

1657430007353061929971175628985365836058592284552111716307381855989730994

4241959750497426343375890536490502929548450998243448632595011570952551767

7011616656908963216398179133323977323187771274664312501085550617414306630

0411834850766905090689578661769721208181141085359073369329733126120426693

320106097890434357773

Exponent e (17 bits) : 65537

Extensions =

Available = key usage, basic constraints

KeyUsage = DigitalSignature NonRepudiation KeyEncipherment

BasicConstraints =

cA = FALSE

MD5 Fingerprint

EE:AB:21:CB:4A:82:02:44:6C:A2:F6:5E:0D:0C:65:34

SHA1 Fingerprint

77:5A:14:BC:60:17:66:56:8C:F7:CC:90:C0:4E:25:19:3B:D3:7B:F7

Used

OK

Cancel

Fig. 43: System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->

The certificates and keys themselves cannot be changed, but a few external attributes can be changed, depending on the type of the selected entry.

The **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Edit parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Shows the name of the certificate, key, or request.
Certificate is CA Certificate	Mark the certificate as a certificate from a trustworthy certification authority (CA).

Field	Description
	<p>Certificates issued by this CA are accepted during authentication.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>True</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Checking	<p>Only for Certificate is CA Certificate = <i>True</i></p> <p>Define the extent to which certificate revocation lists (CRLs) are to be included in the validation of certificates issued by the owner of this certificate.</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Disabled</i>: No CRLs check.• <i>Always</i>: CRLs are always checked.• <i>Only if a CRL Distribution Point is present</i> (default value): A check is only carried out if a CRL Distribution Point entry is included in the certificate. This can be determined under "View Details" in the certificate content.• <i>Use settings from superior certificate</i>: The settings of the higher level certificate are used, if one exists. If it does not, the same procedure is used as that described under "Only if a CRL Distribution Point is present".
Force certificate to be trusted	<p>Define that this certificate is to be accepted as the user certificate without further checks during authentication.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>True</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>



Caution

It is extremely important for VPN security that the integrity of all certificates manually marked as trustworthy (certification authority and user certificates) is ensured. The displayed "fingerprints" can be used to check this integrity: Compare the displayed values with the fingerprints specified by the issuer of the certificate (e.g. on the Internet). It is sufficient to check one of the two values.

10.6.1.2 Certificate Request

Registration authority certificates in SCEP

If SCEP (Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol) is used, your device also supports separate registration authority certificates.

Registration authority certificates are used by some Certificate Authorities (CAs) to handle certain tasks (signature and encryption) during SCEP communication with separate keys, and to delegate the operation to separate registration authorities, if applicable.

When a certificate is downloaded automatically, i.e. if **CA Certificate** = `-- Download` is selected, all the certificates needed for the operation are loaded automatically.

If all the necessary certificates are already available in the system, these can also be selected manually.

Select the **Certificate Request** button to request or import more certificates.

Certificate List

CRLs

Certificate Servers

Certificate Request

Certificate Request Description

Mode

Manual

SCEP

Generate Private Key

RSA

1024

Bits

Subject Name

Custom

Enabled

Common Name

E-mail

Organizational Unit

Organization

Locality

State/Province

Country

Advanced Settings

Subject Alternative Names

#1

None

#2

None

#3

None

Options

Autosave Mode

Enabled


OK

Cancel

Fig. 44: **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->Certificate Request**

The menu **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->Certificate Request** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Certificate Request menu.

Field	Description
Certificate Request Description	Enter a unique description for the certificate.
Mode	<div>Select the way in which you want to request the certificate.</div> <div>Possible settings:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Manual</i> (default value): Your device generates a PKCS#10 for the key. This file can then be uploaded directly in the browser or copied in the  menu using the View details

bintec Rxxx2/RTxxx2

111

Field	Description
	<p>field. This file must be provided to the CA and the received certificate must then be imported manually to your device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>SCEP</i> : The key is requested from a CA using the Simple Certificate Enrolment Protocol.
Generate Private Key	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Manual</i></p> <p>Select an algorithm for key creation.</p> <p><i>RSA</i> (default value) and <i>DSA</i> are available.</p> <p>Also select the length of the key to be created.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>512, 768, 1024, 1536, 2048, 4096</i>.</p> <p>Please note that a key with a length of 512 bits could be rated as unsecure, whereas a key of 4096 bits not only needs a lot of time to create, but also occupies a major share of the resources during IPSec processing. A value of 768 or more is, however, recommended and the default value is 1024 bits.</p>
SCEP URL	<p>Only for Mode = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Enter the URL of the SCEP server, e.g. <code>http://scep.teldat.de:8080/scep/scep.dll</code></p> <p>Your CA administrator can provide you with the necessary data.</p>
CA Certificate	<p>Only for Mode = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Select the CA certificate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• In <code>-- Download --</code>: In CA Name, enter the name of the CA certificate of the certification authority (CA) from which you wish to request your certificate, e.g. <i>cawindows</i>. Your CA administrator can provide you with the necessary data. <p>If no CA certificates are available, the device will first download the CA certificate of the relevant CA. It then continues with the enrolment process, provided no more important parameters are missing. In this case, it returns to the Generate Certificate Request menu.</p> <p>If the CA certificate does not contain a CRL distribution point (Certificate Revocation List, CRL), and a certificate server is</p>

Field	Description
	<p>not configured on the device, the validity of certificates from this CA is not checked.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <name of an existing certificate>: If all the necessary certificates are already available in the system, you select these manually.
RA Sign Certificate	<p>Only for Mode = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Only for CA Certificate not = -- <i>Download</i> --</p> <p>Select a certificate for signing SCEP communication.</p> <p>The default value is -- <i>Use CA Certificate</i> --, i.e. the CA certificate is used.</p>
RA Encrypt Certificate	<p>Only for Mode = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Only if RA Sign Certificate not = -- <i>Use CA Certificate</i> --</p> <p>If you use one of your own certificates to sign communication with the RA, you can select another one here to encrypt communication.</p> <p>The default value is -- <i>Use RA Sign Certificate</i> --, i.e. the same certificate is used as for signing.</p>
Password	<p>Only for Mode = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>You may need a password from the certification authority to obtain certificates for your keys. Enter the password you received from the certification authority here.</p>

Fields in the Subject Name menu.

Field	Description
Custom	<p>Select whether you want to enter the name components of the subject name individually as specified by the CA or want to enter a special subject name.</p> <p>If <i>Enabled</i> is selected, a subject name can be given in Summary with attributes not offered in the list. Example: "CN=VPNServer, DC=mydomain, DC=com, c=DE".</p>

Field	Description
	<p>If the field is not selected, enter the name components in Common Name, E-mail, Organizational Unit, Organization, Locality, State/Province and Country.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Summary	<p>Only for Custom = enabled.</p> <p>Enter a subject name with attributes not offered in the list.</p> <p>Example: "CN=VPNServer, DC=mydomain, DC=com, c=DE".</p>
Common Name	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the name according to CA.</p>
E-mail	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the e-mail address according to CA.</p>
Organizational Unit	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the organisational unit according to CA.</p>
Organization	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the organisation according to CA.</p>
Locality	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the location according to CA.</p>
State/Province	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the state/province according to CA.</p>
Country	<p>Only for Custom = disabled.</p> <p>Enter the country according to CA.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Subject Alternative Names menu.

Field	Description
#1, #2, #3	<p>For each entry, define the type of name and enter additional subject names.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): No additional name is entered.• <i>IP</i>: An IP address is entered.• <i>DNS</i>: A DNS name is entered.• <i>E-mail</i>: An e-mail address is entered.• <i>URI</i>: A uniform resource identifier is entered.• <i>DN</i>: A distinguished name (DN) name is entered.• <i>RID</i>: A registered identity (RID) is entered.

Fields in the Options menu

Field	Description
Autosave Mode	<p>Select whether your device automatically stores the various steps of the enrolment internally. This is an advantage if enrolment cannot be concluded immediately. If the status has not been saved, the incomplete registration cannot be completed. As soon as the enrolment is completed and the certificate has been downloaded from the CA server, it is automatically saved in the device configuration.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

10.6.1.3 Import

Choose the **Import** button to import certificates.



Fig. 45: **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->Import**

The menu **System Management->Certificates->Certificate List->Import** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Import menu.

Field	Description
External Filename	Enter the file path and name of the certificate to be imported, or use Browse... to select it from the file browser.
Local Certificate Description	Enter a unique description for the certificate.
File Encoding	Select the type of coding so that your device can decode the certificate. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto</i> (default value): Activates automatic code recognition. If downloading the certificate in auto mode fails, try with a certain type of encoding.• <i>Base64</i>• <i>Binary</i>
Password	You may need a password to obtain certificates for your keys. Enter the password here.

10.6.2 CRLs

In the **System Management->Certificates->CRLs** menu, a list of all CRLs (Certification Revocation List) is displayed.

If a key is no longer to be used, e.g. because it has fallen into the wrong hands or has been lost, the corresponding certificate is declared invalid. The certification authority revokes the certificate and publishes it on a certificate blacklist, so-called CRL. Certificate users should always check against these lists to ensure that the certificate used is currently valid. This check can be automated via a browser.

The Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) supports the issue and revocation of certificates in networks.

10.6.2.1 Import

Choose the **Import** button to import CRLs.

Certificate ListCRLsCertificate Servers

CRL Import

External Filename

Browse...

Local Certificate Description

File Encoding

Auto

Password

OK

Cancel

Fig. 46: System Management->Certificates->CRLs->Import

The **System Management->Certificates->CRLs->Import** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the CRL Import menu.

Field	Description
External Filename	Enter the file path and name of the CRL to be imported, or use Browse... to select it from the file browser.
Local Certificate De- scription	Enter a unique description for the CRL.
File Encoding	Select the type of encoding, so that your device can decode the CRL. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto</i> (default value): Activates automatic code recognition. If downloading the CRL in auto mode fails, try with a certain

Field	Description
	type of encoding. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Base64</i>• <i>Binary</i>
Password	Enter the password required for the import.

10.6.3 Certificate Servers

A list of certificate servers is displayed in the **System Management->Certificates->Certificate Servers** menu.

A certification authority (certification service provider, Certificate Authority, CA) issues your certificates to clients applying for a certificate via a certificate server. The certificate server also issues the private key <<<und hält Zertifikatsperrlisten (CRL) bereit, die zur Prüfung von Zertifikaten entweder per LDAP oder HTTP vom Gerät abgefragt werden.>>>

10.6.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up a certificate server.

Certificate ListCRLsCertificate Servers

Basic Parameters

Description

LDAP URL Path

ldap://

OK

Cancel

Fig. 47: **System Management->Certificates->Certificate Servers->New**

The **System Management->Certificates->Certificate Servers->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a unique description for the certificate server.
LDAP URL Path	Enter the LDAP URL or the HTTP URL of the server.

Chapter 11 Physical Interfaces

In this menu, you configure the physical interfaces that you have used when connecting your gateway. The configuration interface only shows the interfaces that are available on your device. In the **System Management->Status** menu, you can see a list of all physical interfaces and information on whether the interfaces are connected or active and whether they have already been configured.

11.1 AUX

You require a special cable for the console port of your gateway (e.g. AUX Backup cable) to connect an external analogue modem to the AUX port on a Teldat gateway.

11.1.1 AUX

With an analogue/GSM interface, the gateway also supports connections for analogue and GSM modems (e.g. as backup). In principle, you can use any Hayes- or GSM07.07-compatible modem with a serial interface for this purpose. The following modems have been tested successfully for Teldat:

- US Robotics Sportster Flash (analogue modem)
- US Robotics 56K Fax Modem (analogue modem)
- Siemens TC35i (GSM modem)

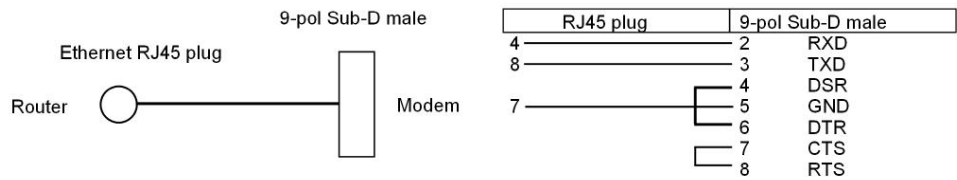


Fig. 48: PIN assignment modem cable

AUX

Basic Settings

AUX Port Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Line Speed	9600 bps
Incoming Service Type	<input type="radio"/> Disabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> ISDN Login <input type="radio"/> PPP Dialin
SIM Card Uses PIN	
Modem Escape Character	+
Modem Init Sequence	
APN (Access Point Name)	

OKCancel

Fig. 49: Physical Interfaces->AUX->AUX

The **Physical Interfaces->AUX->AUX** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
AUX Port Status	<p>Select whether the AUX port should be enabled or disabled.</p> <p>The port is enabled by choosing <i>Enabled</i>. The port is disabled by default.</p>
Line Speed	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>Here you select the speed at which the gateway addresses the modem (in bps).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default</i>: The Baud rate of the serial terminal connection is retained. (9600 in ex works state)• <i>All other values</i> mean that the modem is addressed at the corresponding speed in bps.• <i>9600 bps</i>• <i>19200 bps</i>• <i>38400 bps</i>• <i>57600 bps</i> (default value): Recommended for communication with a GSM modem.• <i>115200 bps</i>: Recommended for communication with an ana-

Field	Description
	logue modem.
Incoming Service Type	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>Here you select the gateway subsystem to which an incoming call over the modem is to be assigned.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Disabled</i>: No call is accepted.• <i>ISDN Login</i>: The call is assigned to the ISDN Login subsystem.• <i>PPP Dialin</i> (default value): The call is assigned to the PPP subsystem.
SIM Card Uses PIN	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>Here you enter the PIN of your GSM modem, if your modem asks for it.</p> <p>Entering a wrong PIN blocks communication with the modem until the entry in the profile is corrected.</p>
Modem Escape Character	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>The value for this field is set by default to <code>+</code>. It should only be changed if the escape character of the modem is different.</p>
Modem Init Sequence	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>Here you can enter an initialization string for your modem. The command <code>ATX3&K3\V1</code> is the default setting (the modem does not wait for a free signal before dialling).</p> <p>You can add other AT commands by separating them with semicolons. The entry is limited to 50 characters. Make sure you enter the command for activating the XON/XOFF software flow control. This is proprietary and cannot be set automatically. The command sequence can be obtained from your modem manual or the manufacturer.</p>
APN (Access Point Name)	<p>Only for AUX Port Status = enabled</p> <p>If GPRS is used, the so-called Access Point Name of the pro-</p>


Field	Description
	vider must be entered, e.g. internet.eplus.de for eplus and so on. A maximum of 40 characters can be entered. If no APN or an incorrect APN is entered, a configured GPRS connection will not function.

11.2 Ethernet Ports

An Ethernet interface is a physical interface for connection to the local network or external networks.

The Ethernet ports **ETH1** to **ETH4** are assigned to a single logical Ethernet interface in ex works state. The logical Ethernet interface *en1-0* is assigned and is preconfigured with the **IP Address** *192.168.0.254* and **Netmask** *255.255.255.0*.

The logical Ethernet interface *en1-4* is assigned to the **ETH5** port and is not preconfigured.



Note

To ensure your device can be reached, when splitting ports make sure that Ethernet interface *en1-0* is assigned - with the preconfigured IP address and netmask - to a port that can be reached via Ethernet. If in doubt, carry out the configuration using a serial connection via the **Console** interface.

ETH1 - ETH4

The interfaces can be used separately. They are logically separated from each other, each separated port is assigned the desired logical Ethernet interface in the **Ethernet Interface Selection** field of the **Port Configuration** menu. For each assigned Ethernet interface, another interface is displayed in the list in the **LAN->IP Configuration** menu, and the interface can be configured completely independently.

ETH5

By default, the logical Ethernet interface *en1-4* is assigned to the **ETH5** port. The configuration options are the same as those for the ports **ETH1 - ETH4**.

VLANs for Routing Interfaces

Configure VLANs to separate individual network segments from each other, for example (e.g. individual departments of a company) or to reserve bandwidth for individual VLANs when managed switches are used with the QoS function.

11.2.1 Port Configuration

Port Separation

Your device makes it possible to run the switch ports as one interface or to logically separate these from each other and to configure them as independent Ethernet interfaces.

During configuration, please note the following: The splitting of the switch ports into several Ethernet interfaces merely logically separates these from each other. The available total bandwidth of max. 1000 mbps full duplex for all resulting interfaces remains the same. For example, if you split all the switch ports from each other, each of the resulting interfaces only uses a part of the total bandwidth. If you group together several switch ports into one interface, the full bandwidth of max. 1000 mbps full duplex is available for all the ports together.

Port Configuration

Automatic Refresh Interval 60 Seconds Apply

Switch Port	Ethernet Interface Selection	Configured Speed / Mode	Current Speed / Mode	Flow Control
1	en1-0	Full Autonegotiation	Down	Disabled
2	en1-0	Full Autonegotiation	100 mbps / Full Duplex	Disabled
3	en1-0	Full Autonegotiation	Down	Disabled
4	en1-0	Full Autonegotiation	Down	Disabled
5	en1-4	Full Autonegotiation	Down	Disabled

OK Cancel

Fig. 50: Physical Interfaces->Ethernet Ports->Port Configuration

The menu **Physical Interfaces->Ethernet Ports->Port Configuration** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Switch Configuration menu.

Field	Description
Switch Port	Shows the respective switch port. The numbering corresponds

Field	Description
	to the numbering of the Ethernet ports on the back of the device.
Ethernet Interface Selection	<p>Assign a logical Ethernet interface to the switch port.</p> <p>You can select from five interfaces, <i>en1-0</i> to <i>en1-4</i>. In the basic setting, switch ports 1-4 are assigned to interface <i>en1-0</i> and switch port 5 is assigned to interface <i>en1-4</i></p>
Configured Speed / Mode	<p>Select the mode in which the interface is to run.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Full Autonegotiation</i> (default value)• <i>Auto 1000 mbps only</i>• <i>Auto 100 mbps only</i>• <i>Auto 10 mbps only</i>• <i>Auto 100 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>Auto 100 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>Auto 10 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>Auto 10 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>Fixed 1000 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>Fixed 100 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>Fixed 100 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>Fixed 10 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>Fixed 10 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>None</i>: The interface is created but remains inactive.
Current Speed / Mode	<p>Shows the actual mode and actual speed of the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>1000 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>100 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>100 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>10 mbps / Full Duplex</i>• <i>10 mbps / Half Duplex</i>• <i>Down</i>

Field	Description
Flow Control	<p>Select whether a flow control should be conducted on the corresponding interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Disabled</i> (default value): No flow control is performed.• <i>Enabled</i>: Flow control is performed.• <i>Auto</i>: Automatic flow control is performed.

11.3 ISDN Ports

In this menu, you configure the ISDN interfaces of your device. Here you enter data such as the type of ISDN connection to which your gateway is connected. You can use the ISDN interfaces of your gateway for various types of use.

You must carry out two steps to configure the ISDN interfaces:

- Enter the settings for your ISDN connection: Here you set the most important parameters of your ISDN connection.
- MSN Configuration: Here you tell your device how to react to incoming calls from the WAN.

11.3.1 ISDN Configuration




Note

If the ISDN protocol is not detected, it must be selected manually under **Port Usage** and **ISDN Configuration Type**. The automatic D channel detection is then switched off. An incorrectly set ISDN protocol prevents ISDN connections being set up.

In the **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->ISDN Configuration** menu, a list of all ISDN ports and their configuration are displayed.

11.3.1.1 Edit

Choose the  button to edit the configuration of the ISDN port.

ISDN BRI interface

You can use the ISDN BRI interface of your gateway for both dialup connections and leased lines over ISDN.

ISDN Configuration

MSN Configuration

Basic Parameters

Port Name	bri-0 (TE)
Autoconfiguration on Bootup	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Result of Autoconfiguration	Port Usage: Not used, ISDN Configuration Type: Point-to-Multipoint
Port Usage	<div>Not used</div>
ISDN Configuration Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point-to-Multipoint <input type="radio"/> Point-to-Point

Advanced Settings

X.31 (X.25 in D Channel)	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
--------------------------	----------------------------------

OK

Cancel

Fig. 51: Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->ISDN Configuration->

The **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->ISDN Configuration->** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Port Name	Shows the name of the ISDN port.
Autoconfiguration on Bootup	<div>Select whether the ISDN switch type (D channel detection for switched line) is to be automatically identified.</div> <div>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</div> <div>The function is enabled by default.</div>
Result of Autoconfiguration	<div>Shows the status of the ISDN Auto Config.</div> <div>Automatic D-channel detection runs until a setting is found, or until the ISDN protocol is selected manually under Port Usage. This field cannot be edited. The result of automatic configuration for the Port Usage and the ISDN Configuration Type is displayed.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">All possible values for the Port Usage and the ISDN Config-</div>

Field	Description
	<p>uration Type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Running</i>: Detection is still running.
Port Usage	<p>Only if Autoconfiguration on Bootup is disabled.</p> <p>Select the protocol that you want to use for the ISDN port.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Not used</i>: The ISDN connection is not used. • <i>Dialup (Euro ISDN)</i> • <i>Leased Line</i> • <i>Q-SIG</i>
ISDN Configuration Type	<p>Only if Autoconfiguration on Bootup is disabled and for Port Usage = <i>Dialup (Euro ISDN)</i> or <i>Q-SIG</i></p> <p>Select the ISDN connection type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Point-to-Multipoint</i> (default value): Point-to-multipoint connection • <i>Point-to-Point</i>: Point-to-point ISDN access.
ISDN Switch Type	<p>Only for Port Usage = <i>Leased Line</i></p> <p>Select the ISDN protocol supplied by your provider.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Leased Line B1 64S</i>: Leased line over B channel 1 (64 kbps) • <i>Leased Line B1+B2 64S2</i>: Leased line over both B channels (128 kbps) • <i>Leased Line D+B1+B2 TS02</i>: Leased line over D-channel and both B channels (144 kbps) • <i>Leased Line B1+B2 Different Endpoints</i>: Leased line to two different endpoints. • <i>Leased Line B1+D TS01</i>: Leased line over B channel 1 and D-channel (80 kbps) • <i>Leased Line B2+D TS01</i>: Leased line over B channel 2 and D-channel (80 kbps)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Leased Line B2 64S</i>: Leased line over B channel 2 (64 kbps)
Call Number	<p>This parameter is exclusively used by Media Gateway.</p> <p>Only for Port Usage <i>Dialup (Euro ISDN)</i> and ISDN Configuration Type <i>Point-to-Point</i></p> <p>Only for the devices RTxxx2</p> <p>Enter the basic number of the Point-to-Point.</p> <p>With incoming calls, this basis call number is cut off by the called party number</p> <p>With outgoing calls, this main number is attached to the number to be called (calling party number).</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:


Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
X.31 (X.25 in D Channel)	<p>Select whether you want to use X.31 (X.25 in the D channel) e.g. for CAPI applications.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
X.31 TEI Value	<p>Only if X.31 (X.25 in D Channel) is enabled</p> <p>With the ISDN autoconfiguration, the X.31-TEI is detected automatically. If the autoconfiguration has not detected TEI, you can manually enter the value assigned by the exchange.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>63</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>-1</i> (for automatic detection).</p>
X.31 TEI Service	<p>Only for X.31 (X.25 in D Channel) enabled</p> <p>Select the service for which you want to use X.31 TEI.</p> <p>Possible values:</p>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>CAPI</i>• <i>CAPI Default</i>• <i>Packet Switch</i> (default value) <p><i>CAPI</i> and <i>CAPI Default</i> are only for the use of X.31 TEI for CAPI applications. For <i>CAPI</i>, the TEI value set in the CAPI application is used. For <i>CAPI Default</i>, the value of the CAPI application is ignored and the default value set here is always used.</p> <p><i>Packet Switch</i> is set if you want to use X.31 TEI for the X.25 device.</p>

ISDN-PRI interface

For a Primary Rate Interface (PRI, or S2M), the channels are transmitted in series in so-called time slots.

Choose the  button to edit the configuration of the ISDN port.

ISDN Configuration

MSN Configuration

Basic Parameters

Port Name

pri2-4 (TE)

Port Usage

Leased Line

ISDN Switch Type

Leased Line (Custom Time Slots)

Custom Time Slots

Description

Bundle Type

Number of Channels

New Bundle

PPP

0

Add

ISDN Line Framing

CRC4 (Standard)

New Bundle

Description

Bundle Type

☒ PPP Multiink

☐ Physical (Hyperchannel)

Timeslot Selection

☐ Range Selection

☒ Timeslot Matrix

Timeslot Matrix

☐ 1

☐ 2

☐ 3

☐ 4

☐ 5

☐ 6

☐ 7

☐ 8

☐ 9

☐ 10

☐ 11

☐ 12

☐ 13

☐ 14

☐ 15

☐ 16

☐ 17

☐ 18

☐ 19

☐ 20

☐ 21

☐ 22

☐ 23

☐ 24

☐ 25

☐ 26

☐ 27

☐ 28

☐ 29

☐ 30

☐ 31

X.75 Layer 2 Mode

☒ DCE

☐ DTE

Apply

OK

Cancel

Fig. 52: Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->ISDN Configuration->

The Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->ISDN Configuration-> menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Port Name	Shows the name of the ISDN port.
Port Usage	<div>Select whether the ISDN switch type (D channel detection for switched line) is to be automatically identified.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><div><div><div></div><div>None</div><div>(default value): ISDN connection is not used.</div></div><div><div></div><div>EURO ISDN S2M (TE)</div><div>EURO ISDN S2M User Profile</div></div><div><div></div><div>EURO ISDN S2M (NT)</div><div>EURO ISDN S2M Network Profile</div></div><div><div></div><div>Back to Back (dialup)</div><div>Two S2M connections are dir-</div></div></div></div>

Field	Description
	<p>ectly coupled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Leased Line</i>: You can select a leased line. • <i>Q-SIG S2M (TE)</i>: Q-SIG S2M User Profile • <i>Q-SIG S2M (NT)</i>: Q-SIG S2M Network Profile
ISDN Line Framing	<p>Only if Port Usage is selected.</p> <p>Select the framing type for layer 1.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>CRC4 (Standard)</i> (default value) • <i>No CRC</i> <p>The default value can be left in the majority of scenarios. You can use the <i>No CRC</i> option if required (e.g. in Sweden and France), if the device is to be connected to a PABX.</p>
P-P Base Number	<p>Only if Port Usage not <i>None, Back to Back (dialup)</i> or <i>Leased Line</i></p> <p>Only for the devices RTxxx2</p> <p>Enter the main number of the connection.</p> <p>With incoming calls, this basis call number is cut off by the called party number</p> <p>With outgoing calls, this main number is attached to the number to be called (calling party number).</p>
Channel Selection	<p>Only if Port Usage = <i>EURO ISDN S2M (TE)</i>, <i>EURO ISDN S2M (NT)</i>, <i>Q-SIG S2M (TE)</i> or <i>Q-SIG S2M (NT)</i>.</p> <p>An additional option is provided in order to guarantee the compatibility with special providers: If you set the switch type appropriately, you can select a value for the variable Channel Selection. This defines how the B channel is selected for an outgoing call.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Any Channel</i> (default value): The device tells the PABX that all channels are available. The exchange of the PABX selects the channel to be used.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>No channel identification</i> <p>: The device sends no IE (Information Element) for channel identification. The exchange selects the channel to be used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Submit preferred channel</i> <p>: The device selects the channel to be used and signals this to the exchange.</p> <p>You can normally use the default value. It is only necessary to change the setting in a few special cases.</p> <p>If you encounter problems with outgoing calls, ask your provider whether a special value has to be set.</p>
Clock Mode	<p>Only if Port Usage = <i>Back to Back (dialup)</i></p> <p>Defines which connection partner sends the clock signal for synchronization between the sender and the recipient. If the clock signal is not sent by the exchange itself, one of the connection partners must sent the signal.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Extern</i>: The device receives the clock signal. • <i>Internal</i>: The device sends the clock signal.
ISDN Switch Type	<p>Only if Port Usage = <i>Leased Line</i>Select the ISDN connection type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Leased Line (Custom Time Slots)</i>: Up to 31 PPP interfaces can be configured for leased lines to different destinations. • <i>Leased Line, 1 Hyperchannel (G.703 + G.704)</i>: 1984 kbps, structured • <i>Leased Line Unstructured G.703</i>: 2048 kbps, unstructured
Custom Time Slots	<p>Only if Port Usage = <i>Leased Line</i> and ISDN Switch Type = <i>Leased Line (Custom Time Slots)</i>.</p> <p>You have the option to bundle any channels on the physical lay-</p>

Field	Description
	<p>er as so-called hyper channels. You can also group together channels as PPP multilink channel bundles.</p> <p>Timeslots divide the available 2 Mbps bandwidth of an S2M connection into logical channels. No distinction is made below between timeslots and channels, as the difference is immaterial for configuration purposes.</p> <p>A list of the channel bundles already configured is shown.</p> <p>Click Add to configure new channel bundles.</p>

You can use the **Add** at **Custom Time Slots** to configure additional bundles.



Note

This function is only available for leased lines.

Fields in the New Bundle menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the channel bundle.
Bundle Type	<p>Displays the type of channel bundle.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PPP Multilink</i>: The channels are bundled as PPP Multilink channels.• <i>Physical (Hyperchannel)</i>: The channels are bundled as physical hyperchannels.
Timeslot Selection	Select between <i>Range Selection</i> and <i>Timeslot Matrix</i> .
Timeslot Range	<p>Only if Timeslot Selection = <i>Range Selection</i></p> <p>Shows the logical channels (timeslots) combined to form this channel bundle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>From</i>: Shows the first of the channels used for this channel bundle. Possible values: <i>1</i> to <i>31</i>.• <i>to</i>: Shows the last of the channels used for this channel bundle. Possible values: <i>1</i> to <i>31</i>.

Field	Description
Timeslot Matrix	Only if Timeslot Selection = <i>Timeslot Matrix</i> shows a list of all channels in detail. If you do not wish to use all the channels between a certain start and end channel for a channel bundle, you can make a selective assignment here.
X.75 Layer 2 Mode	<p>Here you define how the interface created by this channel bundle is to behave during connection setup. You only need to configure these parameters if you used X.75 in layer 2.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>DCE</i>• <i>DTE</i>

11.3.2 MSN Configuration

In this menu, you can assign the available ISDN numbers to the required services (e.g. PPP routing, ISDN login).


If you use the ISDN interface for outgoing and incoming dialup connections, your own numbers for this interface can be entered in this menu (these settings are not possible for leased lines). Your device distributes the incoming calls to the internal services according to the settings in this menu. Your own number is included as the calling party number for outgoing calls.

The device supports the following services:

- **PPP (Routing):** The PPP (routing) service is your device's general routing service. This enables ISDN remote terminals to establish data connections with your LAN, among other things. This enables partners outside your own local network to access hosts within your LAN. It is also possible to establish outgoing data connections to ISDN remote terminals.
- **ISDN Login:** The ISDN login service enables both incoming data connections with access to the SNMP shell of your device, and outgoing data connections to other Teldat devices. As a result, your device can be remotely configured and administrated.
- **IPSec:** Teldat devices support the DynDNS service to enable hosts without fixed IP addresses to obtain a secure connection over the Internet. With the IPSec Callback function and using a direct ISDN call to an IPSec peer with a dynamic IP address you can signal to this IPSec peer that you are online and waiting for the setup of an IPSec tunnel over the Internet. If the called peer currently has no connection to the Internet, the ISDN call causes a connection to be set up. The identification of the caller from his or her ISDN number is enough information to initiate setting up a tunnel.

- X.25 PAD: X.25 PAD is used to provide a protocol converter, which converts non-packet-oriented protocols to packet-oriented communication protocols and vice versa. Data terminal equipment sending or receiving data on a non-data-packet-oriented basis can this be adapted in line with Datex-P (public data packet network based on the principle of a packet switching exchange).

When a call comes in, your device first uses the entries in this menu to check the type of call (data or voice call) and the called party number, whereby only part of the called party number reaches the device, which is forwarded from the local exchange or, if available, the PBX. The call is then assigned to the corresponding service.



Note

If no entry is specified (ex works state), every incoming ISDN call is accepted by the ISDN Login service. To avoid this, you should make the necessary entries here. As soon as an entry exists, the incoming calls not assigned to any entry are forwarded to the CAPI service.

A list of all MSNs is displayed in the **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->MSN Configuration** menu.

11.3.2.1 New

Set the **New**, button to set up a new MSN.

ISDN Configuration

MSN Configuration

Basic Parameters	
ISDN Port	bri2-0
Service	ISDN Login
MSN	
MSN Recognition	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Right to Left <input type="radio"/> Left to Right (DDI)
Bearer Service	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Data + Voice <input type="radio"/> Data <input type="radio"/> Voice

OK

Cancel

Fig. 53: Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->MSN Configuration->New

The menu **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->MSN Configuration->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
ISDN Port	Select the ISDN port for which the MSN is to be configured.
Service	<p>Select the service to which a call is to be assigned on the MSN below.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>ISDN Login</i> (default value): Enables login with <i>ISDN Login</i> • <i>PPP (Routing)</i>: Default setting for PPP routing. Contains automatic detection of the PPP connections stated below except <i>PPP DOVB</i>. • <i>IPSec</i>: Enables a number to be defined for IPSec callback. • <i>Other (PPP)</i>: Other services can be selected: <i>PPP 64k</i> (Allows 64 kbps PPP data connections), <i>PPP 56k</i> (Allows 56 kbps PPP data connections), <i>PPP V.110(9600)</i> <i>PPP V.110(14400)</i>, <i>PPP V.110(19200)</i>, <i>PPP V.110(38400)</i> (Allows PPP connections with V.110 and bitrates of 9,600 bps, 14,400 bps, 19,200 bps, 38,400 bps), <i>PPP V.120</i> (Allows PPP connections with V.120).
MSN	Enter the number used to check the called party number. For the call to be accepted, it is sufficient for the individual numbers in the entry to agree, taking account of MSN Recognition .
MSN Recognition	<p>Select the mode your device is to use for the number comparison for MSN with the called party number of the incoming call.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Right to Left</i> (default value) • <i>Left to Right (DDI)</i>: Always select if your device is connected to a point-to-point connection.
Bearer Service	<p>Select the type of incoming call (service detection).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Data + Voice</i> (default value): Both data and voice calls. • <i>Data</i>: data call • <i>Voice</i>: Voice call (modem, voice, analog fax)

11.4 DSL Modem

The ADSL modem on the **bintec R3002** and **bintec RT3002** is compatible with ANNEX A and ANNEX B standards and so can be used universally in several countries. It is particularly suitable for high-speed Internet access and remote access use in SMEs or remote offices.

The **bintec R3502** features an integrated VDSL2 modem which supports automatic switching to ADSL2+. If required, VDSL connection is available at any time.

In addition to the VDSL2 modem, the **bintec R3502** has five gigabit Ethernet ports, which can be configured for LAN, WAN or DMZ.

11.4.1 DSL Configuration

In this menu, you make the basic settings for your DSL connection.

DSL Configuration

Automatic Refresh Interval 300 Seconds Apply	
DSL Port Status	
DSL Chipset	Globespan Titanium Ultra Plus
Physical Connection	Unknown
Current Line Speed	
Downstream	0 bps
Upstream	0 bps
DSL Parameter	
DSL Mode	<input type="radio"/> Annex A <input checked="" type="radio"/> Annex B
DSL SyncType	ADSL Automode ▼
Transmit Shaping	Default (Line Speed) ▼
OK Cancel	

Fig. 54: ADSL modem: Physical Interfaces->DSL Modem->DSL Configuration

VDSL Configuration

Automatic Refresh Interval300SecondsApply

DSL Port Status

DSL Chipset

Infineon Vinax

Physical Connection

Unknown

Current Line Speed

Downstream

0 bps

Upstream

0 bps

DSL Parameter

DSL Mode

VDSL

Transmit Shaping

Default (Line Speed)

OK

Cancel

Fig. 55: VDSL modem: **Physical Interfaces->DSL Modem->DSL Configuration**

The menu **Physical Interfaces->DSL Modem->DSL Configuration** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the DSL Port Status menu.

Field	Description
DSL Chipset	Shows the key of the installed chipset.
Physical Connection	<div>Shows the current DSL operation mode. The value cannot be changed.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Unknown: The ADSL link is not active.ANSI T1.413: ANSI T1.413ADSL1: ADSL classic, G.DMT, ITU G.992.1G.lite G992.2: Splitterless ADSL, ITU G.992.2ADSL2: G.DMT.Bis, ITU G.992.3ADSL2 DELT: ADSL2 Double Ended Line TestADSL2 Plus: ADSL2 Plus, ITU G.992.5ADSL2 Plus DELT: ADSL2 Plus Double Ended Line TestREADSL2: Reach Extended ADSL2READSL2 DELT: Reach Extended ADSL2 Double Ended Line Test.ADSL2 ITU-T G.992.3 Annex M

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>ADSL2+ ITU-T G.992.5 Annex M</i>• <i>VDSL1 ITU-T G.993.1</i>• <i>VDSL1 ITU-T G.9930.2</i>

Fields in the Current Line Speed menu

Field	Description
Downstream	<p>Displays the data rate in the receive direction (direction from CO/DSLAM to CPE/router) in bits per second.</p> <p>The value cannot be changed.</p>
Upstream	<p>Displays the data rate in the send direction (direction from CPE/router to CO/DSLAM) in bits per second.</p> <p>The value cannot be changed.</p>

Fields in the DSL Parameter menu.

Field	Description
DSL Mode	<p>Only for devices with an ADSL modem (bintec R3002 / bintec RT3002)</p> <p>Define which Annex of ITU-T Recommendation G.991.2 is used for the connection.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Annex A</i>: For applications in North America (provider-dependent).• <i>Annex B</i> (default value): For applications in Europe (provider-dependent) for example. <p>Only for devices with a VDSL modem (bintec R3502)</p> <p>Select the DSL Mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i>: The VDSL interface is not active.• <i>ETSI T1.413</i>: ETSI T1.413• <i>ADSL1</i>: ADSL1 / G.DMT is used.• <i>ADSL Automode</i>: The ADSL mode is automatically adapted

Field	Description
	<p>for the remote terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>ADSL2</i>: ADSL2 / G.992.3 is used.• <i>ADSL2 Plus</i>: ADSL2 Plus / G.992.5 is used.• <i>VDSL</i> (default value): VDSL is used.• <i>VDSL/ADSL Multimode</i>: VDSL/ADSL multi mode is used.
DSL SyncType	<p>Only for devices with an ADSL modem</p> <p>Select the ADSL synchronization type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>ADSL Automode</i> (default value): The ADSL mode is automatically adapted for the remote terminal.• <i>ADSL1</i> :ADSL1 / G.DMT is used.• <i>ADSL2</i>: ADSL2 / G.992.3 is used.• <i>ADSL2 Plus</i>: ADSL2 Plus / G.992.5 is used.• <i>Inactive</i>: The ADSL interface is not active. <p>Only for ADSL Mode = <i>Annex A</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Automode (Annex-M)</i>: The ADSL mode is automatically adapted to the other end with reference to G.992.3 Annex M.• <i>ADSL2 Plus (Annex-M)</i>: ADSL2 Plus / G.992.3 Annex M is used.• <i>ANSI T1.413</i>: ANSI T1.413 <p>Only for ADSL Mode = <i>Annex B</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>ETSI T1.413</i>: ETSI T1.413
Transmit Shaping	<p>Select whether the data rate in the send direction is to be reduced. This is only needed in a few cases for special DSLAMs.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default (Line Speed)</i> (default value): The data rate in the send direction is not reduced.• <i>128,000 bps to 2,048,000 bps</i>: The data rate in the send direction is reduced to a maximum of 128,000 bps to 2,048,000 bps in defined steps.• <i>User-defined</i>:The data rate is reduced to the value entered

Field	Description
	in Maximum Upstream Bandwidth .
Maximum Upstream Bandwidth	Only for Transmit Shaping = <i>User-defined</i> Enter the maximum data rate in the send direction in bits per second.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.


Field	Description
ADSL Line Profile	Only for devices with a VDSL modem Select the line profile for your internet service provider. Use the <i>Standard</i> profile if your provider does not appear in the list.

11.5 SHDSL

bintec R3802 has an integrated SHDSL modem. The device supports G.SHDSL according to ITU-T recommendations G.991.2 Annex A and B and SHDLS.bis according to G.991.2 Annex F and G. Depending on the device type and configuration the gateway transmits the data over a pair of wires at up to 5696 kbps, over two pairs of wires at up to 11392 kbps, over three pairs of wires at up to 17088 kbps or over four pairs of wires at up to 22784 kbps.


11.5.1 SHDSL Configuration

In the **SHDSL** menu you configure the SHDSL interface of your device.



Note


Ask your provider about any special features of your SHDSL connection.



Note

Agree the connection conditions for back-to-back connections (campus connect) with your remote terminal.

The SHDSL interfaces can be configured separately or as a bundle.

Choose the  button to edit the predefined SHDSL interfaces. In the ex works state, the logical SHDSL interfaces *Shdsl-0* to *Shdsl-3* are each preset with one pair of wires.

SHDSL Configuration

SHDSL Parameters	
ATM Interface	fcc-a-3-0
Device Mode	<input type="radio"/> CO (Central Office) <input checked="" type="radio"/> CPE (Customer Premises Equipment)
SHDSL Type	<input type="radio"/> Annex A <input checked="" type="radio"/> Annex B
Clock Rate	<input type="radio"/> Fixed <input checked="" type="radio"/> Adaptive
Wire Mode	4 wire
Additional Wire Pairs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pair 7-8 <input type="checkbox"/> Pair 3-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Pair 1-2
Line Speed Interval	Minimum 384 kbps
	Maximum 11392 kbps
<div>OK Cancel</div>	

Fig. 56: Physical Interfaces+SHDSL->SHDSL Configuration->

Fields in the SHDSL Parameters menu.

Field	Description
ATM Interface	Displays the name of the ATM interface.
Device Mode	<div>Define the role within the connection.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>CPE (Customer Premises Equipment)</i> (default value): Mode for the user page of the SHDSL connection.<i>CO (Central Office)</i>: Mode for the provider page of the SHDSL connection. <div>Note: CPE on the one hand and CO on the other hand must always be set for each SHDSL connection. All the pairs of wires should also be set to the same mode - no mixed mode is possible.</div>
SHDSL Type	<div>Define which Annex of ITU-T Recommendation G.991.2 is used for the connection.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Annex A</i>: For applications in North America (provider-dependent).

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Annex B</i> (default value): For applications in Europe (provider-dependent) for example.
Clock Rate	<p>Define whether the clock rate should be negotiated.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Fixed</i>: The clock rate is predefined. • <i>Adaptive</i> (default value): The clock rate is negotiated depending on the line quality. <p>Note that a fixed value must be set to use the IMA mode (see <i>Wire Mode</i>) on at least one side (CO or CPE).</p>
Wire Mode	<p>Define the number and combination of wires (depending on the device type) used for the SHDSL connection.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>2 wire</i>: Two wires are used with m-pair bonding for a clock rate of 192 kbps to 5696 kbps. • <i>4 wire</i>: Four wires are used with m-pair bonding for a clock rate of 384 kbps to 11392 kbps. This option supports 4-wire mode under G991.2 and Globespan Enhanced Mode. • <i>4 wire standard</i>: Four wires are used for m-pair bonding with a clock rate of 384 kbps to 11392 kbps. This option supports 4-wire mode under G991.2 but not Globespan Enhanced Mode. • <i>4 wire IMA</i>: 4 wires are used with IMA for a clock rate of 384 kbps to 11392 kbps. • <i>6 wire</i>: 6 wires are used with m-pair bonding for a clock rate of 576 kbps to 17088 kbps. • <i>6 wire IMA</i>: 6 wires are used with IMA for a clock rate of 576 kbps to 17088 kbps. • <i>8 wire</i>: 8 wires are used with m-pair bonding for a clock rate of 768 kbps to 22784 kbps. • <i>8 wire IMA</i>: 8 wires are used with IMA for a clock rate of 768 kbps to 22784 kbps.
Additional Wire Pairs	<p>Only for Wire Mode = <i>4 wire</i>, <i>4 wire standard</i>, <i>4 wire IMA</i>, <i>6 wire</i>, <i>6 wire IMA</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>For Wire Mode = <i>4 wire</i>, <i>4 wire standard</i> or <i>4 wire IMA</i> the second pair of wires is defined here.</p> <p>For Wire Mode = <i>6 wire</i> or <i>6 wire IMA</i> the second and third pair of wires is defined here.</p> <p>Wire pairs already used in defined connections are not available for selection. If these continue to be used for this SHDSL connection, the existing connection must first be terminated.</p>
Minimum Number of active Links	For Wire Mode = <i>4 wire IMA</i> , <i>6 wire IMA</i> or <i>8 wire IMA</i> the minimum number of active links is defined.
Requested Rate	<p>Only for Clock Rate = <i>Fixed</i>.</p> <p>Select which speed should be used.</p>
Line Speed Interval	<p>Only for Clock Rate = <i>Adaptive</i>.</p> <p>Under Minimum select the minimum clock rate and under Maximum the maximum clock rate for the connection.</p>

Chapter 12 LAN


In this menu, you configure the addresses in your LAN and can structure your local network using VLANs.

12.1 IP Configuration

In this menu, you can edit the IP configuration of the LAN and Ethernet interfaces of your device.

12.1.1 Interfaces

The existing IP interfaces are listed in the **LAN->IP Configuration->Interfaces** menu. You can edit the IP configuration of the interfaces or create virtual interfaces for special applications. Here is a list of all of the interfaces (logical Ethernet interfaces and others created in the subsystems) configured in the **System Management->Interface Mode / Bridge Groups->Interfaces** menu.

Use the  to edit the settings of an existing interface (bridge groups, Ethernet interfaces in routing mode).

You can use the **New** button to create virtual interfaces. However, this is only needed in special applications (e.g. BRRP).

Depending on the option selected, different fields and options are available. All the configuration options are listed below.



Note

Please note:

If your device has obtained an IP address dynamically from a DHCP server operated in your network for the basic configuration, the fallback IP address is deleted automatically and your device will no longer function over this address.


However, if you have set up a connection to the device over the fallback IP address or have assigned an IP address with the **Dime Manager** in the basic configuration, you will only be able to access your device over this IP address. The device will no longer obtain an IP configuration dynamically over DHCP.

Example of subnets

If your device is connected to a LAN that consists of two subnets, you should enter a second **IP Address / Netmask**.

The first subnet has two hosts with the IP addresses 192.168.42.1 and 192.168.42.2, for example, and the second subnet has two hosts with the IP addresses 192.168.46.1 and 192.168.46.2. To be able to exchange data packets with the first subnet, your device uses the IP address 192.168.42.3, for example, and 192.168.46.3 for the second subnet. The netmasks for both subnets must also be indicated.

12.1.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create virtual interfaces.

Interfaces

Basic Parameters

Based on Ethernet Interface

Select one

Address Mode

Static

DHCP

IP Address / Netmask

IP Address

Netmask

Add

Interface Mode

Untagged

Tagged (VLAN)

MAC Address

00:a0:f9

Use built-in

VLAN ID

1

Advanced Settings

Proxy ARP

Enabled

TCP-MSS Clamping

Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 57: LAN->IP Configuration->Interfaces->/New

The LAN->IP Configuration->Interfaces->/New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Based on Ethernet Interface	This field is only displayed if you are editing a virtual routing interface.

Field	Description
	Select the Ethernet interface for which the virtual interface is to be configured.
Address Mode	<p>Select how an IP address is assigned to the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i> (default value): The interface is assigned a static IP address in IP Address / Netmask.• <i>DHCP</i>: An IP address is assigned to the interface dynamically via DHCP.
IP Address / Netmask	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>With Add, add a new address entry, enter the IP Address and the corresponding Netmask of the virtual interface.</p>
Interface Mode	<p>Only for physical interfaces in routing mode.</p> <p>Select the configuration mode of the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Untagged</i> (default value): The interface is not assigned for a specific purpose.• <i>Tagged (VLAN)</i>: This option only applies for routing interfaces. <p>You use this option to assign the interface to a VLAN. This is done using the VLAN ID, which is displayed in this mode and can be configured. The definition of a MAC address in MAC Address is optional in this module.</p>
MAC Address	<p>Only with virtual interfaces and only for Interface Mode = <i>Untagged</i></p> <p>Enter the MAC address associated with the interface. For virtual interfaces, you can use the MAC address of the physical interface under which the virtual interface was created, but this is not necessary. You can also allocate a virtual MAC address. The first 6 characters of the MAC are preset (but can be changed).</p>
VLAN ID	Only for Interface Mode = <i>Tagged (VLAN)</i>

Field	Description
	<p>This option only applies for routing interfaces. Assign the interface to a VLAN by entering the VLAN ID of the relevant VLAN.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> (default value) to <i>4094</i>.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
DHCP MAC Address	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>If Use built-in is activated (default setting), the hardware MAC address of the Ethernet interface is used. In the case of physical interfaces, the current MAC address is entered by default.</p> <p>If you disable Use built-in, you enter a MAC address for the virtual interface, e.g. <i>00:e1:f9:06:bf:03</i>.</p> <p>Some providers use hardware-independent MAC addresses to allocate their clients IP addresses dynamically. If your provider has assigned you a MAC address, enter this here.</p>
DHCP Hostname	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>Enter the host name requested by the provider. The maximum length of the entry is 45 characters.</p>
DHCP Broadcast Flag	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>Choose whether or not the BROADCAST bit is set in the DHCP requests for your device. Some DHCP servers that assign IP addresses by UNICAST do not respond to DHCP requests with the set BROADCAST bit. In this case, it is necessary to send DHCP requests in which this bit is not set. In this case, disable this option.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Proxy ARP	<p>Select whether your device is to respond to ARP requests from its own LAN on behalf of defined remote terminals.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is disabled by default.
TCP-MSS Clamping	<p>Select whether your device is to apply MSS Clamping. To prevent IP packets fragmenting, the MSS (Maximum Segment Size) is automatically decreased by the device to the value set here.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default. Once enabled, the default value <i>1350</i> is entered in the input field.</p>

12.2 VLAN

By implementing VLAN segmentation in accordance with 802.1Q, you can configure VLANs on your device. The wireless ports of an access point, in particular, are able to remove the VLAN tag of a frame sent to the clients and to tag received frames with a pre-defined VLAN ID. This functionality makes an access point nothing less than a VLAN-compliant switch with the enhancement of grouping clients into VLAN groups. In general, VLAN segmenting can be configured with all interfaces.

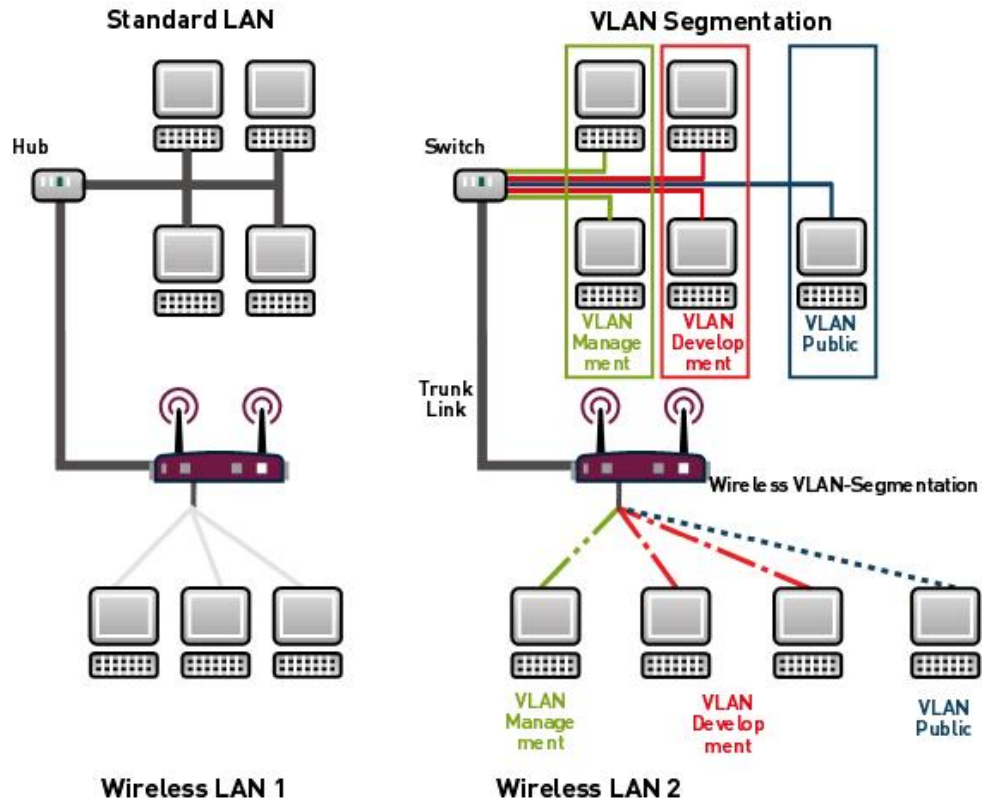


Fig. 58: VLAN segmenting

VLAN for Bridging and VLAN for Routing

In the **LAN->VLAN** menu, VLANs (virtual LANs) are configured with interfaces that operate in Bridging mode. Using the **VLAN** menu, you can make all the settings needed for this and query their status.




Caution

For interfaces that operate in Routing mode, you only assign a VLAN ID to the interface. You define this via the parameters **Interface Mode** = *Tagged (VLAN)* and field **VLAN ID** in menu **LAN->IP Configuration->Interfaces->New**.

12.2.1 VLANs

In this menu, you can display all the VLANs already configured, edit your settings and create new VLANs. By default, the *Management* VLAN is available, to which all interfaces are assigned.

12.2.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button in order to create new VLANs.

VLANsPort ConfigurationAdministration

Configure VLAN

VLAN Identifier

1

VLAN Name

Management

VLAN Members

Interface

en1-4

Egress Rule

Untagged

Delete


OK

Cancel

Fig. 59: LAN->VLAN->VLANs->New

The **LAN->VLAN->VLANs->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Configure VLAN menu.

Field	Description
VLAN Identifier	Enter the number that identifies the VLAN. In the  menu, you can no longer change this value. Possible values are 1 to 4094.
VLAN Name	Enter a unique name for the VLAN. A character string of up to 32 characters is possible.
VLAN Members	Select the ports that are to belong to this VLAN. You can use the Add button to add members. For each entry, also select whether the frames to be transmitted from this port are to be transmitted <i>Tagged</i> (i.e. with VLAN information) or <i>Untagged</i> (i.e. without VLAN information).

12.2.2 Port Configuration

In this menu, you can define and view the rules for receiving frames at the VLAN ports.

VLANs

Port Configuration

Administration

View 20 per page << >> Filter in None equal Go

Interface	PVID	Drop untagged frames	Drop non-members
en1-4	1 - Management	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Page: 1, Items: 1 - 1

OK

Cancel

Fig. 60: LAN->VLANs->Port Configuration

The LAN->VLANs->Port Configuration menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Port Configuration menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Shows the port for which you define the PVID and processing rules.
PVID	Assign the selected port the required PVID (Port VLAN Identifier). If a packet without a VLAN tag reaches this port, it is assigned this PVID.
Drop untagged frames	If this option is enabled, untagged frames are discarded. If the option is disabled, untagged frames are tagged with the PVID defined in this menu.
Drop non-members	If this option is enabled, all tagged frames that are tagged with a VLAN ID to which the selected port does not belong are discarded.

12.2.3 Administration

In this menu, you make general settings for a VLAN. The options must be configured separately for each bridge group.

VLANs

Port Configuration

Administration

Bridge Group br0 VLAN Options

Enable VLAN

☐ Enabled

Management VID

1 - Management

OK

Cancel

Fig. 61: LAN->VLANs->Administration

The LAN->VLANs->Administration menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Bridge Group br<ID> VLAN Options menu

Field	Description
Enable VLAN	Enable or disable the specified bridge group for VLAN. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is not activated by default.
Management VID	Select the VLAN ID of the VLAN in which your device is to operate.

Chapter 13 Wireless LAN Controller

By using the wireless LAN controller, you can set up and manage a WLAN infrastructure with multiple access points (APs). The WLAN controller has a Wizard which assists you in the configuration of your access points. The system uses the CAPWAP protocol (Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points Protocol) for any communication between masters and slaves.

In smaller WLAN infrastructures with up to six APs, one of the AP's assumes the master function and manages the other AP's as well as itself. In larger WLAN networks a gateway, e.g. such as a **R1202**, assumes the master function and manages the AP's.

Provided the controller has "located" all of the APs in its system, each of these shall receive a new passport and configuration in succession, i.e. they are managed via the WLAN controller and can no longer be amended "externally".

With the **WLAN controller** you can

- automatically detect individual access points (APs) and connect to a WLAN network
- Load the system software into the APs
- Load the configuration into the APs
- Monitor and manage APs

Please refer to your gateway's data sheet to find out the number of APs that you can manage with your gateway's wireless LAN controller and details of the licenses required.

13.1 Wizard

The **Wizard** menu offers step-by-step instructions for the set up of a WLAN infrastructure. The Wizard guides you through the configuration.

When you select the Wizard you will receive instructions and explanations on the separate pages of the Wizard.



Note

We highly recommended that you use the Wizard when initially configuring your WLAN infrastructure.

13.1.1 Basic Settings

Here you can configure all of the various settings that you require for the actual wireless LAN controller.

The wireless LAN controller uses the following settings:

Region

Select the country in which the wireless controller is to be operated.

Please note: The range of channels that can be used varies depending on the country setting.

Interface

Select the interface to be used for the wireless controller.

DHCP Server

Select whether an external DHCP server shall assign IP addresses to the APs or if you wish to assign fixed IP addresses yourself. Alternatively, you can use your device as a DHCP server. For this internal DHCP server, CAPWAP option 138 is active in order to allow communication between the master and slaves.

If you use static IP addresses in your network, you must enter these to all APs manually. The IP addresses of the wireless LAN controller must be entered for each AP in the **System Management->Global Settings->System** menu in the **Manual WLAN Controller IP Address** field.

Please note: Make sure that option 138 is active when using an external DHCP server.

If you wish to use a Teldat Gateway for example as a DHCP server, click on the **GUI** menu for this device under **Local Services->DHCP Server->DHCP Pool->New->Advanced Settings** in the **DHCP Options** field on the **Add** button. Select as **Option** *CAPWAP Controller* and in the **Value** field enter the IP address of the WLAN controller.

IP Address Range

If the IP addresses are to be assigned internally, you must enter the start and end IP address of the desired range.

Please note: If you click on **Next**, a warning appears which informs you that continuing will overwrite the wireless LAN controller configuration. By clicking on **OK** you signal that you agree with this and wish to continue with the configuration.

13.1.2 Radio Profile

Select which frequency band your WLAN controller shall use.

If the *2.4 GHz Radio Profile* is set then the 2.4 GHz frequency band is used.

If the *5 GHz Radio Profile* is set then the 5 GHz frequency band is used.


If the corresponding device contains two wireless modules, you can **Use two independent radio profiles**. This assigns *2.4 GHz Radio Profile* to module 1 and *5 GHz Radio Profile* to module 2.


The function is activated by selecting *Enabled*.

The function is disabled by default.

13.1.3 Wireless Network

All of the configured wireless networks (VSS) are displayed in the list. At least one wireless network (VSS) is set up. This entry cannot be deleted.

Click on  to edit an existing entry.

You can also delete entries using the  icon.


With **Add**, you can create new entries. You can create up to eight wireless networks (VSS) for a wireless module.



Note

If you wish to use the default wireless network that is set up, you must at least change the **Preshared Key** parameters. Otherwise you will be prompted.

13.1.3.1 Change or add wireless networks

Click on  to edit an existing entry.

With **Add**, you can create new entries.

The following parameters are available

Network Name (SSID)

Enter the name of the wireless network (SSID).

Enter an ASCII string with a maximum of 32 characters.

Also select whether the **Network Name (SSID)** *Visible* is to be transmitted.

Security Mode

Select the security mode (encryption and authentication) for the wireless network.

Please note: *WPA Enterprise* means 802.11x.

WPA Mode

Select for **Security Mode** = *WPA-PSK* or *WPA Enterprise*, whether you wish to use WPA oder WPA 2 or both.

Preshared Key

Enter the WPA password for **Security Mode** = *WPA-PSK*.

Enter an ASCII string with 8 - 63 characters.



Important

Change the default Preshared Key! If the key has not been changed, your device will not be protected against unauthorised access!

Radius Server

You can control access to a wireless network via a RADIUS server.

With **Add**, you can create new entries.

Enter the IP address and the password of the desired RADIUS server.

EAP Preauthentication

For **Security Mode** = *WPA Enterprise*, select whether the EAP preauthentication function is to be *Enabled*. This function tells your device that WLAN clients, which are already connected to another access point, can first carry out 802.1x authentication as soon as they are within range. Such WLAN clients can then simply connect over the existing network connection with your device.

VLAN

Select whether the VLAN segmentation is to be used for this wireless network.


If you wish to use VLAN segmentation, enter a value between 2 and 4094 in the input field in order to identify the VLAN. (VLAN ID 1 is not possible!).

**Note**

Before you continue, please ensure that all access points that the WLAN controller shall manage are correctly wired and switched on.

13.1.4 Start automatic installation

You will see a list of all detected access points.

If you wish to change the settings of a detected AP, click on  in the corresponding entry.

You will see the settings for all selected access points. You can change these settings.

The following parameters are available in the **Access Point Settings** menu:

Location

Displays the stated locality of the AP. You can enter another locality.

Assigned Wireless Network (VSS)

Displays the wireless networks that are currently assigned.

The following parameters are available in the wireless module 1 menu:

(The parts wireless module 1 and wireless module 2 are displayed if the AP has two wireless modules.)

Operation Mode

Select the mode in which the wireless module is to be operated.

Possible values:

- *On* (default value): The wireless module is used as an access point in your network.
- *Off*: The wireless module is not active.

Active Radio Profile

Displays the wireless module profile that is currently selected. You can select another wireless module profile from the list if more than one wireless module profile are being set up.

Channel

Displays the channel that is assigned. You can select an alternative channel.

The number of channels you can select depends on the country setting. Please consult the data sheet for your device.



Note

Configuring the network name (SSID) in Access Point mode means that wireless networks can be logically separated from each other, but they can still physically interfere with each other if they are operating on the same or closely adjacent wireless channels. So if you are operating two or more radio networks close to each other, it is advisable to allocate the networks to different channels. Each of these should be spaced at least four channels apart, as a network also partially occupies the adjacent channels.

In the case of manual channel selection, please make sure first that the APs actually support these channels.

Transmit Power

Displays the transmission power in dBm. You can select another transmission power.

With **OK** you apply the settings.

Select the access points that your WLAN controller shall manage. In the **Manage** column, click on the desired entries or click on **Select all** in order to select all entries. Click the **Deselect all** button to disable all entries and to then select individual entries if required (e.g. for large lists).

Click on **Start** in order to install the WLAN and automatically assign the frequencies.



Note

If there are not enough licences available, the message "The maximum number of slave access points that can be supported has been exceeded". Please check your licences. If this message is displayed then you should obtain additional licences if appropriate.

During the installation of the WLAN and the allocation of frequencies, on the messages displayed you will see how far the installation has progressed. The display is continuously updated.

Provided that non-overlapping wireless channels are located for all access points, the configuration that is set in the Wizard is transferred to the access points.

When the installation is complete, you will see a list of the **Managed** access points.

Under **Configure the Alert Service for WLAN surveillance**, click **Start** to monitor your managed APs. You are taken to the **External Reporting->Alert Service->Alert Recipient** menu with the default setting **Event** = *Managed AP offline*. You can specify that you wish to be notified by e-mail if the *Managed AP offline* event occurs.

Click under **New Neighborscan** on **Start**, to rescan adjacent AP's. You will receive a warning that the wireless modules of the access points must also be disabled for a certain period of time. When you start the process with **OK**, a progress bar is displayed. The located AP display is updated every ten seconds.

13.2 Controller Configuration

In this menu, you make the basic settings for the wireless LAN controller.

13.2.1 General

General

Basic Settings

Region	Germany
Interface	LAN_EN1-0
DHCP Server	DHCP Server with enabled CAPWAP option (138): <input checked="" type="radio"/> External or static <input type="radio"/> Internal
Slave AP location	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Local (LAN) <input type="radio"/> Remote (WAN)
Slave AP LED mode	Status

OKCancel

Fig. 62: Wireless LAN Controller->Controller Configuration->General

The **Wireless LAN Controller->Controller Configuration->General** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
Region	Select the country in which the wireless LAN controller is to be operated. Possible values are all the countries configured on the device's wireless module.

Field	Description
	<p>The range of channels that can be used varies depending on the country setting.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Germany</i>.</p>
Interface	Select the interface to be used for the wireless controller.
DHCP Server	<p>Select whether an external DHCP server shall assign IP addresses to the APs or if you wish to assign fixed IP addresses yourself. Alternatively, you can use your device as a DHCP server. For this internal DHCP server, CAPWAP option 138 is active in order to allow communication between the master and slaves.</p> <p>Please note: Make sure that option 138 is active when using an external DHCP server.</p> <p>If you wish to use a Teldat Gateway for example as a DHCP server, click on the GUI menu for this device under Local Services->DHCP Server->DHCP Pool->New->Advanced Settings in the DHCP Options field on the Add button. Select as Option <i>CAPWAP Controller</i> and in the Value field enter the IP address of the WLAN controller.</p> <p>If you use static IP addresses in your network, you must enter these to all APs manually. The IP addresses of the wireless LAN controller must be entered for each AP in the System Management->Global Settings->System menu in the Manual WLAN Controller IP Address field.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>External or static</i> (default value): An external DHCP server with an CAPWAP option 138 enabled assigns the IP addresses to the APs or you can give static IP addresses to the APs.• <i>Internal</i>: Your device, on which the CAPWAP option 138 is active, assigns the IP addresses to the APs.
IP Address Range	<p>Only for DHCP Server = <i>Internal</i></p> <p>Enter the start and end IP address of the range. These IP addresses and your device must originate from the same network.</p>

Field	Description
Slave AP location	<p>Select whether the APs that the wireless LAN controller is to manage are located in the LAN or the WAN.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Local (LAN)</i> (default value)• <i>Remote (WAN)</i> <p>The <i>Remote (WAN)</i> setting is useful if, for example, there is a wireless LAN controller installed at head office and its APs are distributed to different branches. If the APs are linked via VPN, it may be that a connection is terminated. If this happens, the relevant AP with the setting <i>Remote (WAN)</i> maintains its configuration until the connection is reestablished. It then boots up and the controller and the AP then resynchronize.</p>
Slave AP LED mode	<p>The feature is only for the Access Points W1003n, W2003n, W2003n-ext and W2004n available.</p> <p>Select the lighting scheme of the slave AP LEDs.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>State</i> (default value): Only the status LED flashes once per second.• <i>Flashing</i>: All LEDs show their standard behavior.• <i>Off</i>: All LEDs are deactivated.

13.3 Slave AP configuration

In this menu, you will find all of the settings that are required to manage the slave access points.

13.3.1 Slave Access Points

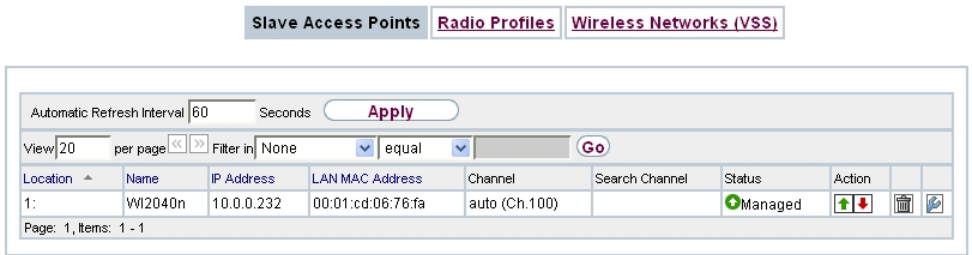


Fig. 63: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Slave Access Points

In the **Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Slave Access Points** menu a list of all APs found with the wizard is displayed.

You will see an entry with a parameter set for each access point (**Location**, **Name**, **IP Address**, **LAN MAC Address**, **Channel**, **Search Channel**, **Status**, **Action**). Choose whether the selected Access Pont is to be managed by the WLAN Controller by clicking the button or the button in the **Action** column.


You can disconnect the Access Point from the WLAN Controller and therefore remove it from your WLAN infrastructure by click on the button. The Access Point then receives the *Discovered* status, but is no longer *Managed*.


Click on the **START** button under **Channel reallocation** in order to reassign any assigned channels, e.g. when a new access point has been added.

Possible values for Status

Status	Meaning
Discovered	The AP has registered at the wireless LAN controller. The controller has prompted the required parameters from the AP.
Initialising	The WLAN controller and the APs "communicate" via CAPWAP. The configuration is transferred and enabled to the APs.
Managed	The AP is set to "Managed" status. The controller has sent a configuration to the AP and has enabled this. The AP is managed centrally from the controller and cannot be configured via the GUI.
No License Available	The AP does not have an unassigned licence for this AP.
Offline	The AP is either administratively disabled or switched off or has its power supply cut off etc.

13.3.1.1 Edit

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

You can also delete entries using the  icon. If you have deleted APs, these will be located again but shall not be configured.

Slave Access Points

Radio Profiles

Wireless Networks (VSS)


Access Point Settings

Device	WI2040n
Location	
Name	WI2040n
Description	
CAPWAP Encryption	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Radio Module1	
Operation Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off
Active Radio Profile	Select one
Channel	No Profile Selected!
Used Channel	0
Transmit Power	Max.
Assigned Wireless Network (VSS)	<div>Profile MAC Address</div> <div>Add</div>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 64: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Slave Access Points->

The data for wireless module 1 and wireless module 2 are displayed in the **Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Slave Access Points->** menu if the corresponding device has two wireless modules. With devices featuring a single wireless module, the data for wireless module 1 are displayed.

The menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Access Point Settings menu.

Field	Description
Device	Displays the type of device for the AP.
Location	Displays the locality of the AP. The locations are given numbers if no location has been entered. You can enter another locality.

Field	Description
Name	Displays the name of the AP. You can change the name.
Description	Enter a unique description for the AP.
CAPWAP Encryption	<p>Select whether communication between the master and slaves is to be encrypted.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>You can override the encryption in order to view the communication for debugging purposes.</p>

Fields in the Wireless module1 or in the Wireless module 2 menu.

Field	Description
Operation Mode	<p>Displays the mode in which the wireless module is to be operated. You can change the mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>On</i> (default value): The wireless module is used as an access point in your network.• <i>Off</i>: The wireless module is not active.
Active Radio Profile	<p>Displays the wireless module profile that is currently selected. You can select another wireless module profile from the list if more than one wireless module profile are being set up.</p>
Channel	<p>Displays the channel that is assigned. You can select another channel.</p> <p>The number of channels you can select depends on the country setting. Please consult the data sheet for your device.</p> <p>Access Point mode</p> <p>Configuring the network name (SSID) in Access Point mode means that wireless networks can be logically separated from each other, but they can still physically interfere with each other if they are operating on the same or closely adjacent wireless channels. So if you are operating two or more radio networks close to each other, it is advisable to allocate the networks to</p>

Field	Description
	<p>different channels. Each of these should be spaced at least four channels apart, as a network also partially occupies the adjacent channels.</p> <p>In the case of manual channel selection, please make sure first that the APs actually support these channels.</p> <p>Possible values (according to the selected wireless module profile):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For Operation Band = <i>2.4 GHz In/Outdoor</i> Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>13</i> and <i>Auto</i> (default value).• For Operation Band = <i>5 GHz Indoor</i> Possible values are <i>36</i>, <i>40</i>, <i>44</i>, <i>48</i> and <i>Auto</i> (default value)• For Operation Band = <i>5 GHz In/Outdoor</i> and <i>5 GHz Outdoor</i> Only the <i>Auto</i> option is possible here.
Used Channel	<p>Only for managed APs.</p> <p>Displays the channel that is currently in use.</p>
Transmit Power	<p>Displays the transmission power. You can select another transmission power.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Max.</i> (default value): The maximum antenna power is used.• <i>5 dBm</i>• <i>8 dBm</i>• <i>11 dBm</i>• <i>14 dBm</i>• <i>16 dBm</i>
Assigned Wireless Network (VSS)	<p>Displays the wireless networks that are currently assigned.</p>

13.3.2 Radio Profiles

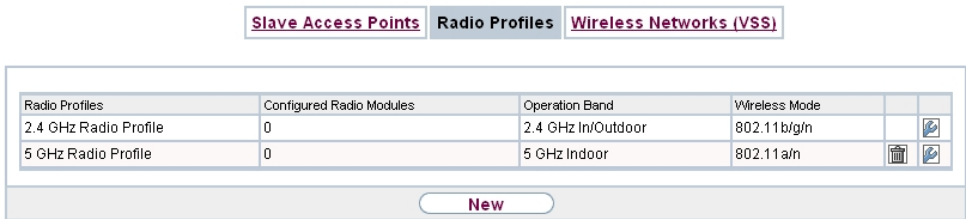


Fig. 65: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Radio Profiles

An overview of all created wireless module profiles is displayed in the **Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Radio Profiles** menu. A profile with 2.4 GHz and a profile with 5 GHz are created by default; the 2.4 GHz profile cannot be deleted.

For each wireless module profile you will see an entry with a parameter set (**Radio Profiles, Configured Radio Modules, Operation Band, Wireless Mode**).

13.3.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button in order to create new wireless module profiles.

Slave Access Points

Radio Profiles

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Radio Profile Definition

Description

Operation Mode

Access Point

Operation Band

2.4 GHz In/Outdoor

Number of Spatial Streams

3

Performance Settings

Wireless Mode

802.11b/g/n

Max. Transmission Rate

Auto

Burst Mode

☐ Enabled

Airtime fairness

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Channel Plan

All

Beacon Period

100

ms

DTIM Period

2

RTS Threshold

2347

Short Guard Interval

☐ Enabled

Short Retry Limit

7

Long Retry Limit

4

Fragmentation Threshold

2346

Bytes

Cyclic Background Scanning

☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 66: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Radio Profiles-> / New

The Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Radio Profiles-> / New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Radio Profile Definition

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description of the wireless module profile.
Operation Mode	<div>Define the mode in which the wireless module profile is to be operated.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Off</i> (default value): The wireless module profile is not active.• <i>Access Point</i>: Your device is used as an access point in

Field	Description
	your network.
Operation Band	<p>Select the frequency band of the wireless module profile.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>2.4 GHz In/Outdoor</i> (default value): Your device is operated at 2.4 GHz (mode 802.11b, mode 802.11g and mode 802.11n), inside or outside buildings.• <i>5 GHz Indoor</i>: Your device is operated at 5 GHz (mode 802.11a/h and mode 802.11n) inside buildings.• <i>5 GHz Outdoor</i>: Your device is operated at 5 GHz (mode 802.11a/h and mode 802.11n) outside buildings.• <i>5 GHz In/Outdoor</i>: Your device is operated at 5 GHz (mode 802.11a/h and mode 802.11n) inside or outside buildings.• <i>5.8 GHz Outdoor</i>: Only for so-called Broadband Fixed Wireless Access (BFWA) applications. The frequencies in the frequency range from 5755 MHz to 5875 MHz may only be used in conjunction with commercial offers for public network accesses and requires registration with the Federal Network Agency.
Bandwidth	<p>Not for Operation Band = <i>2.4 GHz In/Outdoor</i></p> <p>Select how many channels are to be used.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>20 MHz</i> (default value): One channel with 20 MHz bandwidth is used.• <i>40 MHz</i>: Two channels each with 20 MHz bandwidth are used. In the case one channel acts as a control channel and the other as an expansion channel.
Number of Spatial Streams	<p>Select how many traffic flows are to be used in parallel.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>3</i>: Three traffic flows are used.• <i>2</i>: Two traffic flows are used.• <i>1</i>: One traffic flow is used.

Fields in the menu Performance Settings


Field	Description
Wireless Mode	<p>Select the wireless technology that the access point is to use.</p> <p>For Operation Band = <i>2.4 GHz In/Outdoor</i></p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>802.11g</i>: The device operates only in accordance with 802.11g. 802.11b clients have no access.• <i>802.11b</i>: Your device operates only in accordance with 802.11b and forces all clients to adapt to it.• <i>802.11 mixed (b/g)</i>: Your device adapts to the client technology and operates according to either 802.11b or 802.11g.• <i>802.11 mixed long (b/g)</i>: Your device adapts to the client technology and operates according to either 802.11b or 802.11g. Only a data rate of 1 and 2 mbps needs to be supported by all clients (basic rates). This mode is also needed for Centrino clients if connection problems occur.• <i>802.11 mixed short (b/g)</i>: Your device adapts to the client technology and operates according to either 802.11b or 802.11g. The following applies for mixed-short: The data rates 5.5 and 11 mbps must be supported by all clients (basic rates).• <i>802.11b/g/n</i>: Your device operates according to either 802.11b, 802.11g or 802.11n.• <i>802.11g/n</i>: Your device operates according to either 802.11g or 802.11n.• <i>802.11n</i>: Your device operates only according to 802.11n. <p>For Operation Band = <i>5 GHz Indoor, 5 GHz Outdoor, 5 GHz In/Outdoor or 5.8 GHz Outdoor</i></p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>802.11a</i>: The device operates only in accordance with 802.11a.• <i>802.11n</i>: Your device operates only according to 802.11n.• <i>802.11a/n</i>: Your device operates according to either 802.11a or 802.11n.

Field	Description
Max. Transmission Rate	<p>Select the transmission speed.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto</i> (default value): The transmission speed is determined automatically.• <i><Value></i>: According to setting for Operation Band, Bandwidth, Number of Spatial Streams and Wireless Mode various fixed values in mbps are available.
Burst Mode	<p>Activate this function to increase the transmission speed for 802.11g through frame bursting. As a result, several packets are sent one after the other without a waiting period. This is particularly effective in 11b/g mixed operation.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>If problems occur with older WLAN hardware, this function should not be active.</p>
Airtime fairness	<p>This function is not available for all devices.</p> <p>The Airtime fairness function ensures that the access point's send resources are distributed intelligently to the connected clients. This means that a powerful client (e. g. a 802.11n client) cannot achieve only a poor flow level, because a less powerful client (e. g. a 802.11a client) is treated in the same way when apportioning.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>This fuction is only applied to unprioritized frames of the WMM Classe "Background".</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu **Advanced Settings**

Field	Description
Channel Plan	<p>Select the desired channel plan.</p> <p>The channel plan makes a preselection when a channel is se-</p>

Field	Description
	<p>lected. This ensures that no channels overlap, i.e. a distance of four channels is maintained between the channels used. This is useful if more access points are used with overlapping radio cells.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All</i>: All channels can be dialled when a channel is selected.• <i>Auto</i>: Depending on the region, operation band, wireless mode and bandwidth, the channels that have a distance of 4 channels are provided.• <i>User defined</i>: You can select the desired channels yourself.
User Defined Channel Plan	<p>Only for Channel Plan = <i>User defined</i></p> <p>The currently selected channels are displayed here.</p> <p>With Add you can add channels. If all available channels are displayed, you cannot add any more entries.</p> <p>You can also delete entries using the  icon.</p>
Beacon Period	<p>Enter the time in milliseconds between the sending of two beacons.</p> <p>This value is transmitted in Beacon and Probe Response Frames.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>100</i>.</p>
DTIM Period	<p>Enter the interval for the Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM).</p> <p>The DTIM field is a data field in transmitted beacons that informs clients about the window to the next broadcast or multicast transmission. If clients operate in power save mode, they come alive at the right time and receive the data.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>255</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>2</i>.</p>

Field	Description
RTS Threshold	<p>Here you can specify the data packet length threshold in bytes (1..2346) as of which the RTS/CTS mechanism is to be used. This makes sense if several clients that are not in each other's wireless range are run in one access point.</p>
Short Guard Interval	<p>Enable this function to reduce the guard interval (= time between transmission of two data symbols) from 800 ns to 400 ns.</p>
Short Retry Limit	<p>Enter the maximum number of attempts to send a frame with length less than or equal to the value defined in RTS Threshold. After this many failed attempts, the packet is discarded.</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 255.</p> <p>The default value is 7.</p>
Long Retry Limit	<p>Enter the maximum number of attempts to send a data packet of length greater than the value defined in RTS Threshold. After this many failed attempts, the packet is discarded.</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 255.</p> <p>The default value is 4.</p>
Fragmentation Threshold	<p>Enter the maximum size as of which the data packets are to be fragmented (i.e. split into smaller units). Low values are recommended for this field in areas with poor reception and in the event of radio interference.</p> <p>Possible values are 256 to 2346.</p> <p>The default value is 2346.</p>
Cyclic Background Scanning	<p>Not all devices support this function.</p> <p>You can enable the Cyclic Background Scanning function so that a search is run at regular intervals for neighbouring or rogue access points in the network. This search is run without negatively impacting the function as an access point.</p> <p>Enable or disable the function Cyclic Background Scanning.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> .
	The function is not activated by default.

13.3.3 Wireless Networks (VSS)

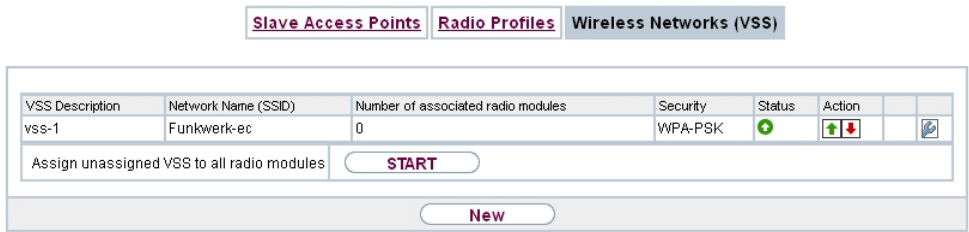


Fig. 67: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Wireless Networks (VSS)

An overview of all created wireless networks is displayed in the **Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Wireless Networks (VSS)** menu. A wireless network is created by default.

For every wireless network (VSS), you see an entry with a parameter set (**VSS Description, Network Name (SSID), Number of associated radio modules, Security, Status, Action**).

Under **Assign unassigned VSS to all radio modules** click on the **Start** button to assign a newly-created VSS to all wireless modules.

13.3.3.1 Edit or New

Choose the icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to configure additional wireless networks.

Slave Access Points

Radio Profiles

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Service Set Parameters

Network Name (SSID)

☒ Visible

Intra-cell Repeating

☒ Enabled

ARP Processing

☐ Enabled

WMM

☒ Enabled

Security Settings

Security Mode

Inactive

Client load balancing

Max. number of clients - hard limit

32

Max. number of clients - soft limit

28

Client Band select

Disabled - optimized for fast roaming

MAC-Filter

Access Control

☐ Enabled

Dynamic blacklisting

☒ Enabled

Failed attempts per Time

10

/ 60

Seconds

Blacklist blocktime

500

Seconds

VLAN

VLAN

☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 68: Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Wireless Networks (VSS)->New

The Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Wireless Networks (VSS)->New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Service Set Parameters

Field	Description
Network Name (SSID)	<p>Enter the name of the wireless network (SSID).</p> <p>Enter an ASCII string with a maximum of 32 characters.</p> <p>Also select whether the Network Name (SSID) is to be transmitted.</p> <p>The network name is displayed by selecting <i>Visible</i>.</p> <p>It is visible by default.</p>
Intra-cell Repeating	<p>Select whether communication between the WLAN clients is to be permitted within a radio cell.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
ARP Processing	<p>Select whether the ARP processing function should be enabled. The ARP data traffic is reduced in the network by the fact that ARP broadcasts that have been converted to ARP unicasts are forwarded to IP addresses that are known internally. Unicasts are quicker and clients with an enabled power save function are not addressed.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Make sure that ARP processing cannot be applied together with the MAC bridge function.</p>
WMM	<p>Select whether voice or video prioritisation via WMM (Wireless Multimedia) is to be activated for the wireless network so that optimum transmission quality is always achieved for time-critical applications. Data prioritisation is supported in accordance with DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) or IEEE802.1d.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Fields in the menu Security Settings

Field	Description
Security Mode	<p>Select the security mode (encryption and authentication) for the wireless network.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Neither encryption nor authentication• <i>WEP 40</i>: WEP 40 bits• <i>WEP 104</i>: WEP 104 bits• <i>WPA-PSK</i>: WPA Preshared Key• <i>WPA Enterprise</i>: 802.11x

Field	Description
Transmit Key	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WEP 40</i> or <i>WEP 104</i></p> <p>Select one of the keys configured in WEP Key as a standard key.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Key 1</i>.</p>
WEP Key 1-4	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WEP 40</i>, <i>WEP 104</i></p> <p>Enter the WEP key.</p> <p>Enter a character string with the right number of characters for the selected WEP mode. For <i>WEP 40</i> you need a character string with 5 characters, for <i>WEP 104</i> with 13 characters, e. g. <i>hello</i> for <i>WEP 40</i>, <i>teldat-wep1</i> for <i>WEP 104</i>.</p>
WPA Mode	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WPA-PSK</i> and <i>WPA Enterprise</i></p> <p>Select whether you want to use WPA (with TKIP encryption) or WPA 2 (with AES encryption), or both.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>WPA and WPA 2</i> (default value): WPA and WPA 2 can be used. • <i>WPA</i>: Only WPA is used. • <i>WPA 2</i>: Only WPA2 is used.
WPA Cipher	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WPA-PSK</i> and <i>WPA Enterprise</i> and for WPA Mode = <i>WPA</i> and <i>WPA and WPA 2</i></p> <p>Select the type of encryption you want to apply to WPA.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>TKIP</i> (default value): TKIP is used. • <i>AES</i>: AES is used.
WPA2 Cipher	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WPA-PSK</i> and <i>WPA Enterprise</i> and for WPA Mode = <i>WPA 2</i> and <i>WPA and WPA 2</i></p> <p>Select the type of encryption you want to apply to WPA2.</p> <p>Possible values:</p>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>AES</i> (default value): AES is used.• <i>TKIP</i>: TKIP is used.
Preshared Key	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WPA-PSK</i></p> <p>Enter the WPA password.</p> <p>Enter an ASCII string with 8 - 63 characters.</p> <p>Note: Change the default Preshared Key! If the key has not been changed, your device will not be protected against unauthorised access!</p>
Radius Server	<p>You can control access to a wireless network via a RADIUS server.</p> <p>With Add, you can create new entries. Enter the IP address and the password of the RADIUS server.</p>
EAP Preauthentication	<p>Only for Security Mode = <i>WPA Enterprise</i></p> <p>Select whether the EAP preauthentication function is to be activated. This function tells your device that WLAN clients, which are already connected to another access point, can first carry out 802.1x authentication as soon as they are within range. Such WLAN clients can then simply connect over the existing network connection with your device.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Fields in the menu Client load balancing

Field	Description
Max. number of clients - hard limit	<p>Enter the maximum number of clients that can be connected to this wireless network (SSID)</p> <p>The maximum number of clients that can register with a wireless module depends on the specifications of the respective WLAN module. This maximum is distributed across all wireless networks configured for this radio module. No more new wireless networks can be created and a warning message will appear if the maximum number of clients is reached.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values are whole numbers between <i>1</i> and <i>254</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>32</i>.</p>
Max. number of clients - soft limit	<p>Not all devices support this function.</p> <p>To avoid a radio module being fully utilised, you can set a "soft" restriction on the number of connected clients. If this number is reached, new connection queries are initially rejected. If the client cannot find another wireless network and, therefore, repeats its query, the connection is accepted. Queries are only definitively rejected when the Max. number of clients - hard limit is reached.</p> <p>The value of the Max. number of clients - soft limit must be the same as or less than that of the Max. number of clients - hard limit.</p> <p>The default value is <i>28</i>.</p> <p>You can disable this function if you set Max. number of clients - soft limit and Max. number of clients - hard limit to identical values.</p>
Client Band select	<p>Not all devices support this function.</p> <p>This function requires a dual radio setup where the same wireless network is configured on both radio modules, but in different frequency bands.</p> <p>The Client Band select option enables clients to be moved from the frequency band originally selected to a less busy one, providing the client supports this. To achieve a changeover, the connection attempt of a client is initially refused so that the client repeats the attempt in a different frequency band.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Disabled - optimized for fast roaming</i>(default value): The function is not used for this VSS. This is useful if clients are to switch between different radio cells with as little delay as possible, e. g. with Voice over WLAN.<i>2,4 GHz band preferred</i>: Preference is given to accepting clients in the 2.4 GHz band.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>5 GHz band preferred</i>: Preference is given to accepting clients in the 5 GHz band.

Fields in the menu MAC-Filter

Field	Description
Access Control	<p>Select whether only certain clients are to be permitted for this wireless network.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Allowed Addresses	<p>Use Add to make entries and enter the MAC addresses (MAC Address) of the clients to be permitted.</p>
Dynamic blacklisting	<p>You can use the Dynamic blacklisting function to identify clients that want to gain possibly unauthorised access to the network and block them for a certain length of time. A client is blocked if the number of unsuccessful login attempts with a specified time exceeds a certain number. This threshold value and the duration of the block can be configured. A blocked client is blocked at all the APs that are managed by the wireless LAN controller for the VSS concerned, so neither are they able to log into a different radio cell in that VSS. If a client needs to be blocked permanently, this can be done in the Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Rogue Clients menu.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is activated by default.</p>
Failed attempts per Time	<p>Enter the number of failed attempts that have to originate from a specific MAC address during a certain time for a blacklist entry to be created.</p> <p>Default values are <i>10</i> failed attempts during <i>60</i> seconds.</p>
Blacklist blocktime	<p>Enter the time for which an entry in the dynamic blacklist remains valid.</p> <p>Default value is <i>500</i> seconds.</p>

Fields in the menu VLAN

Field	Description
VLAN	<p>Select whether the VLAN segmentation is to be used for this wireless network.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
VLAN ID	<p>Enter the number that identifies the VLAN.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>2</i> to <i>4094</i>.</p> <p>VLAN ID 1 is not possible as it is already in use.</p>

13.4 Monitoring

This menu is used to monitor your WLAN infrastructure.

13.4.1 Active Clients

Active Clients

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Client Management

Neighbor APs

Rogue APs

Rogue Clients

Automatic Refresh Interval: 60 Seconds Apply

View: 20 per page Filter in: None equal Go

Location

Slave AP Name

VSS

Client MAC

Client IP Address

Signal : Noise (dBm)

Status

Uptime

Page: 1

Fig. 69: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Active Clients

In the **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Active Clients** menu, current values of all active clients are displayed.

For each client you will see an entry with the following parameter set: **Location**, **Name**, **VSS**, **Client MAC**, **Client IP Address**, **Signal : Noise (dBm)** , **Status**, **Uptime**.

Possible values for Status

Status	Meaning
None	The client is no longer in a valid status.
Logon	The client is currently logging on with the WLAN.
Associated	The client is logged on with the WLAN.
Authenticate	The client is in the process of being authenticated.

Status	Meaning
Authenticated	The client is authenticated.

13.4.2 Wireless Networks (VSS)

Active Clients

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Client Management

Neighbor APs

Rogue APs

Rogue Clients

View20per page<>Filter inNoneequalGo

Location	Slave AP Name	VSS	MAC Address (VSS)	Channel	Status
Page: 1					

Fig. 70: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Wireless Networks (VSS)

In menu **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Wireless Networks (VSS)** an overview of the currently used AP is displayed. You see which wireless module is assigned to which wireless network. For each wireless a parameter set is displayed (**Location**, **Name**, **VSS**, **MAC Address (VSS)**, **Channel**, **Clients**, **Status**).

13.4.3 Load Balancing

Active Clients

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Client Management

Neighbor APs

Rogue APs

Rogue Clients

View20per page<>Filter inNoneequalGo

Location	Slave AP Name	VSS	MAC Address (VSS)	Active Clients	2,4/5 GHz changeover	Denied Clients soft/hard
Page: 1						

Apply

Fig. 71: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Load Balancing

The **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Load Balancing** menu displays an overview of the **Load Balancing**. For each VSS you can see such information as the number of clients connected, the number of clients that are affected by the **2,4/5 GHz changeover**, and the number of rejected clients.

13.4.4 Neighbor APs

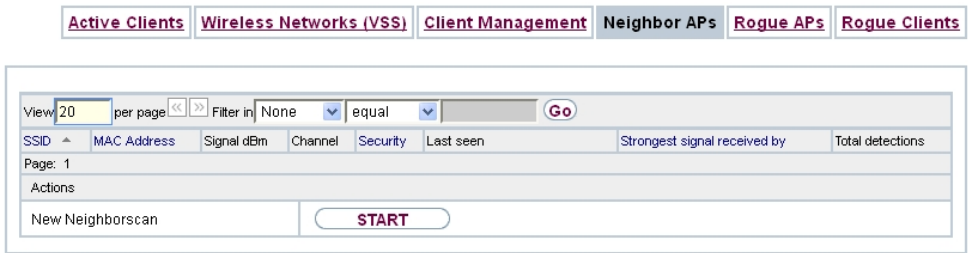


Fig. 72: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Neighbor APs

In the **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Neighbor APs** menu, the adjacent AP's found during the scan are displayed. **Rogue APs**, i.e. APs which are not managed by the WLAN controller but are using an SSID managed by the WLAN controller are highlighted in red.



Note

Check the rogue APs shown carefully, as an attacker could attempt to spy on data in your network using a rogue AP.

Although each AP is found more than once, it is only displayed once with the strongest signal. You see the following parameters for each AP: **SSID**, **MAC Address**, **Signal dBm**, **Channel**, **Security**, **Last seen**, **Strongest signal received by**, **Total detections**.

The entries are displayed in alphabetical order by **SSID**. **Security** shows the security settings of the AP. Under **Strongest signal received by**, you will see the parameters **Location** and **Name** of the APs in which the displayed AP was found. **Total detections** shows how often the corresponding AP was found during the scan.

Click under **New Neighborscan** on **Start**, to rescan adjacent AP's. You will receive a warning that the wireless modules of the access points must also be disabled for a certain period of time. When you start the process with **OK**, a progress bar is displayed. The located AP display is updated every ten seconds.

13.4.5 Rogue APs

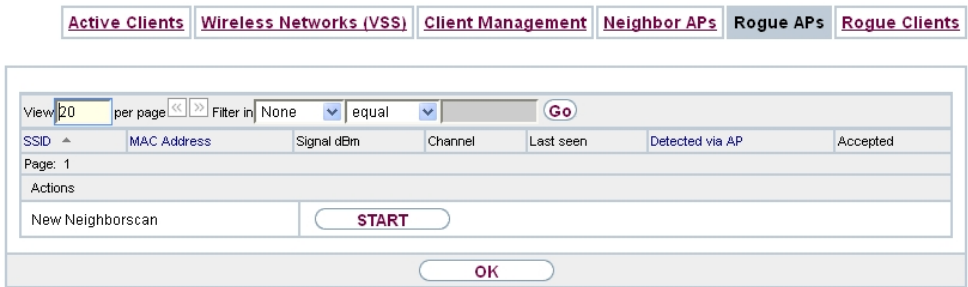


Fig. 73: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Rogue APs

APs which are using an SSID from their own network but are not managed by **Wireless LAN Controller** are displayed in the **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring->Rogue APs** menu. **Rogue APs** which have been found for the first time are displayed with a red background.

For each rogue AP you will see an entry with the following parameter set: **SSID, MAC Address, Signal dBm, Channel, Last seen, Detected via AP, Accepted.**



Note

Check the rogue APs shown carefully, as an attacker could attempt to spy on data in your network using a rogue AP.

You can class a rogue AP as trustworthy by enabling the **Accepted** checkbox. If an alarm has been configured, this is then removed and no longer sent. The red background disappears.

Click under **New Neighborscan** on **Start**, to rescan adjacent AP's. You will receive a warning that the wireless modules of the access points must also be disabled for a certain period of time. When you start the process with **OK**, a progress bar is displayed. The located AP display is updated every ten seconds.

13.4.6 Rogue Clients

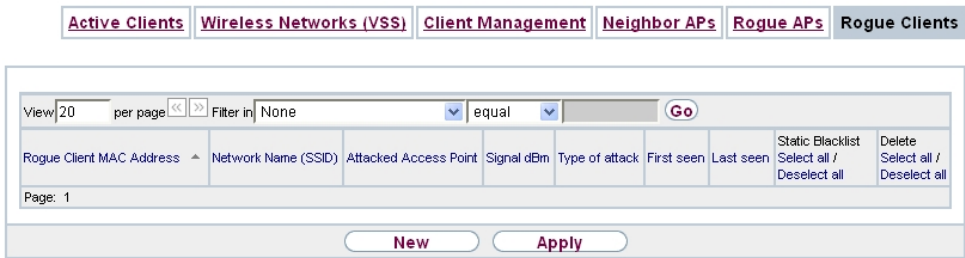



Fig. 74: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Rogue Clients

The **Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Rogue Clients** menu displays the clients which have attempted to gain unauthorised access to the network and which are therefore on the blacklist. The blacklist is configured for each VSS in the **Wireless LAN Controller->Slave AP configuration->Wireless Networks (VSS)** menu. You can also add a new entry to the static blacklist.

Possible values for Rogue Clients

Status	Meaning
Rogue Client MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the client on the blacklist.
SSID	Displays the SSID involved.
Attacked Access Point	Displays the AP concerned.
Signal dBm	Displays the signal strength of the client during the attempted access.
Type of attack	This displays the type of potential attack, e. g. an incorrect authentication.
First seen	Displays the time of the first registered attempted access.
Last seen	Displays the time of the last registered attempted access.
Static Blacklist	You can categorise a rogue client as untrustworthy by selecting the checkbox in the Static Blacklist column. The block on the client does not then end automatically, rather you need to lift it manually.
Delete	You can delete entries with the  symbol.

13.4.6.1 New

Choose the **New** button to configure additional blacklist entries.

Active Clients

Wireless Networks (VSS)

Client Management

Neighbor APs

Rogue APs

Rogue Clients

New Blacklist Entry

Rogue Client MAC Address

Network Name (SSID)

Select one

OK

Cancel

Fig. 75: Wireless LAN Controller->Monitoring+Rogue Clients+New

The menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the New Blacklist Entry menu.

Field	Description
Rogue Client MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the client you intend to include in the static blacklist.
Network Name (SSID)	Pick the wireless network you want to exclude the rogue client from.

13.5 Maintenance

This menu is used for the maintenance of your managed APs.

13.5.1 Firmware Maintenance

Firmware Maintenance

Managed Access Points

Update firmware
Select all /
Deselect all

Location

Device

IP Address

LAN MAC Address

Firmware Version

Status

Action

Update system software

Source Location

HTTP server

URL

OK

Cancel

Fig. 76: Wireless LAN Controller->Maintenance->Firmware Maintenance

In the **Wireless LAN Controller->Maintenance->Firmware Maintenance** menu, a list of

all **Managed Access Points** is displayed.

For each managed AP you will see an entry with the following parameter set: **Update firmware**, **Location**, **Device**, **IP Address**, **LAN MAC Address**, **Firmware Version** , **Status**.

Click the **Select all** button to select all of the entries for a firmware update. Click the **Deselect all** button to disable all entries and to then select individual entries if required (e.g. if there is a large number of entries and only individual APs are to be given software updates).

Possible values for Status

Status	Meaning
Image already exists.	The software image already exists; no update is required.
Error	An error has occurred.
Running	The operation is currently in progress.
Done	The update is complete.

The **Wireless LAN Controller->Maintenance->Firmware Maintenance** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Firmware Maintenance menu.

Field	Description
Action	<p>Select the action you wish to execute.</p> <p>After each task, a window is displayed showing the other steps that are required.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Update system software</i>: You can also start an update of the system software.• <i>Save configuration with state information</i>: You can save a configuration which contains the AP status information.
Source Location	<p>Select the source for the action.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>HTTP server</i> (default value): The file is stored respectively on a remote server specified in the URL.• <i>Current Software from Teldat Server</i>: The file is on the official Teldat update server. (Only for Action= Update system software)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>TFTP server</i>: The file is stored respectively on a TFTP server specified in the URL.
URL	Only for Source Location = <i>HTTP server</i> or <i>TFTP server</i> Enter the URL of the update server from which the system software file is loaded or on which the configuration file is saved.

Chapter 14 Networking

14.1 Routes


Default Route

With a default route, all data is automatically forwarded to one connection if no other suitable route is available. If you set up access to the Internet, you must configure the route to your Internet Service Provider (ISP) as a default route. If, for example, you configure a corporate network connection, only enter the route to the head office or branch office as a default route if you do not configure Internet access over your device. If, for example, you configure both Internet access and a corporate network connection, enter a default route to the ISP and a network route to the head office. You can enter several default routes on your device, but only one default route can be active at any one time. If you enter several default routes, you should thus note differing values for **Metric**.

14.1.1 IPv4 Routes

A list of all configured routes is displayed in the **Network->Routes->IPv4 Routes** menu.

14.1.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create additional routes.

IPv4 Route Configuration

IPv4 Routing Table

Options

Basic Parameters	
Route Type	Network Route via Interface
Interface	None
Route Class	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Standard <input type="radio"/> Extended
Route Parameters	
Destination IP Address/Netmask	<input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/>
Local IP Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
Metric	<input type="text" value="1"/>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 77: **Network->Routes->IPv4 Routes->New** with **Extended Route** = **Standard**.

If the *Extended* option is selected for the **Route Class**, an extra configuration section opens.

IPv4 Route Configuration IPv4 Routing Table Options

Basic Parameters

Route Type

Network Route via Interface

Interface

None

Route Class

Standard

Extended

Route Parameters

Destination IP Address/Netmask

Local IP Address

0.0.0.0

Metric

1

Extended Route Parameters

Description

Source Interface

Any

Source IP Address/Netmask

0.0.0.0

255.255.255.0

Layer 4 Protocol

Any

Source Port

Any

Port -1

to Port -1

Destination Port

Any

Port -1

to Port -1

DSCP / TOS Value

Ignore

Mode

Dialup and wait

OK


Cancel

Fig. 78: **Network->Routes->IPv4 Routes->New** with **Extended** = *Enabled*

The **Network->Routes->IPv4 Routes->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Basic Settings

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface to be used for this route.
Route Type	<div>Select the type of route.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Default Route via Interface</i>: Route via a specific interface which is to be used if no other suitable route is available.<i>Default Route via Gateway</i>: Route via a specific gateway which is to be used if no other suitable route is available.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Host Route via Interface</i>: Route to an individual host via a specific interface.• <i>Host Route via Gateway</i>: Route to an individual host via a specific gateway.• <i>Network Route via Interface</i> (default value): Route to a network via a specific interface.• <i>Network Route via Gateway</i>: Route to a network via a specific gateway. <p>Only for interfaces that are operated in DHCP client mode:</p> <p>Even if an interface is configured for DHCP client mode, routes can still be configured for data traffic via that interface. The settings received from the DHCP server are then copied, along with those configured here, to the active routing table. This enables, e. g., in the case of dynamically changing gateway addresses, particular routes to be maintained, or routes with different metrics (i. e. of differing priority) to be specified. However, if the DHCP server sends static routes, the settings configured here are not copied to the routing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default Route Template per DHCP</i>: The routing information is taken entirely from the DHCP server. Only advanced parameters can be additionally configured. This route remains unchanged by other routes created for this interface and is copied to the routing table in parallel with them.• <i>Host Route Template per DHCP</i>: The settings received by DHCP are supplemented by routing information about a particular host.• <i>Network Route Template per DHCP</i>: The settings received by DHCP are supplemented by routing information about a particular network.
	<div><div></div><div>Note<p>When the DHCP lease expires or when the device is restarted, the routes that consist from the combination of DHCP settings and those made here are initially deleted once more from the active routing. If the DHCP is reconfigured they are re-generated and re-activated.</p></div></div>

Field	Description
Route Class	<p>Select the type of Route Class.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Standard</i>: Defines a route with the default parameters.• <i>Extended</i>: Select whether the route is to be defined with extended parameters. If the function is active, a route is created with extended routing parameters such as source interface and source IP address, as well as protocol, source and destination port, type of service (TOS) and the status of the device interface.

Fields in the menu **Route Parameters**

Field	Description
Local IP Address	<p>Only for Route Type = <i>Default Route via Interface</i>, <i>Host Route via Interface</i> or <i>Network Route via Interface</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the host to which your device is to forward the IP packets.</p>
Destination IP Address/Netmask	<p>Only for Route Type <i>Host Route via Interface</i> or <i>Network Route via Interface</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the destination host or destination network.</p> <p>When Route Type = <i>Network Route via Interface</i></p> <p>Also enter the relevant netmask in the second field.</p>
Gateway IP Address	<p>Only for Route Type = <i>Default Route via Gateway</i>, <i>Host Route via Gateway</i> or <i>Network Route via Gateway</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the gateway to which your device is to forward the IP packets.</p>
Metric	<p>Select the priority of the route.</p> <p>The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route.</p> <p>Value range from 0 to 15. The default value is 1.</p>

Fields in the menu **Extended Route Parameters**

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for the IP route.
Source Interface	<p>Select the interface over which the data packets are to reach the device.</p> <p>The default value is <i>None</i>.</p>
New Source IP Address/Netmask	Enter the IP address and netmask of the source host or source network.
Layer 4 Protocol	<p>Select a protocol.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>ICMP, IGMP, TCP, UDP, GRE, ESP, AH, OSPF, PIM, L2TP, Any</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Any</i>.</p>
Source Port	<p>Only for Layer 4 Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>Enter the source port.</p> <p>First select the port number range.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Any</i> (default value): The route is valid for all port numbers. • <i>Single</i>: Enables the entry of a port number. • <i>Range</i>: Enables the entry of a range of port numbers. • <i>Privileged</i>: Entry of privileged port numbers: 0 ... 1023. • <i>Server</i>: Entry of server port numbers: 5000 ... 32767. • <i>Clients 1</i>: Entry of client port numbers: 1024 ... 4999. • <i>Clients 2</i>: Entry of client port numbers: 32768 ... 65535. • <i>Not privileged</i>: Entry of unprivileged port numbers: 1024 ... 65535. <p>Enter the appropriate values for the individual port or start port of a range in Port and, for a range, the end port in to Port.</p>
Destination Port	<p>Only for Layer 4 Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>Enter the destination port.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>First select the port number range.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value): The route is valid for all port numbers.• <i>Single</i>: Enables the entry of a port number.• <i>Range</i>: Enables the entry of a range of port numbers.• <i>Privileged</i>: Entry of privileged port numbers: 0 ... 1023.• <i>Server</i>: Entry of server port numbers: 5000 ... 32767.• <i>Clients 1</i>: Entry of client port numbers: 1024 ... 4999.• <i>Clients 2</i>: Entry of client port numbers: 32768 ... 65535.• <i>Not privileged</i>: Entry of unprivileged port numbers: 1024 ... 65535. <p>Enter the appropriate values for the individual port or start port of a range in Port and, for a range, the end port in to Port.</p>
DSCP / TOS Value	<p>Select the Type of Service (TOS).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Ignore</i> (default value): The type of service is ignored.• <i>DSCP Binary Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in binary format).• <i>DSCP Decimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in decimal format).• <i>DSCP Hexadecimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in hexadecimal format).• <i>TOS Binary Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in binary format, e.g. 00111111.• <i>TOS Decimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in decimal format, e.g. 63.• <i>TOS Hexadecimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in hexadecimal format, e.g. 3F. <p>Enter the relevant value for <i>DSCP Binary Value</i>, <i>DSCP Decimal Value</i>, <i>DSCP Hexadecimal Value</i>, <i>TOS Binary</i></p>

Field	Description
	<i>Value, TOS Decimal Value and TOS Hexadecimal Value.</i>
Mode	<p>Select when the interface defined in Route Parameters->Interface is to be used.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Dialup and wait</i> (default value): The route can be used if the interface is "up". If the interface is "dormant", then dial and wait until the interface is "up".• <i>Authoritative</i>: The route can always be used.• <i>Dialup and continue</i>: The route can be used when the interface is "up". If the interface is "dormant", then select and use the alternative route (rerouting) until the interface is "up".• <i>Never dialup</i>: The route can be used when the interface is "up".• <i>Always dialup</i>: The route can be used when the interface is "up". If the interface is "dormant", then dial and wait until the interface is "up". In this case, an alternative interface with a poorer metric is used for routing until the interface is "up".

14.1.2 IPv4 Routing Table

A list of all IPv4 routes is displayed in the **Network->Routes+IPv4 Routing Table** menu. The routes do not all need to be active, but can be activated at any time by relevant data traffic.

IPv4 Route Configuration

IPv4 Routing Table

Options


View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Destination IP Address	Netmask	Gateway	Interface	Metric	Route Type	Extended Route	Protocol	
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	10.0.0.232	BRIDGE_BR0	1	Default Route via Gateway	<input type="checkbox"/>	Local	
10.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	10.0.0.1	BRIDGE_BR0	0	Network Route via Interface	<input type="checkbox"/>	Local	

Page: 1, Items: 1 - 2

Fig. 79: Network->Routes+IPv4 Routing Table

Fields in the menu IPv4 Routing Table

Field	Description
Destination IP Address	Displays the IP address of the destination host or destination network.
Netmask	Displays the netmask of the destination host or destination network.
Gateway	Displays the gateway IP address. Nothing is displayed here when routes are received by DHCP.
Interface	Displays the interface used for this route.
Metric	Displays the route's priority. The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route
Route Type	Displays the route type.
Extended Route	Displays whether a route has been configured with advanced parameters.
Delete	You can delete entries with the  symbol.

14.1.3 Options

Back Route Verify

The term Back Route Verify describes a very simple but powerful function. If a check is activated for an interface, incoming data packets are only accepted over this interface if outgoing response packets are routed over the same interface. You can therefore prevent the acceptance of packets with false IP addresses - even without using filters.

IPv4 Route Configuration

IPv4 Routing Table

Options

Back Route Verify

Mode

☐ Enable for all interfaces

☒ Enable for specific interfaces

☐ Disable for all interfaces

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

No.	Interface	Back Route Verify
1	br0	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Page: 1, Items: 1 - 1

OK

Cancel

Fig. 80: Networking->Routes->Options

The **Networking->Routes->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Back Route Verify menu.

Field	Description
Mode	<p>Select how the interfaces to be activated for Back Route Verify are to be specified.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Enable for all interfaces</i>: Back Route Verify is activated for all interfaces. • <i>Enable for specific interfaces</i> (default value): A list of all interfaces is displayed in which Back Route Verify is only enabled for specific interfaces. • <i>Disable for all interfaces</i>: Back route verify is disabled for all interfaces.
No.	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Enable for specific interfaces</i></p> <p>Displays the serial number of the list entry.</p>
Interface	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Enable for specific interfaces</i></p> <p>Displays the name of the interface.</p>
Back Route Verify	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Enable for specific interfaces</i></p> <p>Select whether <i>Back Route Verify</i> is to be activated for the interface.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>By default, the function is deactivated for all interfaces.</p>

14.2 NAT

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a function on your device for defined conversion of source and destination addresses of IP packets. If NAT is activated, IP connections are still only allowed by default in one direction, outgoing (forward) (= protective function). Exceptions to the rule can be configured (in [NAT Configuration](#) on page 199).

14.2.1 NAT Interfaces

A list of all NAT interfaces is displayed in the **Networking->NAT->NAT Interfaces** menu.

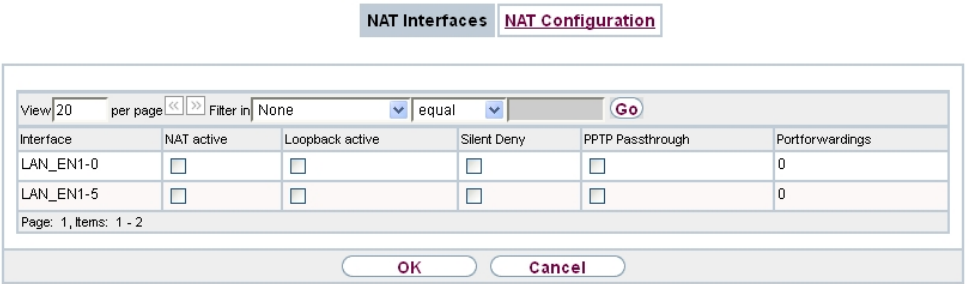


Fig. 81: Networking->NAT->NAT Interfaces

For every NAT interface, the *NAT active*, *Loopback active*, *Silent Deny* and *PPTP Passthrough* can be selected.

In addition, *Portforwardings* displays how many port forwarding rules were configured for this interface.

Options in the menu NAT Interfaces

Field	Description
NAT active	Select whether NAT is to be activated for the interface. The function is disabled by default.
Loopback active	The NAT loopback function also enables network address translation for connectors whereby NAT is not activated. This is often used in order to interpret queries from the LAN as if they were coming from the WAN. You can use this to test the server services. The function is disabled by default.
Silent Deny	Select whether IP packets are to be silently denied by NAT. If this function is deactivated, the sender of the denied IP packet is informed by means of an appropriate ICMP or TCP RST message. The function is disabled by default.
PPTP Passthrough	Select whether the setup and operation of several simultaneous, outgoing PPTP connections from hosts in the network are also to be permitted if NAT is activated. The function is disabled by default.

Field	Description
	If PPTP Passthrough is enabled, the device itself cannot be configured as a tunnel endpoint.
Port	Shows the number of portforwarding rules configured in Networking->NAT->NAT Configuration .

14.2.2 NAT Configuration

In the **Networking->NAT->NAT Configuration** menu you can exclude data from NAT simply and conveniently as well as translate addresses and ports. For outgoing data traffic you can configure various NAT methods, i.e. you can determine how an external host establishes a connection to an internal host.

14.2.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up NAT.

NAT Interfaces

NAT Configuration

Basic Parameters

Description

Interface

Any

Type of traffic

incoming (Destination NAT)

Specify original traffic

Service

User-defined

Protocol

Any

Source IP Address/Netmask

Any

Original Destination IP Address/Netmask

Any

Replacement Values

New Destination IP Address/Netmask

Host

0.0.0.0

OK

Cancel

Fig. 82: Networking->NAT->NAT Configuration ->New

The menu **Networking->NAT->NAT Configuration ->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for the NAT configuration.

Field	Description
Interface	<p>Select the interface for which NAT is to be configured.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value): NAT is configured for all interfaces.• <i><Interface name></i>: Select one of the interfaces from the list.
Type of traffic	<p>Select the type of data traffic for which NAT is to be configured.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>incoming (Destination NAT)</i> (default value): The data traffic that comes from outside.• <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i>: Outgoing data traffic.• <i>excluding (Without NAT)</i>: Data traffic excluded from NAT.
NAT method	<p>Only for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i></p> <p>Select the NAT method for outgoing data traffic. The starting point for choosing the NAT method is a NAT scenario in which an "internal" source host has initiated an IP connection to an "external" destination host over the NAT interface, and in which an internally valid source address and internally valid source port are translated to an externally valid source address and an externally valid source port.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>full-cone</i> (UDP only): Any given external host may send IP packets via the external address and the external port to the initiating source address and the initial source port.• <i>restricted-cone</i> (UDP only): Like full-cone NAT; as external host, however, only the initial "external" destination host is allowed.• <i>port-restricted-cone</i> (UDP only): Like restricted-cone NAT; however, exclusively data from the initial destination port are allowed.• <i>symmetric</i> (default value) any protocol: Outbound, an externally valid source address and an externally valid source port are administratively set. Inbound, only response packets

Field	Description
	within the existing connection are allowed.

In the **NAT Configuration** -> **Specify original traffic** menu, you can configure for which data traffic NAT is to be used.

Fields in the Specify original traffic menu.

Field	Description
Service	<p>Not for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> and NAT method = <i>full-cone, restricted-cone</i> or <i>port-restricted-cone</i>.</p> <p>Select one of the preconfigured services.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>User-defined</i> (default value)• <i><service name></i>
Action	<p>Only for Type of traffic = <i>excluding (Without NAT)</i></p> <p>Select data packets to be excluded from NAT.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Exclude</i> (default value): All data packets will be excluded from NAT if they match the subsequently specified parameters (Protocol, Source IP Address/Netmask, Destination IP Address/Netmask, ect.).• <i>Do not exclude</i>: All data packets will be excluded from NAT if they do not match the subsequently specified parameters (Protocol, Source IP Address/Netmask, Destination IP Address/Netmask, ect.).
Protocol	<p>Only for certain services.</p> <p>Not for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> and NAT method = <i>full-cone, restricted-cone</i> or <i>port-restricted-cone</i>. In this case UDP is automatically defined.</p> <p>Select a protocol. According to the selected Service, different protocols are available.</p> <p>Possible values:</p>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>AH</i>• <i>Chaos</i>• <i>EGP</i>• <i>ESP</i>• <i>GGP</i>• <i>GRE</i>• <i>HMP</i>• <i>ICMP</i>• <i>IGMP</i>• <i>IGP</i>• <i>IGRP</i>• <i>IP</i>• <i>IPinIP</i>• <i>IPv6</i>• <i>IPX in IP</i>• <i>ISO-IP</i>• <i>Kryptolan</i>• <i>L2TP</i>• <i>OSPF</i>• <i>PUP</i>• <i>RDP</i>• <i>RSVP</i>• <i>SKIP</i>• <i>TCP</i>• <i>TLSP</i>• <i>UDP</i>• <i>VRRP</i>• <i>XNS-IDP</i>
Source IP Address/ Netmask	<p>Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming</i> (<i>Destination NAT</i>) or <i>excluding</i> (<i>Without NAT</i>)</p> <p>Enter the source IP address and corresponding netmask of the</p>

Field	Description
	original data packets, as the case arises.
Original Destination IP Address/Netmask	Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming (Destination NAT)</i> Enter the destination IP address and corresponding netmask of the original data packets, as the case arises.
Original Destination Port/Range	Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming (Destination NAT)</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> Enter the destination port or the destination port range of the original data packets. The default setting <i>All</i> means that the port is not specified.
Original Source IP Address/Netmask	Only for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> Enter the source IP address and corresponding netmask of the original data packets, as the case arises.
Original Source Port	Only for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> , NAT method = <i>symmetric</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> Enter the source port of the original data packets. The default setting <i>-All-</i> means that the port remains unspecified.
Source Port/Range	Only for Type of traffic = <i>excluding (Without NAT)</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> Enter the source port or the source port range of the original data packets. The default setting <i>-All-</i> means that the port remains unspecified.
Destination IP Address/Netmask	Only for Type of traffic = <i>excluding (Without NAT)</i> or <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> and NAT method = <i>symmetric</i> Enter the destination IP address and corresponding netmask of the original data packets, as the case arises.
Destination Port/Range	Only for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing (Source NAT)</i> , NAT method = <i>symmetric</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> or Type of traffic = <i>excluding (Without NAT)</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i>

Field	Description
	Enter the destination port or the destination port range of the original data packets. The default setting <i>-All-</i> means that the port is not specified.

In the **NAT Configuration ->Replacement Values** menu you can define, depending on whether you're dealing with inbound or outbound data traffic, new addresses and ports, to which specific addresses and ports from the **NAT Configuration ->Specify original traffic** menu can be translated.

Fields in the Replacement Values menu.

Field	Description
New Destination IP Address/Netmask	Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming</i> (<i>Destination NAT</i>) Enter the destination IP address to which the original source IP address is to be translated, with corresponding netmask, as the case arises.
New Destination Port	Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming</i> (<i>Destination NAT</i>), Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> Leave the destination port as it appears or enter the destination port to which the original destination port is to be translated. Selecting <i>Original</i> leaves the original destination port. If you disable <i>Original</i> , an input field appears in which you can enter a new destination port. <i>Original</i> is active by default.
New Source IP Address/Netmask	Only for Type of traffic = <i>outgoing</i> (<i>Source NAT</i>) and NAT method = <i>symmetric</i> Enter the source IP address to which the original source IP address is to be translated, with corresponding netmask, as the case arises.
New Source Port	Only for Type of traffic = <i>incoming</i> (<i>Destination NAT</i>), NAT method = <i>symmetrical</i> , Service = <i>user-defined</i> and Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP, TCP/UDP</i> Leave the source port as it appears or enter a new source port to which the original source port is to be translated.

Field	Description
	<i>Original</i> leaves the original source port. If you disable <i>Original</i> , an input field appears in which you can enter a new source port. <i>Original</i> is active by default.


14.3 Load Balancing


The increasing amount of data traffic over the Internet means it is necessary to send data over different interfaces to increase the total bandwidth available. IP load balancing enables the distribution of data traffic within a certain group of interfaces to be controlled.

14.3.1 Load Balancing Groups

If interfaces are combined to form groups, the data traffic within a group is divided according to the following principles:

- In contrast to Multilink PPP-based solutions, load balancing also functions with accounts with different providers.
- Session-based load balancing is achieved.
- Related (dependent) sessions are always routed over the same interface.
- A decision on distribution is only made for outgoing sessions.

A list of all configured load balancing groups is displayed in the **Networking->Load Balancing->Load Balancing Groups** menu. You can click the  icon next to any list entry to go to an overview of the basic parameters that affect this group.



Note

Note that the interfaces that are combined into a load balancing group must have routes with the same metric. If necessary, go to the **Networking->Routes** menu and check the entries there.

14.3.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional groups.

Load Balancing Groups

Special Session Handling

Basic Parameters

Group Description

Distribution Policy

Session-Round-Robin

Distribution Mode

☒ Always ☐ Only use active interfaces

Interface Selection for Distribution

Interface	Distribution Ratio	Route Selector	Tracking IP Address
<div>Add</div>			

OK

Cancel

Fig. 83: Networking->Load Balancing->Load Balancing Groups->New

The menu **Networking->Load Balancing->Load Balancing Groups->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Group Description	Enter the desired description of the interface group.
Distribution Policy	<div>Select the way the data traffic is to be distributed to the interfaces configured for the group.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Session-Round-Robin</i> (default value): A newly added session is assigned to one of the group interfaces according to the percentage assignment of sessions to the interfaces. The number of sessions is decisive.<i>Load-dependent Bandwidth</i>: A newly added session is assigned to one of the group interfaces according to the share of the total data rate handled by the interfaces. The current data rate based on the data traffic is decisive in both the send and receive direction.
Consider	<div>Only for Distribution Policy = <i>Load-dependent Bandwidth</i></div> <div>Choose the direction in which the current data rate is to be considered.</div> <div>Options:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Download</i>: Only the data rate in the receive direction is considered.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Upload</i>: Only the data rate in the send direction is considered. <p>By default, the <i>Download</i> and <i>Upload</i> options are disabled.</p>
Distribution Mode	<p>Select the state the interfaces in the group may have if they are to be included in load balancing.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Always</i> (default value): Also includes idle interfaces.• <i>Only use active interfaces</i>: Only interfaces in the up state are included.

In the **Interface** area, you add interfaces that match the current group context and configure these. You can also delete interfaces.

Use **Add** to create more entries.

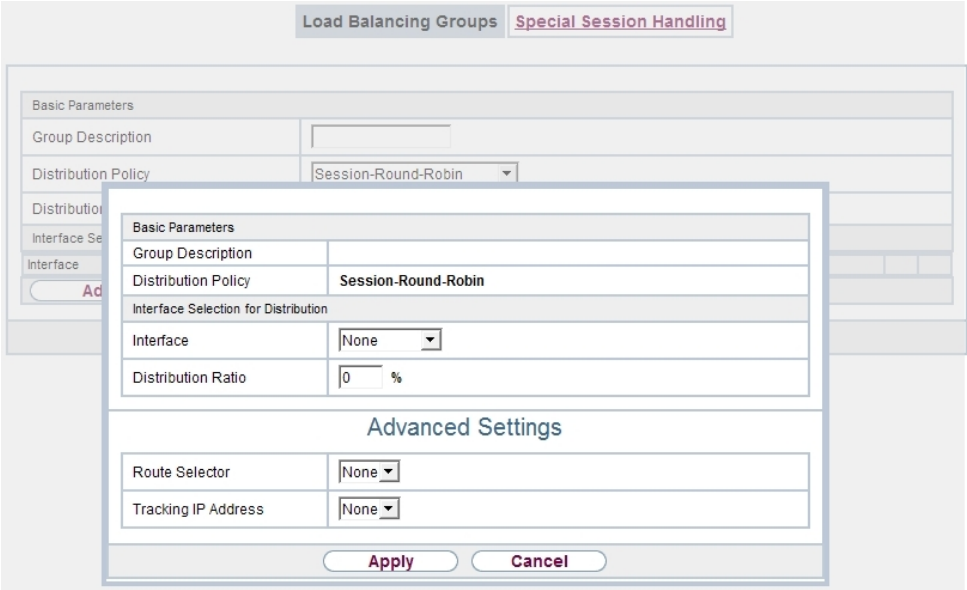


Fig. 84: Networking->Load Balancing->Load Balancing Groups->Add

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Group Description	Shows the description of the interface group.

Field	Description
Distribution Policy	Displays the type of data traffic selected.

Fields in the Interface Selection for Distribution menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interfaces that are to belong to the group from the available interfaces.
Distribution Ratio	<p>Enter the percentage of the data traffic to be assigned to an interface.</p> <p>The meaning differs according to the Distribution Ratio employed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For <i>Session-Round-Robin</i> is based on the number of distributed sessions.• For <i>Load-dependent Bandwidth</i>, the data rate is the decisive factor.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Route Selector	<p>The Route Selector parameter is an additional criterion to help define a load balancing group more precisely. Here, routing information is added to the "interface" entry within a load balancing group. The route selector is required in certain scenarios to enable the IP sessions managed by the router to be balanced uniquely for each load balancing group. The following rules apply when using the parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If an interface is only assigned to one load balancing group, it is not necessary to configure the route selector.• If an interface is assigned to multiple load balancing groups, configuration of the route selector is essential.• The route selector must be configured identically for all interface entries within a load balancing group. <p>Select the Destination IP Address of the desired route.</p>

Field	Description
	You can choose between all routes and all extended routes.
Tracking IP Address	<p>You can use the Tracking IP Address parameter to have a particular route monitored.</p> <p>The load balancing status of the interface and the status of the routes connected to the interface can be influenced using this parameter. This means that routes can be enabled or disabled irrespective of the interface's operation status. The connection is monitored using the gateway's host surveillance function here. Host surveillance entries must be configured in order to use this function. These can be configured in the Local Services->Surveillance->Hosts menu. Here, it is important that only the host surveillance entries with the the action Surveillance are taken into account in the context of load balancing. Links between the load balancing function and the host surveillance function are made through the configuration of the Tracking IP Address in the Load Balancing->Load Balancing Groups->Advanced Settings menu. The interface's load balancing status now varies according to the status of the assigned host surveillance entry.</p> <p>Select the IP address for the route to be monitored.</p> <p>You can choose from the IP addresses you have entered in the Local Services->Surveillance->Hosts->New menu under Monitored IP Address and which are monitored with the aid of the Action to be executed field (Action = <i>Monitor</i>).</p>

14.3.2 Special Session Handling

Special Session Handling enables you to route part of the data traffic to your device via a particular interface. This data traffic is excluded from the **Load Balancing** function.

You can use the **Special Session Handling** function with online banking, for example, to ensure that the HTTPS data traffic is sent to a particular link. Since a check is run in online banking to see whether all the data traffic comes from the same source, data transmission using **Load Balancing** might be terminated at times without **Special Session Handling**.

The **Networking->Load Balancing->Special Session Handling** menu displays a list of entries. If you have not configured any entries, the list is empty.

Every entry contains parameters which describe the properties of a data packet in more or


less detail. The first data packet which the properties configured here match specifies the route for particular subsequent data packets.

Which data packets are subsequently routed via this route is configured in the **Networking->Load Balancing->Special Session Handling->New->Advanced Settings** menu.

If in the **Networking->Load Balancing->Special Session Handling->New** menu, for example, you select the parameter **Service** = *http (SSL)* (and leave the default value for all the other parameters), the first HTTPS packet specifies the **Destination Address** and the **Destination Port** (i. e. Port 443 with HTTPS) for data packets sent subsequently.

If, under**Frozen Parameters** , for the two parameters **Destination Address** and **Destination Port** you leave the default setting *enabled*, the HTTPS packets with the same source IP address as the first HTTPS packet are routed via port 443 to the same **Destination Address** via the same interface as the first HTTPS packet.

14.3.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button create new entries.

Load Balancing Groups

Special Session Handling

Basic Parameters

Admin Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Description	<input type="text"/>
Service	User-defined
Protocol	dont-verify
Destination IP Address/Netmask	Any
Destination Port/Range	-All- -1 to -1
Source Interface	None
Source IP Address/Netmask	Any
Source Port/Range	-All- -1 to -1
Special Handling Timer	900 Seconds

Advanced Settings

Frozen Parameters	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Source IP Address
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Destination Address
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Destination Port

OK

Cancel

Fig. 85: **Networking->Load Balancing->Special Session Handling->New**

The **Networking->Load Balancing->Special Session Handling->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Admin Status	<p>Select whether the Special Session Handling should be activated.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Description	<p>Enter a name for the entry.</p>
Service	<p>Select one of the preconfigured services, if required. The extensive range of services configured ex works includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>activity</i>• <i>apple-qt</i>• <i>auth</i>• <i>charge</i>• <i>clients_1</i>• <i>daytime</i>• <i>dhcp</i>• <i>discard</i> <p>The default value is <i>User defined</i>.</p>
Protocol	<p>Select a protocol, if required. The <i>Any</i> option (default value) matches any protocol.</p>
Destination IP Address/Netmask	<p>Enter, if required, the destination IP address and netmask of the data packets.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>Host</i>: Enter the IP address of the host.• <i>Network</i>: Enter the network address and the related netmask.

Field	Description
Destination Port/Range	<p>Enter, if required, a destination port number or a range of destination port numbers.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>-All-</i> (default value): The destination port is not specified.• <i>Specify port</i>: Enter a destination port.• <i>Specify port range</i>: Enter a destination port range.
Source Interface	<p>If required, select your device's source interface.</p>
Source IP Address/Netmask	<p>Enter, if required, the source IP address and netmask of the data packets.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>Host</i>: Enter the IP address of the host.• <i>Network</i>: Enter the network address and the related netmask.
Source Port/Range	<p>Enter, if required, a source port number or a range of source port numbers.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>-All-</i> (default value): The destination port is not specified.• <i>Specify port</i>: Enter a destination port.• <i>Specify port range</i>: Enter a destination port range.
Special Handling Timer	<p>Enter the time period during which the specified data packets are to be routed via the route that has been defined.</p> <p>The default value is <i>900</i> seconds.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Frozen Parameters	<p>Specify whether, when data packets are subsequently sent, the two parameters Destination Address and Destination Port must have the same value as the first data packet, i. e. whether</p>

Field	Description
	<p>the subsequent data packets must be routed via the same Destination Port to the same Destination Address.</p> <p>The two parameters Destination Address and Destination Port are enabled by default.</p> <p>If you leave the default setting <i>Enabled</i> for one or both parameters, the value of the parameter concerned must be the same as in the first data packet with data packets sent subsequently.</p> <p>You can disable one or both parameters if you wish.</p> <p>The Source IP Address parameter must always have the same value in data packets sent subsequently as it did in the first data packet. So it cannot be disabled.</p>

14.4 QoS

QoS (Quality of Service) makes it possible to distribute the available bandwidths effectively and intelligently. Certain applications can be given preference and bandwidth reserved for them. This is an advantage, especially for time-critical applications such as VoIP.

The QoS configuration consists of three parts:

- Creating IP filters
- Classifying data
- Prioritising data

14.4.1 QoS Filter

In the **Networking->QoS->QoS Filter** menu IP filters are configured.

The list also displays any configured entries from **Networking->Access Rules->Rule Chains**.

14.4.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to define more IP filters.

QoS Filter

QoS Classification

QoS Interfaces/Policies

Basic Parameters

Description	<input type="text"/>
Service	User-defined <input type="button" value="v"/>
Protocol	Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
Destination IP Address/Netmask	Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
Source IP Address/Netmask	Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
DSCP/TOS Filter (Layer 3)	Ignore <input type="button" value="v"/>
COS Filter (802.1p/Layer 2)	Ignore <input type="button" value="v"/>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 86: **Networking->QoS->QoS Filter->New**

The **Networking->QoS->QoS Filter->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the filter.
Service	<div>Select one of the preconfigured services. The extensive range of services configured ex works includes the following:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>activity</i>• <i>apple-qt</i>• <i>auth</i>• <i>charge</i>• <i>clients_1</i>• <i>daytime</i>• <i>dhcp</i>• <i>discard</i></div> <div>The default value is <i>User defined</i>.</div>
Protocol	<div>Select a protocol.</div> <div>The <i>Any</i> option (default value) matches any protocol.</div>
Type	Only for Protocol = <i>ICMP</i>

Field	Description
	<p>Select the type.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>Any, Echo reply, Destination unreachable, Source quench, Redirect, Echo, Time exceeded, Timestamp, Timestamp reply.</i></p> <p>See RFC 792.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Any</i>.</p>
Connection State	<p>With Protocol = <i>TCP</i>, you can define a filter that takes the status of the TCP connections into account.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Established</i>: All TCP packets that would not open any new TCP connection on routing over the gateway match the filter. • <i>Any</i> (default value): All TCP packets match the filter.
Destination IP Address/Netmask	Enter the destination IP address of the data packets and the corresponding netmask.
Destination Port/Range	<p>Only for Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>Enter a destination port number or a range of destination port numbers.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>-All-</i> (default value): The destination port is not specified. • <i>Specify port</i>: Enter a destination port. • <i>Specify port range</i>: Enter a destination port range.
Source IP Address/Netmask	Enter the source IP address of the data packets and the corresponding netmask.
Source Port/Range	<p>Only for Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>Enter a source port number or a range of source port numbers.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>-All-</i> (default value): The destination port is not specified. • <i>Specify port</i>: Enter a destination port. • <i>Specify port range</i>: Enter a destination port range.

Field	Description
DSCP/TOS Filter (Layer 3)	<p>Select the Type of Service (TOS).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Ignore</i> (default value): The type of service is ignored. • <i>DSCP Binary Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in binary format, 6 bit). • <i>DSCP Decimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in decimal format). • <i>DSCP Hexadecimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in hexadecimal format). • <i>TOS Binary Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in binary format, e.g. 00111111. • <i>TOS Decimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in decimal format, e.g. 63. • <i>TOS Hexadecimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in hexadecimal format, e.g. 3F.
COS Filter (802.1p/Layer 2)	<p>Enter the service class of the IP packets (Class of Service, CoS).</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 0 and 7. Value range 0 to 7.</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p>

14.4.2 QoS Classification

The data traffic is classified in the **Networking->QoS->QoS Classification** menu, i.e. the data traffic is associated using class IDs of various classes. To do this, create class plans for classifying IP packets based on pre-defined IP filters. Each class plan is associated to at least one interface via its first filter.

14.4.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional data classes.

QoS Filter

QoS Classification

QoS Interfaces/Policies

Basic Parameters

Class map

New

Description

Filter

Select one

Direction

Outgoing

High Priority Class

☐

Class ID

1

Set DSCP/TOS value (Layer 3)

Preserve

Set COS value (802.1p/Layer 2)

Preserve

Interfaces

Interface

Add

OK


Cancel

Fig. 87: **Networking->QoS->QoS Classification->New**

The **Networking->QoS->QoS Classification->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Class map	<p>Choose the class plan you want to create or edit.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>New</i> (default value): You can create a new class plan with this setting.• <i><Name of class plan></i>: Shows a class plan that has already been created, which you can select and edit. You can add new filters.
Description	<p>Only for Class map = <i>New</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the class plan.</p>
Filter	<p>Select an IP filter.</p> <p>If the class plan is new, select the filter to be set at the first point of the class plan.</p> <p>If the class plan already exists, select the filter to be attached to the class plan.</p>

Field	Description
	To select a filter, at least one filter must be configured in the Networking->QoS->QoS Filter menu.
Direction	<p>Select the direction of the data packets to be classified.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Incoming</i>: Incoming data packets are assigned to the class (Class ID) that is then to be defined.• <i>Outgoing</i> (default value): Outgoing data packets are assigned to the class (Class ID) that is then to be defined.• <i>Both</i>: Incoming and outgoing data packets are assigned to the class (Class ID) that is then to be defined.
High Priority Class	<p>Enable or disable the high priority class. If the high priority class is active, the data packets are associated with the class with the highest priority and priority 0 is set automatically.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Class ID	<p>Only for High Priority Class not active.</p> <p>Choose a number which assigns the data packets to a class.</p> <div>Note<p>The class ID is a label to assign data packets to specific classes. (The class ID defines the priority.)</p></div> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between <i>1</i> and <i>254</i>.</p>
Set DSCP/TOS value (Layer 3)	<p>Here you can set or change the DSCP/TOS value of the IP data packets, based on the class (Class ID) that has been defined.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Preserve</i> (default value): The DSCP/TOS value of the IP data packets remains unchanged.• <i>DSCP Binary Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in binary format).

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>DSCP Decimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in decimal format).• <i>DSCP Hexadecimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in hexadecimal format).• <i>TOS Binary Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in binary format, e.g. 00111111.• <i>TOS Decimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in decimal format, e.g. 63.• <i>TOS Hexadecimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in hexadecimal format, e.g. 3F.
Set COS value (802.1p/Layer 2)	<p>Here you can set/change the service class (Layer 2 priority) in the VLAN Ethernet header of the IP packets, based on the class (Class ID) that has been defined.</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 0 and 7.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Preserve</i>.</p>
Interfaces	<p>Only for Class map = New</p> <p>When creating a new class plan, select the interfaces to which you want to link the class plan. A class plan can be assigned to multiple interfaces.</p>

14.4.3 QoS Interfaces/Policies

In the **Networking->QoS->QoS Interfaces/Policies** menu, you set prioritisation of data.



Note

Data can only be prioritized in the outgoing direction.

Packets in the high-priority class always take priority over data with class IDs 1 - 254.

It is possible to assign or guarantee each queue and thus each data class a certain part of the total bandwidth of the interface. In addition, you can optimise the transmission of voice data (real time data).

Depending on the respective interface, a queue is created automatically for each class, but only for data traffic classified as outgoing and for data traffic classified in both directions. A priority is assigned to these automatic queues. The value of the priority is equal to the value of the class ID. You can change the default priority of a queue. If you add new queues, you can also use classes in other class plans via the class ID.

14.4.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional prioritisations.

QoS Filter

QoS Classification

QoS Interfaces/Policies

Basic Parameters

Interface

en1-0

Prioritisation Algorithm

Priority Queueing

Traffic shaping

☐ Enabled

Queues/Policies

By creating a QoS policy a default entry with the lowest priority will be automatically generated

Description	Type	Class ID	Priority	Bandwidth for Traffic Shaping
<div>Add</div>				

OK

Cancel

Fig. 88: Networking->QoS->QoS Interfaces/Policies->New

The **Networking->QoS->QoS Interfaces/Policies->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface for which QoS is to be configured.
Prioritisation Algorithm	<div>Select the algorithm according to which the queues are to be processed. This activates and deactivates QoS on the selected interface.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Priority Queueing</i>: QoS is activated on the interface. The available bandwidth is distributed strictly according to the queue priority.<i>Weighted Round Robin</i>: QoS is activated on the interface. The available bandwidth is distributed according to the weighting (weight) of the queue. Exception: High-priority pack-

Field	Description
	<p>ets are always handled with priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Weighted Fair Queueing</i>: QoS is activated on the interface. The available bandwidth is distributed as “fairly” as possible among the (automatically detected) traffic flows in a queue. Exception: High-priority packets are always handled with priority. • <i>Disabled</i> (default value): QoS is deactivated on the interface. The existing configuration is not deleted, but can be activated again if required.
Traffic shaping	<p>Activate or deactivate data rate limiting in the send direction.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Maximum Upload Speed	<p>Only for Traffic shaping = enabled.</p> <p>Enter a maximum data rate for the queue in the send direction in kbits.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>1000000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>, i.e. no limits are set, the queue can occupy the maximum bandwidth.</p>
Protocol Header Size below Layer 3	<p>Only for Traffic shaping = enabled.</p> <p>Choose the interface type to include the size of the respective overheads of a datagram when calculating the bandwidth.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>User defined</i> Value in byte. <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>100</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Undefined (Protocol Header Offset=0)</i> (default value) <p>Can only be selected for Ethernet interfaces</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Ethernet</i> • <i>Ethernet and VLAN</i> • <i>PPP over Ethernet</i>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>PPP over Ethernet and VLAN</i> <p>Can only be selected for IPSec interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>IPSec over Ethernet</i> • <i>IPSec over Ethernet and VLAN</i> • <i>IPSec via PPP over Ethernet</i> • <i>IPSec via PPPoE and VLAN</i>
Encryption Method	<p>Only if an IPSec Peers is selected as Interface, Traffic shaping is <i>Active</i> and Protocol Header Size below Layer 3 is not <i>Undefiniert (Protocol Header Offset=0)</i>.</p> <p>Select the encryption method used for the IPSec connection. The encryption algorithm determines the length of the block cipher which is taken into account during bandwidth calculation.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>DES, 3DES, Blowfish, Cast - (cipher block size = 64 Bit)</i> • <i>AES128, AES192, AES256, Twofish - (cipher block size = 128 Bit)</i>
Real Time Jitter Control	<p>Only for Traffic shaping = enabled</p> <p>Real Time Jitter Control optimises latency when forwarding real time datagrams. The function ensures that large data packets are fragmented according to the available upload bandwidth.</p> <p>Real Time Jitter Control is useful for small upload bandwidths (< 800 kbps).</p> <p>Activate or deactivate Real Time Jitter Control.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Control Mode	<p>Only for Real Time Jitter Control = enabled.</p> <p>Select the mode for optimising voice transmission.</p> <p>Possible values:</p>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All RTP Streams</i>: All RTP streams are optimised. The function activates the RTP stream detection mechanism for the automatic detection of RTP streams. In this mode, the Real Time Jitter Control is activated as soon as an RTP stream has been detected.• <i>Inactive</i>: Voice data transmission is not optimised.• <i>Controlled RTP Streams only</i>: This mode is used if either the VoIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) or the VoIP Media Gateway (MGW) is active. Real Time Jitter Control is activated by the control instances ALG or MGW.• <i>Always</i>: Real Time Jitter Control is always active, even if no real time data is routed.
Queues/Policies	<p>Configure the desired QoS queues.</p> <p>For each class created from the class plan, which is associated with the selected interface, a queue is generated automatically and displayed here (only for data traffic classified as outgoing and for data traffic classified as moving in both directions).</p> <p>Add new entries with Add. The Edit Queue/Policy menu opens.</p> <p>By creating a QoS policy a DEFAULT entry with the lowest priority 255 is automatically created.</p>

The menu **Edit Queue/Policy** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Edit Queue/Policy menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the queue/policy.
Outbound Interface	Shows the interface for which the QoS queues are being configured.
Prioritisation queue	<p>Select the queue priority type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Class Based</i> (default value): Queue for data classified as “normal”• <i>High Priority</i>: Queue for data classified as “high priority”

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Default:</i> Queue for data that has not been classified or data of a class for which no queue has been configured.
Class ID	<p>Only for Prioritisation queue = <i>Class Based</i></p> <p>Select the QoS packet class to which this queue is to apply.</p> <p>To do this, at least one class ID must be given in the Network-ing->QoS->QoS Classification menu.</p>
Priority	<p>Only for Prioritisation queue = <i>Class Based</i></p> <p>Choose the priority of the queue. Possible values are <i>1 (high priority) to 254 (low priority)</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>
Weight	<p>Only for Prioritisation Algorithm = <i>Weighted Round Robin</i> or <i>Weighted Fair Queueing</i></p> <p>Choose the priority of the queue. Possible values are <i>1 to 254</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>
RTT Mode (Realtime Traffic Mode)	<p>Active or deactivate the real time transmission of the data.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>RTT mode should be activated for QoS classes in which real time data has priority. This mode improves latency when forwarding real time datagrams.</p> <p>It is possible to configure multiple queues when RTT mode is enabled. Queues with enabled RTT mode must always have a higher priority than queues with disabled RTT mode.</p>
Traffic Shaping	<p>Activate or deactivate data rate (=Traffic Shaping) limiting in the send direction.</p> <p>The data rate limit applies to the selected queue. (This is not the limit that can be defined on the interface.)</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is disabled by default.
Maximum Upload Speed	<p>Only for Traffic Shaping = enabled.</p> <p>Enter a maximum data rate for the queue in kbits.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>1000000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>
Overbooking allowed	<p>Only for Traffic Shaping = enabled.</p> <p>Enable or disable the function. The function controls the bandwidth limit.</p> <p>If Overbooking allowed is activated, the bandwidth limit set for this queue can be exceeded, as long as free bandwidth exists on the interface.</p> <p>If Overbooking allowed is deactivated, the queue can never occupy bandwidth beyond the bandwidth limit that has been set.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Burst size	<p>Only for Traffic Shaping = enabled.</p> <p>Enter the maximum number of bytes that may still be transmitted temporarily when the data rate permitted for this queue has been reached.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>64000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Dropping Algorithm	<p>Choose the procedure for rejecting packets in the QoS queue, if the maximum size of the queue is exceeded.</p> <p>Possible values:</p>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Tail Drop</i> (default value): The newest packet received is dropped.• <i>Head Drop</i>: The oldest packet in the queue is dropped.• <i>Random Drop</i>: A randomly selected packet is dropped from the queue.
Congestion Avoidance (RED)	<p>Enable or disable preventative deletion of data packets.</p> <p>Packets which have a data size of between Min. queue size and Max. queue size are preventively dropped to prevent queue overflow (RED=Random Early Detection). This procedure ensures a smaller long-term queue size for TCP-based data traffic, so that traffic bursts can also usually be transmitted without large packet losses.</p> <p>The function is activated with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Min. queue size	<p>Enter the lower threshold value for the process prevention of data congestion (RED) in bytes.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>262143</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>
Max. queue size	<p>Enter the upper threshold value for the process prevention of data congestion (RED) in bytes.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>262143</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>16384</i>.</p>

14.5 Access Rules

Accesses to data and functions are restricted with access lists (which user gets to use which services and files).

You define filters for IP packets in order to allow or block access from or to the various hosts in connected networks. This enables you to prevent undesired connections being set up via the gateway. Access lists define the type of IP traffic the gateway is to accept or deny. The access decision is based on information contained in the IP packets, e.g.:

- source and/or destination IP address
- packet protocol
- source and/or destination port (port ranges are supported)

Access lists are an effective means if, for example, sites with LANs interconnected over a Teldat gateway wish to deny all incoming FTP requests or only allow Telnet sessions between certain hosts.

Access filters in the gateway are based on the combination of filters and actions for filter rules (= rules) and the linking of these rules to form rule chains. They act on the incoming data packets to allow or deny access to the gateway for certain data.

A filter describes a certain part of the IP data traffic based on the source and/or destination IP address, netmask, protocol and source and/or destination port.

You use the rules that you set up in the access lists to tell the gateway what to do with the filtered data packets, i.e. whether it should allow or deny them. You can also define several rules, which you arrange in the form of a chain to obtain a certain sequence.

There are various approaches for the definition of rules and rule chains:

Allow all packets that are not explicitly denied, i.e.:

- Deny all packets that match Filter 1.
- Deny all packets that match Filter 2.
- ...
- Allow the rest.

or

Allow all packets that are explicitly allowed, i.e.:

- Allow all packets that match Filter 1.
- Allow all packets that match Filter 2.
- ...
- Deny the rest.

or

Combination of the two possibilities described above.

A number of separate rule chains can be created. The same filter can also be used in different rule chains.

You can also assign a rule chain individually to each interface.



Caution

Make sure you don't lock yourself out when configuring filters:

If possible, access your gateway for filter configuration over the serial console interface or ISDN Login.

14.5.1 Access Filter

This menu is for configuration of access filter Each filter describes a certain part of the IP traffic and defines, for example, the IP addresses, the protocol, the source port or the destination port.

A list of all access filters is displayed in the **Networking->Access Rules->Access Filter** menu.

Access Filter

Rule Chains

Interface Assignment


View 20 per page << >> Filter in None equal Go

Index	Description	Source	Destination	TOS Decimal Value
Page: 1				

New

Fig. 89: **Networking->Access Rules->Access Filter**

14.5.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. To configure access fitters, select the **New** button.

Access Filter

Rule Chains

Interface Assignment

Basic Parameters

Description

Service

User-defined

Protocol

Any

Destination IP Address/Netmask

Any

Source IP Address/Netmask

Any

DSCP/TOS Filter (Layer 3)

Ignore

COS Filter (802.1p/Layer 2)

Ignore

OK

Cancel

Fig. 90: **Networking->Access Rules->Access Filter->New**

The **Networking->Access Rules->Access Filter->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for the filter.
Service	<div>Select one of the preconfigured services. The extensive range of services configured ex works includes the following:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">activityapple-qtauthchargeclients_1daytimedhcpdiscard</div> <div>The default value is <i>User defined</i>.</div>
Protocol	<div>Select a protocol.</div> <div>The <i>Any</i> option (default value) matches any protocol.</div>
Type	Only if Protocol = <i>ICMP</i>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i>• <i>Echo reply</i>• <i>Destination unreachable</i>• <i>Source quench</i>• <i>Redirect</i>• <i>Echo</i>• <i>Time exceeded</i>• <i>Timestamp</i>• <i>Timestamp reply</i> <p>The default value is <i>Any</i>.</p> <p>See RFC 792.</p>
Connection State	<p>Only if Protocol = <i>TCP</i></p> <p>You can define a filter that takes the status of the TCP connections into account.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value): All TCP packets match the filter.• <i>Established</i>: All TCP packets that would not open any new TCP connection on routing over the gateway match the filter.
Destination IP Address/Netmask	<p>Enter the destination IP address and netmask of the data packets.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>Host</i>: Enter the IP address of the host.• <i>Network</i>: Enter the network address and the related netmask.
Destination Port/Range	<p>Only if Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP</i></p> <p>Enter a destination port number or a range of destination port numbers that matches the filter.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>-All-</i> (default value): The filter is valid for all port numbers • <i>Specify port</i>: Enables the entry of a port number. • <i>Specify port range</i>: Enables the entry of a range of port numbers.
Source IP Address/Netmask	Enter the source IP address and netmask of the data packets.
Source Port/Range	<p>Only if Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP</i></p> <p>Enter a source port number or the range of source port numbers.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>-All-</i> (default value): The filter is valid for all port numbers • <i>Specify port</i>: Enables the entry of a port number. • <i>Specify port range</i>: Enables the entry of a range of port numbers.
DSCP/TOS Filter (Layer 3)	<p>Select the Type of Service (TOS).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Ignore</i> (default value): The type of service is ignored. • <i>DSCP Binary Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in binary format, 6 bit). • <i>DSCP Decimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in decimal format). • <i>DSCP Hexadecimal Value</i>: Differentiated Services Code Point according to RFC 3260 is used to signal the priority of IP packets (indicated in hexadecimal format). • <i>TOS Binary Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in binary format, e.g. 00111111. • <i>TOS Decimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in decimal format, e.g. 63. • <i>TOS Hexadecimal Value</i>: The TOS value is specified in hexadecimal format, e.g. 3F.

Field	Description
COS Filter (802.1p/Layer 2)	<p>Enter the service class of the IP packets (Class of Service, CoS).</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 0 and 7.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Ignore</i>.</p>

14.5.2 Rule Chains

Rules for IP filters are configured in the **Rule Chains** menu. These can be created separately or incorporated in rule chains.

In the **Networking->Access Rules+Rule Chains** menu, all created filter rules are listed.

Access FilterRule ChainsInterface Assignment


View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Description	Filter	Action
Page: 1		

New

Fig. 91: Networking->Access Rules+Rule Chains

14.5.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. To configure access lists, select the **New** button.

Access FilterRule ChainsInterface Assignment

Basic Parameters

Rule Chain	New
Description	
Access Filter	Select one
Action	Allow if filter matches


OKCancel

Fig. 92: Networking->Access Rules+Rule Chains->New

The **Networking->Access Rules+Rule Chains->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Rule Chain	<p>Select whether to create a new rule chain or to edit an existing one.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>New</i> (default value): You can create a new rule chain with this setting.• <i><Name of class plan></i>: Select an already existing rule chain, and thus add another rule to it.
Description	<p>Enter the name of the rule chain.</p>
Access Filter	<p>Select an IP filter.</p> <p>If the rule chain is new, select the filter to be set at the first point of the rule chain.</p> <p>If the rule chain already exists, select the filter to be attached to the rule chain.</p>
Action	<p>Define the action to be taken for a filtered data packet.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Allow</i> (default value): Allow packet if it matches the filter.• <i>Allow if filter does not match</i>: Allow packet if it does not match the filter.• <i>Deny if filter matches</i>: Deny packet if it matches the filter.• <i>Deny if filter does not match</i>: Deny packet if it does not match the filter.• <i>Ignore</i>: Use next rule.

To set the rules of a rule chain in a different order select the  button in the list menu for the entry to be shifted. A dialog box opens, in which you can decide under **Move** whether the entry *below* (default value) or *above* another rule of this rule chain is to be shifted.

14.5.3 Interface Assignment

In this menu, the configured rule chains are assigned to the individual interfaces and the gateway's behavior is defined for denying IP packets.

A list of all configured interface assignments is displayed in the **Networking->Access Rules->Interface Assignment** menu.

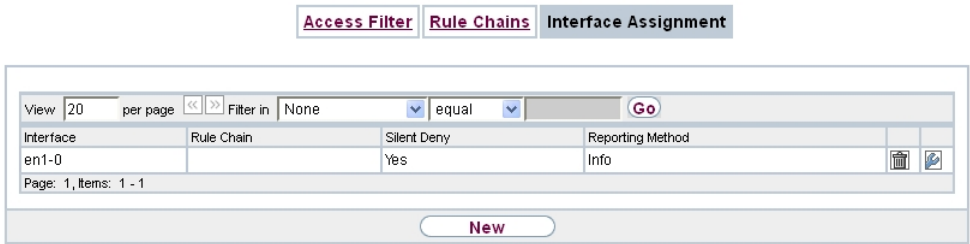



Fig. 93: **Networking->Access Rules->Interface Assignment**

14.5.3.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to configure additional assignments.

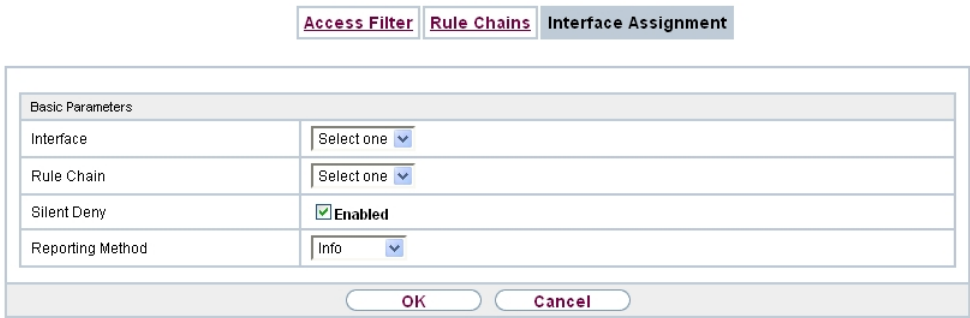


Fig. 94: **Networking->Access Rules->Interface Assignment->New**

The **Networking->Access Rules->Interface Assignment->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface for which a configured rule chain is to be assigned.
Rule Chain	Select a rule chain.
Silent Deny	Define whether the sender is to be informed if an IP packet is denied. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Enabled</i> (default value): The sender is not informed.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Disabled</i>: The sender receives an ICMP message.
Reporting Method	<p>Define whether a syslog message is to be generated if a packet is denied.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>No report</i>: No syslog message.• <i>Info</i> (default value): A syslog message is generated with the protocol number, source IP address and source port number.• <i>Dump</i>: A syslog message is generated with the contents of the first 64 bytes of the denied packet.

14.6 Drop In

"Drop-in mode" allows you to split a network into smaller segments without having to divide the IP network into subnets. Several interfaces can be combined in a drop-in group and assigned to a network to do this. All of the interfaces are then configured with the same IP address.

Within a segment, network components which are connected to a connection can then be grouped and, for example, be protected by firewall. Data traffic from network components between individual segments which are assigned to different ports are then controlled according to the configured firewall rules.

14.6.1 Drop In Groups

The **Networking->Drop In->Drop In Groups** menu displays a list of all the **Drop In Groups**. Each **Drop In** group represents a network.

14.6.1.1 New

Select the **New** button to set up other **Drop In Groups**.

Drop In Groups

Basic Parameters

Group Description	<input type="text"/>
Mode	Transparent ▾
Network Configuration	Static ▾
Network Address	<input type="text"/>
Netmask	<input type="text"/>
Local IP Address	<input type="text"/>
ARP Lifetime	3600 Seconds
DNS assignment via DHCP	Unchanged ▾
Exclude from NAT (DMZ)	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Interface Selection	<div>Interface <input type="text"/></div> <div>Add</div>

OKCancel

Fig. 95: Networking->Drop In->Drop In Groups->New

The **Networking->Drop In->Drop In Groups->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Group Description	Enter a unique name for the Drop In group.
Mode	<div>Select which mode is to be used to send the MAC addresses of network components.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Transparent</i> (default value): ARP packets and IP packets belonging to the drop-in network are routed transparently (unchanged).<i>Proxy</i>: ARP packets and IP packets related to the drop-in network are forwarded with the MAC address of the corresponding interface.
Network Configuration	<div>Select how an IP address is assigned to the routers of the Drop In group.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Static</i> (default value)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>DHCP</i>
Network Address	<p>Only for Network Configuration = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the network address of the Drop In network.</p>
Netmask	<p>Only for Network Configuration = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the corresponding netmask.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for Network Configuration = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the local IP address. This IP address must be identical for all the Ethernet ports in a network.</p>
DHCP Client on Interface	<p>Only for Network Configuration = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>Here you can select an Ethernet interface on your router which is to act as the DHCP client.</p> <p>You need this setting, for example, if your provider's router is being used as the DHCP server.</p> <p>You can choose from the interfaces available to your device; however the interface must be a member of the drop-in group.</p>
ARP Lifetime	<p>Determines the time period for which the ARP entries will be held in the cache.</p> <p>The default value is <i>3600</i> seconds.</p>
DNS assignment via DHCP	<p>The gateway can modify DHCP packets which pass through the drop-in group and identify itself as an available DNS server.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Unchanged</i> (default value) • <i>Own IP Address</i>
Exclude from NAT (DMZ)	<p>Here you can take data traffic from NAT.</p> <p>Use this function to, for example, ensure that certain web servers in a DMZ can be accessed.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is disabled by default.
Interface Selection	Select all the ports which are to be included in the Drop In group (in the network). Add new entries with Add .

Chapter 15 Routing Protocols

15.1 RIP

The entries in the routing table can be defined statically or the routing table can be updated constantly by dynamic exchange of routing information between several devices. This exchange is controlled by a Routing Protocol, e.g. RIP (Routing Information Protocol). By default, about every 30 seconds (this value can be changed in **Update Timer**), a device sends messages to remote networks using information from its own current routing table. The complete routing table is always exchanged in this process. If triggered RIP is used, information is only exchanged if the routing information has changed. In this case, only the changed information is sent.

Observing the information sent by other devices enables new routes and shorter paths for existing routes to be saved in the routing table. As routes between networks can become unreachable, RIP removes routes that are older than 5 minutes (i.e. routes not verified in the last 300 seconds - **Garbage Collection Timer** + **Route Timeout**). Routes learnt with triggered RIP are not deleted.

Your device supports both version 1 and version 2 of RIP, either individually or together.

15.1.1 RIP Interfaces

A list of all RIP interfaces is displayed in the **Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Interfaces** menu.

RIP InterfacesRIP FilterRIP Options

View	20	per page	<<>>	Filter in	None	>	equal	>	Go
No.	Interface	Send Version	Receive Version	Route Announcement					
1	en1-0	None	None	Up only					
2	en1-4	None	None	Up only					
Page: 1, Items: 1 - 2									

Fig. 96: Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Interfaces

15.1.1.1 Edit

For every RIP interface, go to the menu to select options *Send Version*, *Receive Version* and *Route Announce*.

RIP Interfaces

RIP Filter

RIP Options

RIP Parameters for: en1-0

Send Version	None
Receive Version	None
Route Announce	Up only

OK

Cancel

Fig. 97: Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Interfaces->

The menu **Networking->RIP->RIP Interfaces->** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the RIP Parameters for menu.

Field	Description
Send Version	<div>Decide whether routes are to be propagated via RIP and if so, select the RIP version for sending RIP packets over the interface in send direction.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): RIP is not enabled.• <i>RIP V1</i>: Enables sending and receiving of version 1 RIP packets.• <i>RIP V2</i>: Enables sending and receiving of version 2 RIP packets.• <i>RIP V1/V2</i>:Enables sending and receiving RIP packets of both version 1 and 2.• <i>RIP V2 Multicast</i>: For sending RIP V2 messages over multicast address 224.0.0.9.• <i>RIP V1 Triggered</i>: RIP V1 messages are sent, received and processed as per RFC 2091 (triggered RIP).• <i>RIP V2 Triggered</i>: RIP V2 messages are sent, received and processed as per RFC 2091 (triggered RIP).
Receive Version	<div>Decide whether routes are to be imported via RIP and if so, select the RIP version for receiving RIP packets over the interface in receive direction.</div> <div>Possible values:</div>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): RIP is not enabled.• <i>RIP V1</i>: Enables sending and receiving of version 1 RIP packets.• <i>RIP V2</i>: Enables sending and receiving of version 2 RIP packets.• <i>RIP V1/V2</i>:Enables sending and receiving RIP packets of both version 1 and 2.• <i>RIP V1 Triggered</i>: RIP V1 messages are sent, received and processed as per RFC 2091 (triggered RIP).• <i>RIP V2 Triggered</i>: RIP V2 messages are sent, received and processed as per RFC 2091 (triggered RIP).
Route Announce	<p>Select this option if you want to set the time at which any activated routing protocols (e.g. RIP) are to propagate the IP routes defined for this interface.</p> <p>Note: This setting does not affect the interface-specific RIP configuration mentioned above.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Up or Dormant</i> (not for LAN interfaces, interfaces in Bridge mode and interfaces for leased lines): Routes are propagated if the interface status is up or ready.• <i>Up only</i> (default value): Routes are only propagated if the interface status is up.• <i>Always</i>: Routes are always propagated independently of operational status.

15.1.2 RIP Filter

In this menu, you can specify exactly which routes are to be exported or imported.

You can use the following strategies for this:

- You explicitly deactivate the import or export of certain routes. The import or export of all other routes that are not listed is still allowed.
- You explicitly activate the import or export of certain routes. In this case, you must also explicitly deactivate the import or export of all other routes. This is achieved using a filter for **IP Address / Netmask** = no entry (this corresponds to IP address 0.0.0.0 with netmask 0.0.0.0). To make sure this filter is used last, it must be placed at the lowest posi-

tion.


You configure a filter for a default route with the following values:


- **IP Address / Netmask** = no entry for IP address (this corresponds to IP address 0.0.0.0), for netmask = 255.255.255.255

A list of all RIP filters is displayed in the **Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Filter** menu.



Fig. 98: Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Filter

You can use the  button to insert another filter above the list entry. The configuration menu for creating a new window opens.

You can use the  button to move the list entry. A dialog box opens, in which you can select the position to which the filter is to be moved.

15.1.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up more RIP filters.



Fig. 99: Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Filter->New

The menu **Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Filter->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface to which the rule to be configured applies.
IP Address / Netmask	<p>Enter the IP address and netmask to which the rule is to be applied. This address can be in the LAN or WAN.</p> <p>The rules for incoming and outgoing RIP packets (import or export) for the same IP address must be separately configured.</p> <p>You can enter individual host addresses or network addresses.</p>
Direction	<p>Select whether the filter applies to the export or import of routes.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Import</i> (default value)• <i>Export</i>
Metric Offset for Active Interfaces	<p>Select the value to be added to the route metric if the status of the interface is "up". During export, the value is added to the exported metric if the interface status is "up".</p> <p>Possible values are <i>-16</i> to <i>16</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>
Metric Offset for Inactive Interfaces	<p>Select the value to be added to the route metric if the status of the interface is "dormant". During export, the value is added to the exported metric if the interface status is "dormant".</p> <p>Possible values are <i>-16</i> to <i>16</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>

15.1.3 RIP Options

RIP Interfaces

RIP Filter

RIP Options

Global RIP Parameters

RIP UDP Port	520
Default Route Distribution	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Poisoned Reverse	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
RFC 2453 Variable Timer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
RFC 2091 Variable Timer	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Timer for RIP V2 (RFC 2453)	
Update Timer	30 Seconds
Route Timeout	180 Seconds
Garbage Collection Timer	120 Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 100: Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Options

The menu **Routing Protocols->RIP->RIP Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global RIP Parameters menu.

Field	Description
RIP UDP Port	The setting option UDP Port, which is used for sending and receiving RIP updates, is only for test purposes. If the setting is changed, this can mean that your device sends and listens at a port that no other devices use. The default value 520 should be retained.
Default Route Distribution	Select whether the default route of your device is to be propagated via RIP updates. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is enabled by default.
Poisoned Reverse	Select the procedure for preventing routing loops. With standard RIP, the routes learnt are propagated over all interfaces with RIP SEND activated. With Poisoned Reverse , however, your device propagates over the interface via which it learnt the routes, with the metric (Next Hop Count) 16

Field	Description
	<p>(=“Network is not reachable”).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
RFC 2453 Variable Timer	<p>For the timers described in RFC 2453, select whether the same values that you can configure in the Timer for RIP V2 (RFC 2453) menu should be used.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>If you deactivate the function, the times defined in RFC are retained for the timeouts.</p>
RFC 2091 Variable Timer	<p>For the timers described in RFC 2091, select whether the same values that you can configure in the Timer for Triggered RIP (RFC 2091) menu should be used.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>If the function is not activated, the times defined in RFC are retained for the timeouts.</p>

Fields in the Timer for RIP V2 (RFC 2453) menu.

Field	Description
Update Timer	<p>Only for RFC 2453 Variable Timer = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>An RIP update is sent on expiry of this period of time.</p> <p>The default value is <i>30</i> (seconds).</p>
Route Timeout	<p>Only for RFC 2453 Variable Timer = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>After the last update of a route, the route time is active.</p> <p>After timeout, the route is deactivated and the Garbage Collection Timer is started.</p> <p>The default value is <i>180</i> (seconds).</p>

Field	Description
Garbage Collection Timer	<p>Only for RFC 2453 Variable Timer = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>The Garbage Collection Timer is started as soon as the route timeout has expired.</p> <p>After this timeout, the invalid route is deleted from the IPROUTETABLE if no update is carried out for the route.</p> <p>The default value is <i>120</i> (seconds).</p>

Fields in the Timer for Triggered RIP (RFC 2091) menu.

Field	Description
Hold Down Timer	<p>Only for RFC 2091 Variable Timer = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>The hold down timer is activated as soon as your device receives an unreachable route (metric 16). The route may be deleted once this period has elapsed.</p> <p>The default value is <i>120</i> (seconds).</p>
Retransmission Timer	<p>Only for RFC 2091 Variable Timer = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>After this timeout, update request or update response packets are sent again until an update flush or update acknowledge packet arrives.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i> (seconds).</p>

15.2 OSPF

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) is a dynamic routing protocol that is frequently used in larger networks as an alternative to RIP. It was originally developed to avoid a number of limitations of RIP (when used in larger networks).

The problems (with RIP) avoided by OSPF include:

- **Reduced network load:** After a short initialization phase, routing information is not sent periodically as with RIP, but only changed routing information.
- **Authentication:** Gateway authentication can be configured to increase the security when exchanging routing information.
- **Routing Traffic Control:** Gateways can be combined to form areas to limit the traffic created by exchanging routing information.

- Connection costs: OSPF differs from RIP in that the connection costs are not calculated from the number of next hops, but from the bandwidth of the respective transport medium.
- No limitation of the number of hops: The limitation of the maximum number of 16 hops for RIP does not exist for OSPF.

Although the OSPF protocol is considerably more complex than RIP, the basic concept is the same, i.e. OSPF also determines the best path for forwarding the packets in each case.

OSPF is an Interior Gateway Protocol that is used to distribute routing information within an autonomous system (AS). The Link State Updates are exchanged between the gateways by flooding. Each change of routing information is passed to all gateways in the network. OSPF areas are defined to limit the number of Link State Updates. All gateways of an area have an identical Link State database.

An area is interface-specific. Gateways whose interfaces belong to several areas and connect these to the backbone are called Area Border Routers (ABR). ABRs therefore contain the information of the backbone area and all areas connected. A gateway whose interfaces are all incorporated in one area are called Internal Routers (IR).

There are four types of Link State packets: Router links show the state of the interfaces of a gateway that belong to a certain area. Summary links are generated by the ABR to define how the information on reachability in the network is exchanged between areas. Usually all information is sent to the backbone area, which then passes the information to the other areas. Network links are sent by Designated Routers (DS) within a segment and propagate all gateways that are connected to a certain multi-access segment like Ethernet, Token Ring and FDDI (also NBMA). External links point to networks outside the AS. These networks are incorporated in OSPF using redistribution. In this case, an Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) incorporates these external routes in the AS.

It is possible to increase security by authenticating the OSPF packets, so that the gateways can participate in Routing Domains using predefined passwords.

It is recommended that several areas are defined in larger networks. If more than one area is configured, one of these areas must possess the area ID 0.0.0.0, which defines the backbone area. This must be the centre point of all areas, i.e. all areas must be physically connected to the backbone area. Occasionally, gateways cannot be physically connected directly to the backbone area and virtual links must be set up.

The purpose of virtual links is to connect areas in which no physical connection to the backbone is possible and to maintain the connection of the backbone in case of a failure of the 0.0.0.0 area.

Summarizing is the term given to the consolidation of the various routes into a single advertisement (summary link). This is usually done by the ABR at the area borders.

Certain areas can be defined as stub areas in OSPF. This prevents external networks, e.g. those propagated from other protocols by redistribution in OSPF, being propagated into the stub area. Externally routing of such areas is propagated with a default route. The configuration of a stub area reduces the database size in the area and reduces the amount of storage space needed on the gateways incorporated in the area.

15.2.1 Areas

OSPF areas must be defined before the gateway interface can be assigned to an area.

A list of all configured OSPF areas is displayed in the **Routing Protocols+OSPF+Areas** menu.

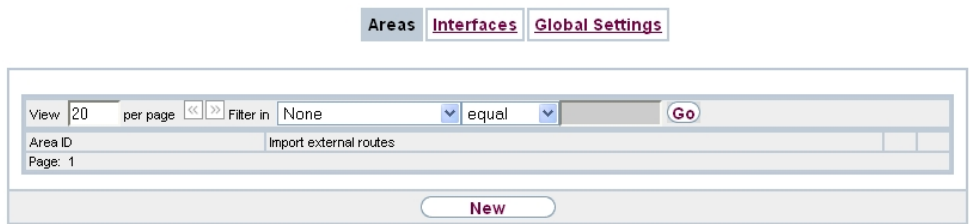



Fig. 101: Routing Protocols+OSPF+Areas

15.2.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create additional areas.

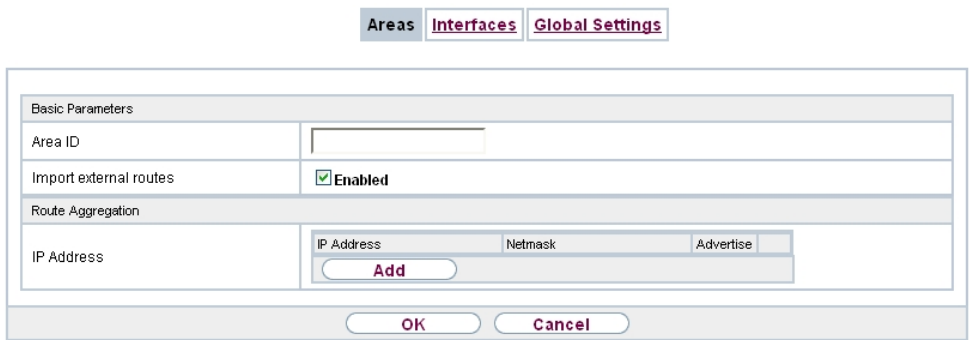


Fig. 102: Routing Protocols+OSPF+Areas->New

The **Routing Protocols+OSPF+Areas->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Area ID	Enter the ID to identify the OSPF aea. The backbone area is <i>0.0.0.0</i> .
Import external routes	<p>Specifies whether the gateway routing information generated from external autonomous systems (not areas) is to be imported.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is activated by default.</p>
Import summary routes	<p>Only for Import external routes = <i>Disabled</i></p> <p>Define whether summary LSAs (routing information generated by Area Border Gateway) are to be sent to the stub area.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Enabled</i> (default value): Activates import.• <i>Disabled</i>: Deactivates the import.
Create area default route (only ABR)	<p>Only for Import external routes = <i>Disabled</i></p> <p>Select whether the Area Border Gateway shall send no LSA's in the stub area, but rather only propagate a default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is not activated by default.</p>

Fields in the Route Aggregation menu.

Field	Description
IP Address	<p>Define the OSPF area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>IP Address</i>: Here you enter the IP address of the area to be combined.• <i>Netmask</i>: Enter the netmask here.• <i>Advertise</i>: Subnetworks that are combined into areas either initiate propagation of the given combination (<i>Yes</i>, default value), or cause the subnetwork not to be propagated outside the area at all (<i>No</i>), i.e. neither the actual subnetworks nor the combined overall subnetwork are propagated. <p>Add new entries with Add.</p>

15.2.2 Interfaces

In the **Routing Protocols->OSPF->Interfaces** menu, a list of all interfaces is displayed.

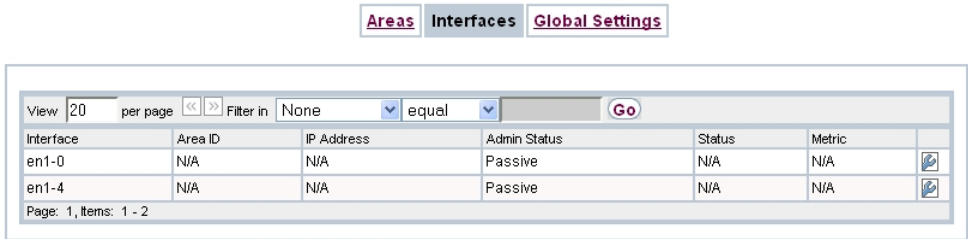


Fig. 103: Routing Protocols->OSPF->Interfaces



Caution

If your interfaces are not only to be assigned to Backbone Area 0.0.0.0, you must first define OSPF areas in the **Routing Protocols+OSPF+Areas** menu.

15.2.2.1 Edit

Select the symbol to modify the OSPF settings for the interfaces.



Fig. 104: Routing Protocols->OSPF->Interfaces->

The **Routing Protocols->OSPF->Interfaces->** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the OSPF Interface Configuration menu.

Field	Description
Admin Status	The status of an OSPF interface defines whether routes are propagated and/or OSPF protocol packets are sent over the interface. If OSPF is not yet activated, only the Admin Status field is shown (in this case changes are irrelevant).

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is activated for this interface, i.e. routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface.• <i>Passive</i>: OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is completely disabled for this interface.
Area ID	<p>Select the ID of the area to which this interface shall be assigned.</p> <p>If your interface is not only to be assigned to Backbone Area 0.0.0.0, you must first define OSPF areas in the Routing Protocols->OSPF->Areas menu.</p>
Metric Determination	<p>Defines how the metric of this interface is calculated.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto (Interface Speed)</i> (default value): The metric is automatically set on the basis of the interface speed.• <i>Fixed</i>: Enter a specific value in Metric (direct routes).
Metric (direct routes)	<p>Enter the base metric value. The basis of the metric actually used for a route is a base metric value, which is obtained from the bandwidth of the interface: $BMV = 100,000,000 / \text{bandwidth in bps}$ For Metric Determination <i>Auto (Interface Speed)</i> the automatically calculated value is displayed here and cannot be modified.</p> <p>The basic metric value for bandwidths $\geq 100.000.000$ bps is always <i>1</i>. So the basic metric value of Gigabit interfaces and 100 Mbit interfaces is identical. To change this, you need to specify a fixed value in Metric Determination.</p>
Authentication Type	<p>Select the type of authentication used if OSPF packets are sent over this OSPF interface (or incoming packets checked). Defines how the key in the Authentication Key field is used.</p> <p>The default value is <i>none</i>. In <i>Clear Text</i>, the key is sent as a text string in each packet. In <i>MD5</i>, the key is used to create a</p>

Field	Description
	hash, which is sent with each packet
Authentication Key	Enter a text string to be used in combination with the defined Authentication Type .
Export indirect static routes	If this value is set to <i>No</i> (default), only direct routes (i.e. routes to networks reached directly over this interface) are propagated over active OSPF interfaces (see Admin Status). If the value is set to <i>Yes</i> , indirect static routes are also propagated over active interfaces.
Demand Circuit Options	Define whether Demand OSPF procedures (Hello suppression on FULL Neighbors and setting of DoNotAge flags on the propagated LSA) shall be performed (Yes, default value) or not (<i>No</i>). This option should be enabled particularly in the case of connections for which the costs are calculated based on time (e.g. ISDN dialup connections, Internet connections with no flat rate).

15.2.3 Global Settings

The **Routing Protocols->OSPF->Global Settings** menu contains global OSPF parameters. OSPF is activated on the gateway.

Areas

Interfaces

Global Settings

Global OSPF Settings

OSPF Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Generate default route for the AS	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Propagate routes bound on discard/refuse interface	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 105: Routing Protocols->OSPF->Global Settings

The **Routing Protocols->OSPF->Global Settings** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global OSPF Settings menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Status	Enable or disable OSPF. The function is disabled by default.

Field	Description
Generate default route for the AS	<p>If this option is activated, the gateway propagates a default route over all active OSPF interfaces.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Propagate routes bound on discard/re-fuse interface	<p>The logical interfaces REFUSE and IGNORE have the following meaning:</p> <p>REFUSE means (if a route exists on this) that packets from this interface are discarded and an ICMP Unreachable Reply is generated.</p> <p>IGNORE means (if a route exists on this) that packets from this interface are discarded without comment.</p> <p>If the option is activated, routes connected to the two discard/re-fuse interfaces are saved by OSPF in its database. If the option is deactivated, these routes are ignored.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Dynamic LS Update Compression	<p>Only for RXL1250 / RXL12100</p> <p>Enable or disable the function.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

Chapter 16 Multicast

What is multicasting?

Many new communication technologies are based on communication from one sender to several recipients. Therefore, modern telecommunication systems such as voice over IP or video and audio streaming (e.g. IPTV or Webradio) focus on reducing data traffic, e.g. by offering TriplePlay (voice, video, data). Multicast is a cost-effective solution for effective use of bandwidth because the sender of the data packet, which can be received by several recipients, only needs to send the packet once. The packet is sent to a virtual address defined as a multicast group. Interested recipients log in to these groups.

Other areas of use

One classic area in which multicast is used is for conferences (audio/video) with several recipients. The most well-known are probably the MBone Multimedia Audio Tool (VAT), Video Conferencing Tool (VIC) and Whiteboard (WB). VAT can be used to hold audio conferences. All subscribers are displayed in a window and the speaker(s) are indicated by a black box. Other areas of use are of particular interest to companies. Here, multicasting makes it possible to synchronise the databases of several servers, which is valuable for multinationals or even companies with just a few locations.

Address range for multicast

For, IPv4 the IP addresses 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255 (224.0.0.0/4) are reserved for multicast in the class D network. An IP address from this range represents a multicast group to which several recipients can log in. The multicast router then forwards the required packets to all subnets with logged in recipients.

Multicast basics

Multicast is connectionless, which means that any trouble-shooting or flow control needs to be guaranteed at application level.

At transport level, UDP is used almost exclusively, as, in contrast to TCP, it is not based on a point-to-point connection.

At IP level, the main difference is therefore that the destination address does not address a

dedicated host, but rather a group, i.e. during the routing of multicast packets, the decisive factor is whether a recipient is in a logged-in subnet.

In the local network, all hosts are required to accept all multicast packets. For Ethernet or FDD, this is based on MAC mapping, where the group address is encoded into the destination MAC address. For routing between several networks, the routers first need to make themselves known to all potential recipients in the subnet. This is achieved by means of Membership Management protocols such as IGMP for IPv4 and MLP for IPv6.

Membership Management protocol

In IPv4, IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a protocol that hosts can use to provide the router with multicast membership information. IP addresses of the class D address range are used for addressing. An IP address in this class represents a group. A sender (e.g. Internet radio) sends data to this group. The addresses (IP) of the various senders within a group are called the source (addresses). Several senders (with different IP addresses) can therefore transmit to the same multicast group, leading to a 1-to-n relationship between groups and source addresses. This information is forwarded to the router by means of reports. In the case of incoming multicast data traffic, a router can use this information to decide whether a host in its subnet wants to receive it. Your device supports the current version IGMP V3, which is upwardly compatible, which means that both V3 and V1/V2 hosts can be managed.

Your device supports the following multicast mechanisms:

- Forwarding: This relates to static forwarding, i.e. incoming data traffic for a group is passed in all cases. This is a useful option if multicast data traffic is to be permanently passed.
- IGMP: IGMP is used to gather information about the potential recipients in a subnet. In the case of a hop, incoming multicast data traffic can thus be selected.



Tip

With multicast, the focus is on excluding data traffic from unwanted multicast groups. Note that if forwarding is combined with IGMP, the packets can be forwarded to the groups specified in the forwarding request.

16.1 General

16.1.1 General

In the **Multicast->General->General** menu you can disable or enable the multicast function.

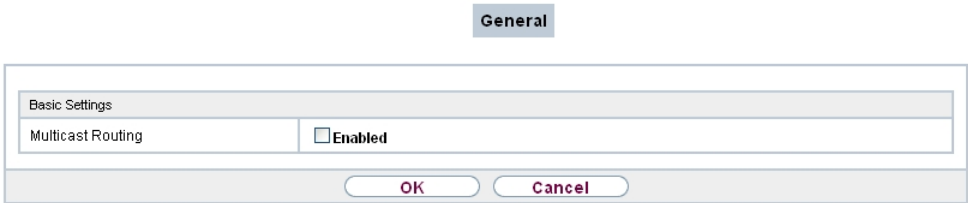


Fig. 106: **Multicast->General->General**

The **Multicast->General->General** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
Multicast Routing	Select whether Multicast Routing should be used. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.

16.2 IGMP

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol, see RFC 3376) is used to signal the information about group (membership) in a subnet. As a result, only the packets explicitly wanted by a host enter the subnet.

Special mechanisms ensure that the requirements of the individual clients are taken into consideration. At the moment there are three versions of IGMP (V1 - V3); most current systems use V3, and less often V2.


Two packet types play a central role in IGMP: queries and reports.

Queries are only transmitted from a router. If several IGMP routers exist in a network, the router with the lowest IP address is the "querier". We differentiate here between a general query (sent to 224.0.0.1), a group-specific query (sent to a group address) and the group-and-source-specific query (sent to a specific group address). Reports are only sent by hosts to respond to queries.

16.2.1 IGMP

In this menu, you configure the interfaces on which IGMP is to be enabled.

16.2.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to configure IGMP on other interfaces.

IGMPOptions

IGMP Settings

Interface	None
Query Interval	125Seconds
Maximum Response Time	10,0Seconds
Robustness	2
Last Member Query Interval	1,0Seconds
IGMP State Limit	0Messages per Second
Mode	<input type="radio"/> Host <input checked="" type="radio"/> Routing

Advanced Settings

IGMP Proxy	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
------------	----------------------------------

OKCancel

Fig. 107: Multicast->IGMP->IGMP->New

The **Multicast->IGMP->IGMP->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the IGMP Settings menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface on which IGMP is to be enabled, i.e. queries are sent and responses are accepted.
Query Interval	Enter the interval in seconds in which IGMP queries are to be sent. Possible values are 0 to 600. The default value is 125.
Maximum Response	For the sending of queries, enter the time interval in seconds

Field	Description
Time	<p>within which hosts must respond. The hosts randomly select a time delay from this interval before sending the response. This spreads the load in networks with several hosts, improving performance.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0,0</i> to <i>25,0</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>10,0</i>.</p>
Robustness	<p>Select the multiplier for controlling the timer values. A higher value can e.g. compensate for packet loss in a network susceptible to loss. If the value is too high, however, the time between logging off and stopping of the data traffic can be increased (leave latency).</p> <p>Possible values are <i>2</i> to <i>8</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>2</i>.</p>
Last Member Query Interval	<p>Define the time after a query for which the router waits for an answer.</p> <p>If you shorten the interval, it will be more quickly detected that the last member has left a group so that no more packets for this group should be forwarded to this interface.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0,0</i> to <i>25,0</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1,0</i>.</p>
IGMP State Limit	<p>Limit the number of reports/queries per second for the selected interface.</p>
Mode	<p>Specify whether the interface defined here only works in host mode or in both host mode and routing mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Routing</i> (default value): The interface is operated in Routing mode.• <i>Host</i>: The interface is only operated in host mode.

IGMP Proxy

IGMP Proxy enables you to simulate several locally connected interfaces as a subnet to an adjacent router. Queries coming in to the IGMP Proxy interface are forwarded to the local subnets. Local reports are forwarded on the IPGM Proxy interface.

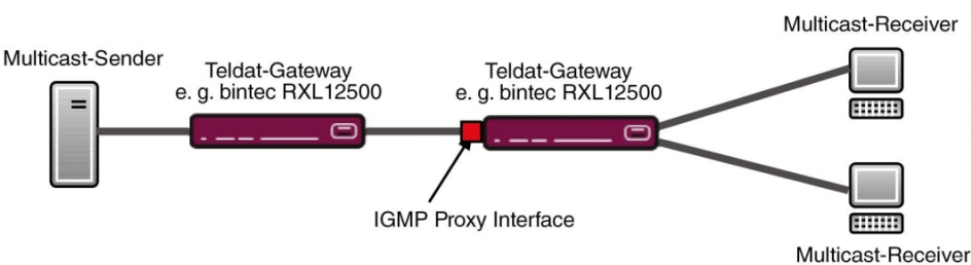


Fig. 108: IGMP Proxy

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
IGMP Proxy	Select whether your device is to forward the hosts' IGMP messages in the subnet via its defined Proxy Interface .
Proxy Interface	Only for IGMP Proxy = enabled Select the interface on your device via which queries are to be received and collected.

16.2.2 Options

In this menu, you can enable and disable IGMP on your system. You can also define whether IGMP is to be used in compatibility mode or only IGMP V3 hosts are to be accepted.

IGMP

Options

Basic Settings

IGMP Status	<input type="radio"/> Up <input type="radio"/> Down <input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto	
Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Compatibility Mode <input type="radio"/> Version 3 only	
Maximum Groups	<input type="text" value="64"/>	
Maximum Sources	<input type="text" value="64"/>	
IGMP State Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	Messages per Second

OK

Cancel

Fig. 109: Multicast->IGMP->Options

The **Multicast->IGMP->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
IGMP Status	<p>Select the IGMP status.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto</i> (default value): Multicast is activated automatically for hosts if the hosts open applications that use multicast.• <i>Up</i>: Multicast is always on.• <i>Down</i>: Multicast is always off.
Mode	<p>Only for IGMP Status = <i>Up</i> or <i>Auto</i></p> <p>Select Multicast Mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Compatibility Mode</i> (default value): The router uses IGMP version 3. If it notices a lower version in the network, it uses the lowest version it could detect.• <i>Version 3 only</i>: Only IGMP version 3 is used.
Maximum Groups	<p>Enter the maximum number of groups to be permitted, both internally and in reports.</p>
Maximum Sources	<p>Enter the maximum number of sources that are specified in version 3 reports and the maximum number of internally managed sources per group.</p>

Field	Description
IGMP State Limit	<p>Enter the maximum permitted total number of incoming queries and messages per second.</p> <p>The default value is 0, i.e. the number of IGMP status messages is not limited.</p>

16.3 Forwarding

16.3.1 Forwarding

In this menu, you specify which multicast groups are always passed between the interfaces of your device.

16.3.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create forwarding rules for new multicast groups.

Forwarding

Basic Parameters

All Multicast Groups	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Multicast Group Address	<input type="text"/>
Source Interface	None ▾
Destination Interface	None ▾

OKCancel

Fig. 110: Multicast->Forwarding->Forwarding->New

The **Multicast->Forwarding->Forwarding->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
All Multicast Groups	<p>Select whether all multicast groups, i.e. the complete multicast address range 224.0.0.0/4, are to be forwarded from the defined Source Interface to the defined Destination Interface. To do this, check <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>Disable the option if you only want to forward one defined multicast group to a particular interface.</p>

Field	Description
	The option is deactivated by default.
Multicast Group Address	Only for All Multicast Groups = not active. Enter here the address of the multicast group you want to forward from a defined Source Interface to a defined Destination Interface .
Source Interface	Select the interface on your device to which the selected multicast group is sent.
Destination Interface	Select the interface on your device to which the selected multicast group is to be forwarded.

16.4 PIM

Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) is a multicast-routing process that makes possible dynamic routing from multicast packets. With PIM the distribution of information is regulated via a central point, which is known as the rendezvous point. Data packets are initially routed here before being made available to other recipient routers.

Multicast routing protocols differentiates between sparse mode and dense mode. In dense mode, all packets are forwarded and only packets to groups that have been explicitly cancelled are rejected. In sparse mode, packets are only forward to groups if they have been ordered. Your device uses PIM in sparse mode.

16.4.1 PIM Interfaces

A list of all PIM interfaces is displayed in the **Multicast->PIM->PIM Interfaces** menu.

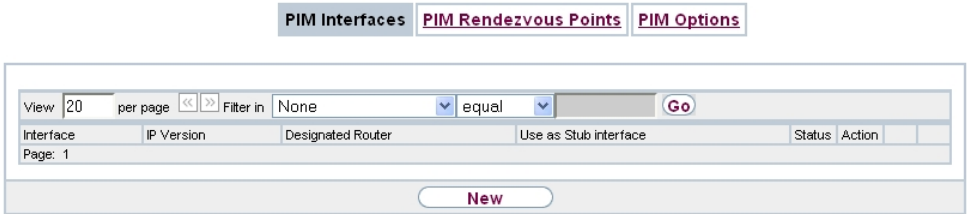



Fig. 111: Multicast->PIM->PIM Interfaces

16.4.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. To configure PIM lists, select the **New** button.

PIM InterfacesPIM Rendezvous PointsPIM Options

PIM Interface Settings

Interface	<div>Select one</div>
PIM Mode	Sparse Mode
Use as Stub interface	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Enabled</div>
Designated Router Priority	<div>1</div>

Advanced Settings

Hello Interval	<div>30</div>	Seconds
Triggered Hello Interval	<div>5</div>	Seconds
Hello Hold Time	<div>105</div>	Seconds
Join/Prune Interval	<div>60</div>	Seconds
Join/Prune Hold Time	<div>210</div>	Seconds
Propagation Delay	<div>1</div>	Seconds
Override Interval	<div>3</div>	Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 112: Multicast->PIM->PIM Interfaces->New

The **Multicast->PIM->PIM Interfaces->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the PIM Interface Settings menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Choose the interface used for PIM, i.e. over which multicast routing is operated.
PIM Mode	Indicates the mode to be used for PIM. Your device uses PIM in sparse mode. The entry cannot be changed.
Use as Stub interface	<div>Determine whether or not the interface is used for PIM data packets. This parameter allows you to use an interface for IG-MP, for example, whilst preventing (fake) PIM messages.</div> <div>If this function is deactivated (default value), the PIM data packets for this interface are blocked.</div> <div>If the function is active, the interface for the PIM data packets</div>

Field	Description
	are released.
Designated Router Priority	<p>Define the value of the designated router priority entered in the Designated Router Priority option.</p> <p>The higher the value, the greater the probability that the corresponding router will be used as the designated router.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Hello Interval	<p>Define the interval (in seconds) at which PIM Hello messages are sent over this interface.</p> <p>The value <i>0</i> means that no PIM Hello messages are sent on this interface.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>18000</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>30</i>.</p>
Triggered Hello Interval	<p>Define the maximum waiting time until a PIM Hello message is sent after a system boot or after a reboot of a neighbour.</p> <p>The value <i>0</i> means that PIM Hello messages are always sent straight away.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>60</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Hello Hold Time	<p>Define the value of the holdtime field in a PIM Hello message.</p> <p>This indicates how long a PIM route is available. As soon as the Hello Hold Time has expired and no other Hello messages have been received, the PIM router will be classed as unavailable.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>105</i>.</p>

Field	Description
Join/Prune Interval	<p>Define the frequency at which the PIM Join/Prune messages are sent on the interface.</p> <p>The value <i>0</i> means that no periodic PIM Join/Prune messages are sent on this interface.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>18000</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>60</i>.</p>
Join/Prune Hold Time	<p>Define the value entered in the holdtime field of a PIM Join/Prune message.</p> <p>This is the time for which a recipient must maintain the Join/Prune state.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>210</i>.</p>
Propagation Delay	<p>Define the value entered in the Propagation Delay field. This field is part of the LAN Prune Delay option in the PIM Hello messages, which are sent on this interface.</p> <p>Propagation Delay and Override Interval represent the so-called LAN-Prune-Delay settings. These result in a delay in processing prune messages for upstream routers.</p> <p>If the Propagation Delay is too short, the transfer of multicast packets may be cancelled before a downstream router has sent a prune override message.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>32</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>
Override Interval	<p>Define the value that the gateway enters in the Override_Interval field for the LAN Prune Delay option.</p> <p>Override Interval defines the maximum time a downstream router can wait until sending a prune override message.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>65</i> seconds.</p> <p>The default value is <i>3</i>.</p>

16.4.2 PIM Rendezvous Points

In menu **Multicast->PIM->PIM Rendezvous Points** you determine which Rendezvous Point is responsible for which group.

A list of all PIM Rendezvous Points is displayed.

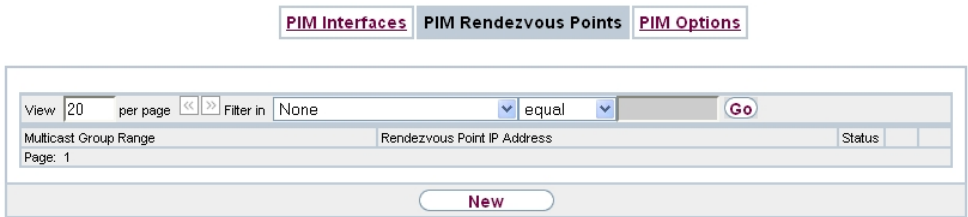



Fig. 113: Multicast->PIM->PIM Rendezvous Points

16.4.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. To configure PIM Rendezvous Points, select the **New** button.

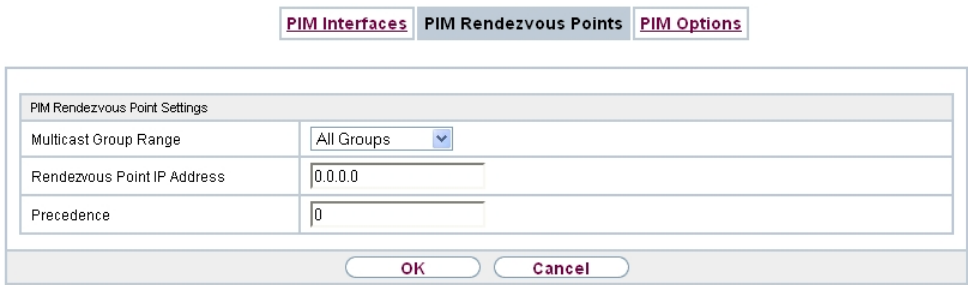


Fig. 114: Multicast->PIM->PIM Rendezvous Points->New

The **Multicast->PIM->PIM Rendezvous Points->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the PIM Rendezvous Point Settings menu.

Field	Description
Multicast Group Range	Select the Multicast group for the PIM Rendezvouz point. You can enter <i>All Groups</i> (default value), or specify a multicast network segment by selecting <i>Specific Range</i> .
Multicast Group Ad- dress	Only if Multicast Group Range = <i>Specific Range</i>

Field	Description
	Here you enter the IP address of the multicast network segment.
Multicast Group Prefix Length	<p>Only if Multicast Group Range = <i>Specific Range</i></p> <p>Here you enter the network mask length of the multicast network segment.</p> <p>224.0.0.0/4 indicates the entire multicast class D segment.</p> <p>Possible values: 4 (default value) to 32.</p>
Rendezvous Point IP Address	Enter the IP address or the hostname of the rendezvous points.
Precedence	<p>Enter the value for pimGroupMappingPrecedence to be used for static RP configurations. This allows precise control over which configuration is to be replaced by this static configuration.</p> <p>When the function is activated pimStaticRPOverrideDynamic is ignored. The absolute values of this object are only significant on the local router and need not be synchronised with other routers.</p> <p>The function is deactivated with the default value 0. If the function is not activated by setting a value not 0, this can different consequences for other routers. Hence, avoid using this function if exact control of the behaviour of the static RP is not required.</p>

16.4.3 PIM Options

PIM Interfaces

PIM Rendezvous Points

PIM Options

Basic Settings

PIM Status

☐ Enabled

Keepalive Period

210

Seconds

Register Suppression Timer

60

Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 115: Multicast->PIM->PIM Options

The **Multicast->PIM->PIM Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
PIM Status	<p>Select whether PIM should be activated. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enable</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Keepalive Period	<p>Enter the interval in seconds within which a KeepAlive message must be sent.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>210</i>.</p>
Register Suppression Timer	<p>Enter the time in seconds after which a PIM Designated Router (DR) should no longer send any register-encapsulated data to the Rendezvous Point (RP) once the Register-Stop-Message has been received. This object is used to employ timers at the DR as well as at the RP. This timespan is named Register_Suppression_Time in the PIM-SM specification.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>60</i>.</p>

Chapter 17 WAN

This menu offers various options for configuring accesses or connections from your LAN to the WAN. You can also optimise voice transmission here for telephone calls over the Internet.

17.1 Internet + Dialup

In this menu, you can set up Internet access or dialup connections.

In addition, you can create address pools for the dynamic assignment of IP addresses.

To enable your device to set up connections to networks or hosts outside your LAN, you must configure the partners you want to connect to on your device. This applies to outgoing connections (your device dials its WAN partner) and incoming connections (a remote partner dials the number of your device).

If you want to set up Internet access, you must set up a connection to your Internet Service Provider (ISP). For broadband Internet access, your device provides the PPP-over-Ethernet (PPPoE), PPP-over-PPTP and PPP-over-ATM (PPPoA) protocols. You can also configure Internet access over ISDN.



Note

Note your provider's instructions.


Dialin connections over ISDN are used to establish a connection to networks or hosts outside your LANs.

All the entered connections are displayed in a list, which contains the **Description**, the **User Name**, the **Authentication** and the current **Status**.

The **Status** field can have the following values:

Possible values for Status

Field	Description
	connected
	not connected (dialup connection); connection setup possible
	not connected (e.g. because of an error during setup of an outgoing connection, a renewed attempt is only possible after a

Field	Description
	specified number of seconds)
	administratively set to down (deactivated); connection setup not possible for leased lines:

Default Route

With a default route, all data is automatically forwarded to one connection if no other suitable route is available. Access to the Internet should always be set up as the default route to the Internet Service Provider (ISP). Further information on possible route types can be found under **Networking->Routes**.

Activating NAT

With Network Address Translation (NAT), you conceal your whole network to the outside world behind one IP address. You should certainly do this for your connection to the Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Only outgoing sessions are allowed initially if NAT is activated. To allow certain connections from outside to hosts within the LAN, these must be explicitly defined and admitted.

Connection Idle Timeout

The connection idle timeout is determined in order to clear the connection automatically if it is not being used, i.e. if data is no longer being sent, to help you save costs.

Block after Connection Failure

You use this function to set up a waiting time for outgoing connection attempts after which your device's connection attempt is regarded as having failed.

Authentication

When a call is received on ISDN connections, the calling party number is always sent over the ISDN D-channel. This number enables your device to identify the caller (CLID), provided the caller is entered on your device. After identification with CLID, your device can additionally carry out PPP authentication with the connection partner before it accepts the call.

Your device needs the necessary data for this, which you should enter here, for all PPP connections. Establish the type of authentication process that should be performed, then

enter a common password and two codes. You get this information, for example, from your Internet Service Provider (ISP) or the system administrator at your head office. If the data you entered on your device is the same as the caller's data, the call is accepted. The call is rejected if the data is not the same.

Callback

The callback mechanism can be used for every connection over an ISDN or over an AUX interface to obtain additional security regarding the connection partner or to clearly allocate the costs of connections. A connection is not set up until the calling party has been clearly identified by calling back. Your device can answer an incoming call with a callback or request a callback from a connection partner. Identification can be based on the calling party number or PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP authentication. Identification is made in the former case without call acceptance, as the calling party number is transferred over the ISDN D-channel, and in the latter case with call acceptance.

Channel Bundling

Your device supports dynamic and static channel bundling for dialup connections. Channel bundling can only be used for ISDN connections for a bandwidth increase or as a backup. Only one B-channel is initially opened when a connection is set up.

Dynamic

Dynamic channel bundling means that your device connects other ISDN B-channels to increase the throughput for connections if this is required, e.g. for large data rates. If the amount of data traffic drops, the additional B-channels are closed again.

If devices from other manufacturers are to be used at the far end, ensure that these support dynamic channel bundling for a bandwidth increase or as a backup.

Static

In static channel bundling, you specify right from the start how many B-channels your device is to use for connections, regardless of the transferred data rate.

17.1.1 PPPoE

A list of all PPToE interfaces is displayed in the **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoE** menu.

PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) is the use of the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) network protocol over an Ethernet connection. Today, PPPoE is used for ADSL connections in Germany. In Austria, the Point To Point Tunnelling Protocol (PPTP) was originally used for ADSL access. However, PPPoE is now offered here too by some providers.

17.1.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new PPPoE interfaces.

PPPoE

PPTP

PPPoA

ISDN

AUX

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

Description

PPPoE Mode

☒ Standard ☐ Multilink

PPPoE Ethernet Interface

Select one ▾

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐ Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

300 Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☐ Static ☒ Get IP Address

Default Route

☒ Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

60 Seconds

Maximum Number of Dialup Retries

5

Authentication

PAP ▾

DNS Negotiation

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

MTU

☒ Automatic

OK

Cancel

Fig. 116: WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoE->New

The menu **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoE->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a name to uniquely identify the PPPoE partner. The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.
PPPoE Mode	Select whether you want to use a standard Internet connection over PPPoE (<i>standard</i>) or your Internet access is to be set

Field	Description
	<p>up over several interfaces (<i>Multilink</i>). If you choose <i>Multilink</i>, you can connect several DSL connections from a provider over PPP as a static bundle in order to obtain more bandwidth. Each of these DSL connections should use a separate Ethernet connection for this. At the moment, many providers are still in the process of preparing the PPPoE Multilink function.</p> <p>For PPPoE Multilink, we recommend using your device's Ethernet switch in Split-Port mode and to use a separate Ethernet interface e.g. <i>en1-1</i>, <i>en1-2</i> for each PPPoE connection.</p> <p>If you also want to use an external modem for PPPoE Multilink, you must run your device's Ethernet switch in Split-Port mode.</p>
PPPoE Ethernet Interface	<p>Only for PPPoE Mode = <i>Standard</i></p> <p>Select the Ethernet interface specified for a standard PPPoE connection.</p> <p>If you want to use an external DSL modem, select the Ethernet port to which the modem is connected.</p> <p>When using the internal DSL modem, select here the EthoA interface configured in Physical Interfaces->ATM->Profiles->New.</p>
PPPoE Interfaces for Multilink	<p>Only for PPPoE Mode = <i>Multilink</i></p> <p>Select the interfaces you want to use for your Internet connection. Click the Add button to create new entries.</p>
User Name	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password.
VLAN	Certain Internet service providers require a VLAN-ID. Activate this function to be able to enter a value under VLAN ID .
VLAN ID	<p>Only if VLAN is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the VLAN-ID that you received from your provider.</p>
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Only activate this option if you have Internet access with a flat-rate charge.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled.</p> <p>Enter the idle time in seconds for static short hold. The static short hold setting determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the short hold.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p> <p>Example: <i>10</i> for FTP transmission, <i>20</i> for LAN-to-LAN transmission, <i>90</i> for Internet connections.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Get IP Address</i> (default value): Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address.• <i>Static</i>: You enter a static IP address.
Default Route	<p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Field	Description
Local IP Address	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the static IP address of the connection partner.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Define other routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <p>Add new entries with Add.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values <i>0... 15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed. The default value is <i>60</i>.</p>
Maximum Number of Dialup Retries	<p>Enter the number of unsuccessful attempts to setup a connection before the interface is blocked.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>100</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this connection partner. Select the authentication specified by your provider.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP</i> (default value): Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, on denial then the authentication protocol required by the connection partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server from the connection partner or sends these to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This makes it possible to switch to a backup connection more quickly in the event of line faults.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
MTU	<p>Enter the maximum packet size (Maximum Transfer Unit, MTU) in bytes that is allowed for the connection.</p> <p>With default value <i>Automatic</i>, the value is specified by link control at connection setup.</p> <p>If you disable <i>Automatic</i>, you can enter a value.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>8192</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The default value is 0.

17.1.2 PPTP

A list of all PPTP interfaces is displayed in the **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPTP** menu.

In this menu, you configure an Internet connection that uses the Point Tunnelling Protocol (PPTP) to set up a connection. This is required in Austria, for example.

17.1.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new PPTP interfaces.

PPPoE

PPTP

PPPoA

ISDN

AUX

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

Description

PPTP Interface

Select one

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐ Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

300

Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☐ Static ☒ Get IP Address

Default Route

☒ Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

60

Seconds

Maximum Number of Dialup Retries

5

Authentication

PAP

DNS Negotiation

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

PPTP Address Mode

Static

Local PPTP IP Address

10.0.0.140

Remote PPTP IP Address

10.0.0.138

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 117: WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPTP->New

The menu **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPTP->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a name for uniquely identifying the internet connection. The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.
PPTP Ethernet Interface	Select the IP interface over which packets are to be transported to the remote PPTP terminal. If you want to use an external DSL modem, select the Ethernet port to which the modem is connected.

Field	Description
	When using the internal DSL modem, select here the EthoA interface configured in Physical Interfaces->ATM->Profiles->New , e.g. <i>ethoa50-0</i> .
User Name	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password.
Always on	Select whether the interface should always be activated. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default. Only activate this option if you have Internet access with a flat-rate charge.
Connection Idle Timeout	Only if Always on is disabled. Enter the idle interval in seconds. This determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection. Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the timeout. The default value is <i>300</i> . Example: <i>10</i> for FTP transmission, <i>20</i> for LAN-to-LAN transmission, <i>90</i> for Internet connections.

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Get IP Address</i> (default value): Your device is automatically assigned a temporarily valid IP address from the provider.• <i>Static</i>: You enter a static IP address.
Default Route	Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be

Field	Description
	<p>defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Assign an IP address from your LAN to the PPT interface, which is to be used as your device's internal source address.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Define other routing entries for this PPTP partner.</p> <p>Add new entries with Add.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values 0... 15). The default value is 1.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed. The default value is 60.</p>
Maximum Number of Dialup Retries	<p>Enter the number of unsuccessful attempts to setup a connection before the interface is blocked.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 100.</p>

Field	Description
	The default value is <i>5</i> .
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this Internet connection. Select the authentication specified by your provider.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP</i> (default value): Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, on denial then the authentication protocol required by the connection partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server from the connection partner or sends these to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
PPTP Address Mode	<p>Displays the address mode. The value cannot be changed.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i>: The Local PPTP IP Address will be assigned to the

Field	Description
	selected Ethernet port.
Local PPTP IP Address	Assign the PPTP interface an IP address that is used as the source address. The default value is <i>10.0.0.140</i> .
Remote PPTP IP Address	Enter the IP address of the PPTP partner. The default value is <i>10.0.0.138</i> .
LCP Alive Check	Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This makes it possible to switch to a backup connection more quickly in the event of line faults. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is enabled by default.

17.1.3 PPPoA

A list of all PPPoA interfaces is displayed in the **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoA** menu.

In this menu, you configure a xDSL connection used to set up PPPoA connections. With PPPoA, the connection is configured so that the PPP data flow is transported directly over an ATM network (RFC 2364). This is required by some providers. Note your provider's specifications.

When using the internal DSL modem, a PPPoA interface must be configured with **Client Type = On Demand** for this connection in **WAN->ATM->Profiles->New**.

17.1.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new PPPoA interfaces.

PPPoE

PPTP

PPPoA

ISDN

AUX

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

Description

ATM PVC

Select one

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐ Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

300

Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☐ Static ☒ Get IP Address

Default Route

☒ Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

60

Seconds

Maximum Number of Dialup Retries

5

Authentication

PAP

DNS Negotiation

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 118: WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoA->New

The menu **WAN->Internet + Dialup->PPPoA->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a name for uniquely identifying the connection partner. The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.
ATM PVC	Select an ATM profile created in the ATM->Profiles menu, indicated by the global identifiers VPI and VCI specified by the provider.
User Name	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password for the PPPoA connection.

Field	Description
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Only activate this option if you have Internet access with a flat-rate charge.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled.</p> <p>Enter the idle time in seconds for static short hold. The static short hold setting determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the short hold.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p> <p>Example: <i>10</i> for FTP transmission, <i>20</i> for LAN-to-LAN transmission, <i>90</i> for Internet connections.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	<p>Choose whether your device has a static IP address or is assigned one dynamically.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Get IP Address</i> (default value): Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address.• <i>Static</i>: You enter a static IP address.
Default Route	<p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the static IP address you received from your provider.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Define other routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <p>Add new entries with Add.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values <i>0... 15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed. The default value is <i>60</i>.</p>
Maximum Number of Dialup Retries	<p>Enter the number of unsuccessful attempts to setup a connection before the interface is blocked.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>100</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this Internet connection. Select the authentication specified by your provider.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP</i> (default value): Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, on denial then the authentication protocol required by the connection partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server from the connection partner or sends these to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This is recommended for leased lines, PPTP and L2TP connections.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

17.1.4 ISDN

A list of all ISDN interfaces is displayed in the **WAN->Internet + Dialup->ISDN** menu.

In this menu, you configure the following ISDN connections:

- Internet access over ISDN
- LAN to LAN connection over ISDN
- Remote (Mobile) dial-in
- Use of the ISDN Callback function

17.1.4.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new ISDN interfaces.

PPPoE

PPTP

PPPoA

ISDN

AUX

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

Description

Connection Type

ISDN 64 kbps

User Name

Remote User (for Dialin only)

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐ Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

20

Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☒ Static ☐ Provide IP Address ☐ Get IP Address

Default Route

☐ Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☐ Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

300

Seconds

Maximum Number of Dialup Retries

5

Usage Type

☒ Standard ☐ Dialin only ☐ Multi-User (Dialin only)

Authentication

PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP

Callback Mode

☒ None ☐ Active ☐ Passive

Bandwith on Demand Options

Channel Bundling

None

Dial Numbers

Entries

Mode

Number

Number of Used Ports

1

Add

IP Options

OSPF Mode

☒ Passive ☐ Active ☐ Inactive

Proxy ARP Mode

☒ Inactive ☐ Up or Dormant ☐ Up only

DNS Negotiation

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 119: WAN->Internet + Dialup->ISDN->New

The menu **WAN->Internet + Dialup->ISDN->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

288

bintec Rxxx2/RTxxx2

Field	Description
Description	<p>Enter a name for uniquely identifying the connection partner.</p> <p>The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.</p>
Connection Type	<p>Select which layer 1 protocol your device should use.</p> <p>This setting applies for outgoing connections to the connection partner and only for incoming connections from the connection partner if they could be identified on the basis of the calling party number.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>ISDN 64 kbps</i>: For 64-kbps ISDN data connections. • <i>ISDN 56 kbps</i>: For 56-kbps ISDN data connections.
User Name	Enter your device code (local PPP user name).
Remote User (for Dial-in only)	Enter the code of the remote terminal (remote PPP user name).
Password	Enter the password.
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Only activate this option if you have Internet access with a flat-rate charge.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled.</p> <p>Enter the idle interval in seconds. This determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 3600 (seconds). 0 deactivates the timeout. The default value is 20.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Static</i> (default value): You enter a static IP address. • <i>Provide IP Address</i>: Your device dynamically assigns an IP address to the remote terminal. • <i>Get IP Address</i>: Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address.
Default Route	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i> and <i>Get IP Address</i></p> <p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i> and <i>Get IP Address</i></p> <p>When you configure an ISDN Internet connection, specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Assign the IP address from your LAN to the ISDN interface which is to be used as your device's internal source address.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Define other routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network. • <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask. • <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values 0... 15). The default value is 1.

Field	Description
IP Assignment Pool	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Provide IP Address</i></p> <p>Select IP pools configured in the WAN->Internet + Dialup->IP Pools menu. If an IP pool has not been configured here yet, the message <i>Not yet defined</i> appears in this field.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p>
Maximum Number of Dialup Retries	<p>Enter the number of unsuccessful attempts to setup a connection before the interface is blocked.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>100</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Usage Type	<p>If necessary, select a special interface use.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Standard</i> (default value): No special type is selected. • <i>Dialin only</i>: The interface is used for incoming dialup connections and callbacks initiated externally. • <i>Multi-User (Dialin only)</i>: The interface is defined as multi-user connection partner, i.e. several clients dial in with the same user name and password.
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this PPTP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>PAP</i> (default value): Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted. • <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, on denial then the authentication protocol required by the connection partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
Encryption	<p>Only for Authentication = <i>MS-CHAPv2</i></p> <p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. This is only possible if STAC or MS-STAC compression is not activated for the connection. If Encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): MPP encryption is not used.• <i>Enabled</i>: MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used to RFC 3078.• <i>Windows compatible</i>: MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used as compatible with Microsoft and Cisco.
Callback Mode	<p>Select the Callback Mode function.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Your device does not call back.• <i>Active</i>: Select one of the following options:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>No PPP negotiation</i>: Your device calls the connection partner to request a callback.• <i>Windows Client Mode</i>: Your device calls the connection partner to request a callback via CBCP (Callback Control Protocol). Needed for Windows clients.• <i>Passive</i>: Select one of the following options:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PPP Negotiation or CLID</i>: Your device calls back immediately when requested to do so by the connection partner.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Windows Server Mode</i>: Your device calls back after a period of time suggested by the Microsoft client (NT: 10 seconds, new systems: 12 seconds. It uses the call number (Entries->Call Number) with the Mode <i>Outgoing</i> or <i>Both</i> entered for the connection partner. If no number is entered, the required number can be reported by the caller in a PPP negotiation. This setting should be avoided where possible for security reasons. At present, this cannot be avoided when connecting mobile Microsoft clients via a DCN.• <i>Delayed, CLID only</i>: Your device calls back after approx. four seconds if your device is requested to do so by the connection partner. Only makes sense for CLID.• <i>Windows Server Mode, Callback optional</i>: like <i>Windows Server Mode</i> with the option of termination. This setting should be avoided for security reasons. The Microsoft client also has the option of aborting callback and maintaining the initial connection to your device without callback. This only applies if no fixed, outgoing number has been configured for the connection partner. This is done by closing the dialog box that appears with Cancel.

Fields in the Bandwith on Demand Options menu.

Field	Description
Channel Bundling	<p>Select whether channel bundling is to be used for ISDN connections with the connection partner, and if so, what type.</p> <p>Your device supports dynamic and static channel bundling for dialup connections. Only one B-channel is initially opened when a connection is set up. Dynamic channel bundling means that your device connects other ISDN B channels to increase the throughput for connections if this is required, e.g. for large data rates. If the amount of data traffic drops, the additional B-channels are closed again. In static channel bundling, you specify right from the start how many B-channels your device is to use, regardless of the transferred data rate.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): No channel bundling, only one B-channel is ever available for connections.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i>: Static channel bundling.• <i>Dynamic</i>: Dynamic channel bundling.

Fields in the Dial Numbers menu

Field	Description
Entries	Add new entries with Add .

Fields in menu Dial Number Configuration (appears only for Entries = Add)

Field	Description
Mode	<p>Only if Entries = <i>Add</i></p> <p>Defines whether Call Number should be used for incoming or outgoing calls or for both. Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Both</i> (default value): For incoming and outgoing calls.• <i>Incoming</i>: For incoming calls, where your connection partner dials in to your device.• <i>Outgoing</i>: For outgoing calls, where you dial your connection partner. <p>The calling party number of the incoming call is compared with the number entered under Call Number.</p>
Call Number	Enter the connection partner's numbers.
Number of Used Ports	Select which port is used.

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Mode	<p>Select whether and how routes are propagated via the interface and/or OSPF protocol packets are sent.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is activated for this interface, i.e. routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is disabled for this interface.
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether and how ARP requests from your own LAN are to be responded to for the specified connection partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this connection partner.• <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Dormant</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.• <i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> , i.e. a connection already exists to the connection partner.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server and WINS Server Primary and Secondary from the connection partner or sends these to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

17.1.5 AUX

In the **WAN+Internet + Dialup+AUX** menu, a list of all AUX interfaces is displayed.

You can define various settings for communication between the gateway and modem in this menu. You require a special cable for the console port of your gateway (e.g. AUX Backup cable) to connect an external analogue modem to the AUX port on a Teldat gateway.

17.1.5.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new AUX interfaces.

PPPoE

PPTP

ISDN

AUX

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

Description

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐ Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

600

Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☐ Static ☐ Provide IP Address ☒ Get IP Address

Default Route

☒ Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☒ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

50

Seconds

Maximum Number of Dialup Retries

5

Usage Type

☒ Standard ☐ Dialin only ☐ Multi-User (Dialin only)

Authentication

PAP

DNS Negotiation

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

Callback Mode

☒ None ☐ Active ☐ Passive

Dial Numbers

Entries

Mode

Number

Add

IP Options

Proxy ARP Mode

☒ Inactive ☐ Up or Dormant ☐ Up only

OK

Cancel

Fig. 120: WAN->Internet + Dialup->AUX->New

The **WAN->Internet + Dialup->AUX->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a name for uniquely identifying the WAN partner. The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.

Field	Description
User Name	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password.
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Only activate this option if you have Internet access with a flat-rate charge.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled.</p> <p>Enter the idle time in seconds for static short hold. The static short hold setting determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the short hold.</p> <p>The default value is <i>600</i>.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically or whether it should be assigned this dynamically at the remote terminal.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Get IP Address</i> (default value): Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address. • <i>Static</i>: You enter a static IP address. • <i>Provide IP Address</i>: Your device dynamically assigns an IP address to the remote terminal.
Default Route	<p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is enabled by default.
Create NAT Policy	<p>Specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the static IP address of the connection partner.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Define other routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <p>Add new entries with Add.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values <i>0... 15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.
IP Assignment Pool	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = <i>Provide IP Address</i></p> <p>Select IP pools configured in the WAN->Internet + Dialup->IP Pools menu. If an IP pool has not been configured here yet, the message <i>Not yet defined</i> appears in this field.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed.</p> <p>The default value is <i>50</i>.</p>
Maximum Number of Dialup Retries	<p>Enter the number of unsuccessful attempts to setup a connection before the interface is blocked.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>100</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Usage Type	<p>If necessary, select a special interface use.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Standard</i> (default value): No special type is selected.• <i>Dialin only</i>: The interface is used for incoming dialup connections and callbacks initiated externally.• <i>Multi-User (Dialin only)</i> : The interface is defined as multi-user connection partner, i.e. several clients dial in with the same user name and password.
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this PPTP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, on denial, the authentication protocol required by the PPTP partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>PAP</i> (default value): Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server from the connection partner or sends these to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Field	Description
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This makes it possible to switch to a backup connection more quickly in the event of line faults.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Callback Mode	<p>Select the Callback Mode function.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>None</i> (default value): Your device does not call back. • <i>Active</i>: Select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>No PPP negotiation</i>: Your device calls the connection partner to request a callback. • <i>Windows Client Mode</i>: Your device calls the connection partner to request a callback via CBCP (Callback Control Protocol). Needed for Windows clients. • <i>Passive</i>: Select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>PPP Negotiation or CLID</i>: Your device calls back immediately when requested to do so by the connection partner. • <i>Windows Server Mode</i>: Your device calls back after a period of time suggested by the Microsoft client (NT: 10 seconds, new systems: 12 seconds. It uses the call number (Entries->Number) with the Mode <i>Outgoing</i> or <i>Both</i> entered for the connection partner. If no number is entered, the required number can be reported by the caller in a PPP negotiation. This setting should be avoided where possible for security reasons. Currently cannot be avoided for the connection of mobile Microsoft clients via DCN. • <i>Delayed, CLID only</i>: Your device calls back after ap-

Field	Description
	<p>prox. four seconds if your device is requested to do so by the connection partner. Only makes sense for CLID.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Windows Server Mode, Callback optional</i>: like <i>Windows Server Mode</i> with the option of termination. This setting should be avoided for security reasons. The Microsoft client also has the option of aborting callback and maintaining the initial connection to your device without callback. This only applies if no fixed, outgoing number has been configured for the connection partner. This is done by pressing CANCEL to close the dialog box that appears.

Fields in the Dial Numbers menu.

Field	Description
Entries	Add new entries with Add .

Fields in the menu **Dial Number Configuration** entry: <1> (only appears for **Entries = Add**)

Field	Description
Mode	<p>Only if Entries = Add</p> <p>Defines whether Number should be used for incoming or outgoing calls or for both. Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Both</i> (default value): For incoming and outgoing calls.• <i>Incoming</i>: For incoming calls, where your connection partner dials in to your device.• <i>Outgoing</i>: For outgoing calls, where you dial your connection partner. <p>The calling party number of the incoming call is compared with the number entered under Number.</p>
Call Number	Enter the connection partner's numbers.

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether and how ARP requests from your own LAN are to be responded to for the specified connection partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this

Field	Description
	<p>connection partner.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Idle</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.• <i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> , i.e. a connection already exists to the connection partner.


17.1.6 IP Pools

The **IP Pools** menu displays a list of all IP pools.

Your device can operate as a dynamic IP address server for PPP connections. You can use this function by providing one or more pools of IP addresses. These IP addresses can be assigned to dialling-in connection partners for the duration of the connection.

Any host routes entered always have priority over IP addresses from the address pools. This means that, if an incoming call has been authenticated, your device first checks whether a host route is entered in the routing table for this caller. If not, your device can allocate an IP address from an address pool (if available). If address pools have more than one IP address, you cannot specify which connection partner receives which address. The addresses are initially assigned in order. If a new dial-in takes place within an interval of one hour, an attempt is made to allocate the same IP address that was assigned to this partner the previous time.

17.1.6.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP address pools. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

PPPoE

PPTP

PPPoA

ISDN

IP Pools

Basic Parameters

IP Pool Name

IP Address Range

-

DNS Server

Primary

Secondary

OK

Cancel

Fig. 121: WAN->Internet + Dialup+IP Pools->New

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
IP Pool Name	Enter any description to uniquely identify the IP pool.
IP Address Range	Enter the first (first field) and last (second field) IP address of the IP address pool.
DNS Server	Primary: Enter the IP address of the DNS server that is to be used, preferably, by clients who draw an address from this pool. Secondary: Optionally, enter the IP address of an alternative DNS server.

17.2 ATM

ATM (Asynchronous Transfer Mode) is a data transmission procedure that was originally designed for broadband ISDN.

ATM is currently used in high-speed networks. You will need ATM, for example, if you want high-speed access to the Internet via the integrated ADSL or SHDSL modem.

In an ATM network, different applications such as speech, video and data, can be transmitted side-by-side in the asynchronous time multiplex procedure. Each transmitter is provided with time sections for transmitting data. With asynchronous transmission, unused time sections of a transmitter are used by another transmitter.

With ATM, the packet switching procedure is connected-based. A virtual connection is used for data transmission that negotiates between the transmitter and recipient or is configured on both sides. This determines the route that the data should take, for example. Multiple virtual connections can be set up over a single physical interface.

The data is transmitted in so-called cells or slots of constant size. Each cell consists of 48 bytes of usage data and 5 bytes of control information. The control information contains, amongst other things, the ATM address which is similar to the Internet address. The ATM address is made up of the Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) and the Virtual Connection Identifier (VCI); this identifies the virtual connection.

Various types of traffic flows are transported over ATM. To take account of the various demands of these traffic flows on the networks, e.g. in terms of cell loss and delay time, suitable values can be defined using the service categories. Uncompressed video data, for example, requires different parameters to time-uncritical data.

In ATM networks Quality of Service (QoS) is available, i.e. the size of various network parameters, such as bit rate, delay and jitter can be guaranteed.

OAM (Operation, Administration and Maintenance) is used to monitor the data transmission in ATM. OAM includes configuration management, error management and performance measurement.

17.2.1 Profiles

A list of all ATM profiles is displayed in the **WAN->ATM->Profiles** menu.

If the connection for your Internet access is set up using the internal modem, the ATM connection parameters must be set for this. An ATM profile combines a set of parameters for a specific provider.

By default an ATM profile with the description *AUTO-CREATED* is preconfigured. Its values (VPI 1 and VCI 32) are suitable for a Telekom ATM connection, for example.



Note

The ATM encapsulations are described in RFCs 1483 and 2684. You will find the RFCs on the relevant pages of the IETF (www.ietf.org/rfc.html).

17.2.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new ATM profiles.

Profiles

Service Categories

OAM Controlling

ATM Profiles Parameter

Provider

- User-defined -

Description

Type

Ethernet over ATM

Virtual Path Identifier (VPI)

8

Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI)

32

Encapsulation

LLC Bridged no FCS

Ethernet over ATM Settings

Default Ethernet for PPPoE Interfaces

☐ Enabled

Address Mode

☒ Static ☐ DHCP

IP Address/Netmask

IP Address

Netmask

Add

MAC Address

☒ Use built-in

OK

Cancel

Fig. 122: WAN->ATM->Profiles->New

The menu WAN->ATM->Profiles->New consists of the following fields:

Fields in the ATM Profiles Parameter menu.

Field	Description
Provider	Select one of the preconfigured ATM profiles for your provider from the list or manually define the profile using -- User-defined --.
Description	Only for Provider = -- User-defined -- Enter the desired description for the connection.
ATM Interface	Only if several ATM interfaces are available, e.g. if several interfaces are separately configured in devices with SHDSL. Select the ATM interface that you wish to use for the connection.
Type	Only for Provider = -- User-defined -- Select the protocol for the ATM connection. Possible values:

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Ethernet over ATM</i> (default value): Ethernet over ATM (EthoA) is used for the ATM connection (Permanent Virtual Circuit, PVC).• <i>Routed Protocols over ATM</i>: Routed Protocols over ATM (RPoA) is used for the ATM connection (Permanent Virtual Circuit, PVC).• <i>PPP over ATM</i>: PPP over ATM (PPPoA) is used for the ATM connection (Permanent Virtual Circuit, PVC).
Virtual Path Identifier (VPI)	<p>Only for Provider = -- <i>User-defined</i> --</p> <p>Enter the VPI value of the ATM connection. The VPI is the identification number of the virtual path to be used. Note your provider's instructions.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 255.</p> <p>The default value is 8.</p>
Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI)	<p>Only for Provider = -- <i>User-defined</i> --</p> <p>Enter the VCI value of the ATM connection. The VCI is the identification number of the virtual channel. A virtual channel is the logical connection for the transport of ATM cells between two or more points. Note your provider's instructions.</p> <p>Possible values are 32 to 65535.</p> <p>The default value is 32.</p>
Encapsulation	<p>Only for Provider = -- <i>User-defined</i> --</p> <p>Select the encapsulation to be used. Note your provider's instructions.</p> <p>Possible values (in accordance with RFC 2684):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LLC Bridged no FCS</i> (Default value for Ethernet over ATM : Is only displayed for Type = <i>Ethernet over ATM</i>. <p>Bridged Ethernet with LLC/SNAP encapsulation without Frame Check Sequence (checksums).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LLC Bridged FCS</i>: only displayed for Type = <i>Ethernet over ATM</i>.

Field	Description
	<p>Bridged Ethernet with LLC/SNAP encapsulation with Frame Check Sequence (checksums).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Non ISO</i> (default value for Routed Protocols over ATM): Is only displayed for Type = <i>Routed Protocols over ATM</i>. <p>Encapsulation with LLC/SNAP header, suitable for IP routing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LLC</i>: only displayed for Type = <i>PPP over ATM</i>. <p>Encapsulation with LLC header.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>VC Multiplexing</i> (default value for PPP over ATM): Bridged Ethernet without additional encapsulation (Null Encapsulation) with Frame Check Sequence (checksums).

Fields in menu Ethernet over ATM Settings (appears only for Type = Ethernet over ATM)

Field	Description
Default Ethernet for PPPoE Interfaces	<p>Only for Type = <i>Ethernet over ATM</i></p> <p>Select whether this Ethernet-over-ATM interface is to be used for all PPPoE connections</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Address Mode	<p>Only for Type = <i>Ethernet over ATM</i></p> <p>Select how an IP address is to be assigned to the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i> (default value): The interface is assigned a static IP address in IP Address / Netmask.• <i>DHCP</i>: An IP address is assigned to the interface dynamically via DHCP.
IP Address/Netmask	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>Enter the IP addresses (IP Address) and the corresponding netmasks (Netmask) of the ATM interfaces. Add new entries with Add.</p>

Field	Description
MAC Address	<p>Enter a MAC address for the internal router interface of ATM connection, e.g. <i>00:a0:f9:06:bf:03</i>. An entry is only required in special cases.</p> <p>For Internet connections, it is sufficient to select the option Use built-in (standard setting). An address is used which is derived from the MAC address of the <i>en1-0</i>.</p>
DHCP MAC Address	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>Enter the MAC address of the internal router interface of ATM connection, e.g. <i>00:e1:f9:06:bf:03</i>.</p> <p>If your provider has assigned you an MAC address for DHCP, enter this here.</p> <p>You can also select the Use built-in option (default setting) An address is used which is derived from the MAC address of the <i>en1-0</i>.</p>
DHCP Hostname	<p>Only for Address Mode = <i>DHCP</i></p> <p>If necessary, enter the host name registered with the provider to be used by your device for DHCP requests.</p> <p>The maximum length of the entry is 45 characters.</p>

Fields in menu Routed Protocols over ATM Settings (appears only for Type = Routed Protocols over ATM)

Field	Description
IP Address/Netmask	<p>Enter the IP addresses (IP Address) and the corresponding netmasks (Netmask) of the ATM interface. Add new entries with Add.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

Field in menu PPP over ATM Settings (appears only for Type = PPP over ATM)

Field	Description
Client Type	<p>Select whether the PPPoA connection is to be set up permanently or on demand.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>On Demand</i> (default value): The PPPoA is only set up on demand, e.g. for Internet access. <p>You'll find additional information on PPP over ATM under PPPoA on page 282.</p>

17.2.2 Service Categories

In the **WAN->ATM->Service Categories** menu is displayed a list of already configured ATM connections (PVC, Permanent Virtual Circuit) to which specific data traffic parameters were assigned.

Your device supports QoS (Quality of Service) for ATM interfaces.



Caution

ATM QoS should only be used if your provider specifies a list of data traffic parameters (traffic contract).

The configuration of ATM QoS requires extensive knowledge of ATM technology and the way the Teldat devices function. An incorrect configuration can cause considerable disruption during operation. If applicable, save the original configuration on your PC.

17.2.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional categories.

ProfilesService CategoriesOAM Controlling

Basic Parameters

Virtual Channel Connection (VCC)

VPI1, VCI32

ATM Service Category

Select one

Peak Cell Rate (PCR)

0

bps

Sustained Cell Rate (SCR)

0

bps

Maximum Burst Size (MBS)

0

bps

OK

Cancel

Fig. 123: WAN->ATM->Service Categories->New

The menu **WAN->ATM->Service Categories->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Virtual Channel Connection (VCC)	Select the already configured ATM connection (displayed by the combination of VPI and VCI) for which the service category is to be defined.
ATM Service Category	<p>Select how the data traffic of the ATM connection is to be controlled.</p> <p>A priority is implicitly assigned when you select the ATM service category: from CBR (highest priority) through VBR.1 /VBR.3 to VBR (lowest priority).</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR)</i> (default value): No specific data rate is guaranteed for the connection. The Peak Cell Rate (PCR) specifies the limit above which data is discarded. This category is suitable for non-critical applications.<i>Constant Bit Rate (CBR)</i>: (Constant Bit Rate) The connection is assigned a guaranteed data rate determined by the Peak Cell Rate (PCR). This category is suitable for critical (real-time) applications that require a guaranteed data rate.<i>Variable Bit Rate V.1 (VBR.1)</i>: A guaranteed data rate is assigned to the connection - Sustained Cell Rate (SCR). This may be exceeded by the volume configured in Maximum Burst Size (MBS). Any additional ATM traffic is discarded. The Peak Cell Rate (PCR) constitutes the maximum possible data rate. This category is suitable for non-critical

Field	Description
	<p>applications with burst data traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Variable Bit Rate V.3 (VBR.3)</i>: A guaranteed data rate is assigned to the connection - Sustained Cell Rate (SCR). This may be exceeded by the volume configured in Maximum Burst Size (MBS). Additional ATM traffic is marked and handled with low priority based on the utilisation of the destination network, i.e. is discarded if necessary. The Peak Cell Rate (PCR) constitutes the maximum possible data rate. This category is suitable for critical applications with burst data traffic.
Peak Cell Rate (PCR)	<p>Enter a value for the maximum data rate in bits per second.</p> <p>Possible values: 0 to 10000000.</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p>
Sustained Cell Rate (SCR)	<p>Only for ATM Service Category = <i>Variable Bit Rate V.1 (VBR.1)</i> or <i>Variable Bit Rate V.3 (VBR.3)</i></p> <p>Enter a value for the minimum available, guaranteed data rate in bits per second.</p> <p>Possible values: 0 to 10000000.</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p>
Maximum Burst Size (MBS)	<p>Only for ATM Service Category = <i>Variable Bit Rate V.1 (VBR.1)</i> or <i>Variable Bit Rate V.3 (VBR.3)</i></p> <p>Enter a value for the maximum number of bits per second by which the PCR can be exceeded briefly.</p> <p>Possible values: 0 to 100000.</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p>

17.2.3 OAM Controlling

OAM is a service for monitoring ATM connections. A total of five hierarchies (flow level F1 to F5) are defined for OAM information flow. The most important information flows for an ATM connection are F4 and F5. The F4 information flow concerns the virtual path (VP) and the F5 information flow the virtual channel (VC). The VP is defined by the VPI value, the VC by VPI and VCI.



Note

Generally, monitoring is not carried out by the terminal but is initiated by the ISP. Your device then only needs to react correctly to the signals received. This is ensured without a specific OAM configuration for both flow level 4 and flow level 5.

Two mechanisms are available for monitoring the ATM connection: Loopback Tests and OAM Continuity Check (OAM CC). These can be configured independently of each other.



Caution

The configuration of OAM requires extensive knowledge of ATM technology and the way the Teldat devices functions. An incorrect configuration can cause considerable disruption during operation. If applicable, save the original configuration on your PC.

In the **WAN->ATM->OAM Controlling** menu, a list of all monitored OAM flow levels is displayed.

17.2.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up monitoring for other flow levels.

Profiles Service Categories **OAM Controlling**

OAM Flow Configuration	
OAM Flow Level	F5
Virtual Channel Connection (VCC)	VP11, VCI32
Loopback	
Loopback End-to-End	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Loopback Segment	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
CC Activation	
Continuity Check (CC) End-to-End	Passive Direction Both
Continuity Check (CC) Segment	Passive Direction Both
OK Cancel	

Fig. 124: **WAN->ATM->OAM Controlling->New**

The menu **WAN->ATM->OAM Controlling->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the OAM Flow Configuration menu.

Field	Description
OAM Flow Level	<p>Select the OAM flow level to be monitored.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>F5</i>: (virtual channel level) The OAM settings are used for the virtual channel (default value).• <i>F4</i>: (virtual path level) The OAM settings are used on the virtual path.
Virtual Channel Connection (VCC)	<p>Only for OAM Flow Level = <i>F5</i></p> <p>Select the already configured ATM connection to be monitored (displayed by the combination of VPI and VCI).</p>
Virtual Path Connection (VPC)	<p>Only for OAM Flow Level = <i>F4</i></p> <p>Select the already configured virtual path connection to be monitored (displayed by the VPI).</p>

Fields in the Loopback menu.

Field	Description
Loopback End-to-End	<p>Select whether you activate the loopback test for the connection between the endpoints of the VCC or VPC.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
End-to-End Send Interval	<p>Only if Loopback End-to-End is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the time in seconds after which a loopback cell is to be sent.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>999</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
End-to-End Pending Requests	<p>Only if Loopback End-to-End is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the number of directly consecutive loopback cells that may fail to materialise before the connection is regarded as interrupted ("down"). Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>99</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>

Field	Description
Loopback Segment	<p>Select whether you want to activate the loopback test for the segment connection (segment = connection of the local end-point to the next connection point) of the VCC or VPC.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Segment Send Interval	<p>Only if Loopback Segment is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the time in seconds after which a loopback cell is sent.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 999.</p> <p>The default value is 5.</p>
Segment Pending Requests	<p>Only if Loopback Segment is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the number of directly consecutive loopback cells that may fail to materialise before the connection is regarded as interrupted ("down").</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 99.</p> <p>The default value is 5.</p>

Fields in the CC Activation menu.

Field	Description
Continuity Check (CC) End-to-End	<p>Select whether you activate the OAM-CC test for the connection between the endpoints of the VCC or VPC.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Passive</i> (default value): OAM CC requests are responded to after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation). • <i>Active</i>: OAM CC requests are sent after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation). • <i>Both</i>: OAM CC requests are sent and answered after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation). • <i>No negotiation</i>: Depending on the setting in the Direction field, OAM CC requests are either sent and/or responded to. There is no CC negotiation. • <i>Passive</i>: The function is disabled.

Field	Description
	<p>Also select whether the test cells of the OAM CC are to be sent or received.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Both</i> (default value): CC data is both received and generated.• <i>Sink</i>: CC data is received.• <i>Source</i>: CC data is generated.
Continuity Check (CC) Segment	<p>Select whether you want to activate the OAM-CC test for the segment connection (segment = connection of the local end-point to the next connection point) of the VCC or VPC.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OAM CC requests are responded to after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation).• <i>Active</i>: OAM CC requests are sent after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation).• <i>Both</i>: OAM CC requests are sent and answered after CC negotiation (CC activation negotiation).• <i>No negotiation</i>: Depending on the setting in the Direction field, OAM CC requests are either sent and/or responded to. There is no CC negotiation.• <i>None</i>: The function is disabled. <p>Also select whether the test cells of the OAM CC are to be sent or received.</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Both</i> (default value): CC data is both received and generated.• <i>Sink</i>: CC data is received.• <i>Source</i>: CC data is generated.

17.3 Leased Line

A leased line is a permanent (fixed) connection between two communication partners via a telecommunications network. Unlike a switched line, the entire transmission channels is always available. The leased line cannot be set up by the subscriber by dialling and therefore has no call number. The connection must be set up by the network operator.

17.3.1 Interfaces


In the **WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces** menu, a list of all is displayed. Automatic generation requires the corresponding ISDN interface to be configured.

Interfaces

Autogenerated from BRI (ISDN-S0)						
Description	Type	Protocol	Port	Status	Action	
bri2-0-1	Leased Line B1 64S	PPP	bri2-0			
Autogenerated from PRI (ISDN-S2M)						
Description	Type	Protocol	Port	Status	Action	
pri2-4-0	Leased Line, 1 Hyperchannel (G.703 + G.704)	PPP	pri2-4			

Fig. 125: **WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces**

17.3.1.1 Edit

Choose the  button to edit the configuration of the corresponding leased line for a BRI interface.

Interfaces

Basic Parameters

Description

IP Mode and Routes

Default Route

☐ Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Advanced Settings

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

Compression

☒ None ☐ STAC ☐ MS-STAC ☐ MPPC

IP Options

OSPF Mode


☒ Passive ☐ Active ☐ Inactive

Proxy ARP Mode

☒ Inactive ☐ Up or Dormant ☐ Up only

OK

Cancel

Fig. 126: WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces->Autogenerated from BRI (ISDN-S0)->

The WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces->Autogenerated from BRI (ISDN-S0)-> menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description for the connection.

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
Default Route	<div>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</div> <div>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</div> <div>The function is disabled by default.</div>

Field	Description
Local IP Address	Enter the IP address you received from your network operator.
Route Entries	Define other routing entries for this connection class. Add new entries with Add .

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:


Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
LCP Alive Check	Select whether the reachability of the remote terminal is to be checked. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is enabled by default.
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
Compression	If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. If encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Encryption is not used.• <i>STAC</i>• <i>MS-STAC</i>• <i>MPPC</i>: Microsoft Point-to-Point Compression

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Mode	Specify whether OSPF protocol packets are sent over the interface. Possible values:

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface.• <i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is disabled for this interface.
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether and how ARP requests are to be responded to for the specified connection partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this connection partner.• <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Idle</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.• <i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> , i.e. a connection already exists to the connection partner.

Choose the  button to edit the configuration of the corresponding leased line for a PRI interface.

Interfaces

Basic Parameters

Description

IP Mode and Routes

Default Route

☐ Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Advanced Settings

LCP Alive Check

☒ Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

☐ Enabled

Compression

☒ None ☐ STAC ☐ MS-STAC ☐ MPPC

IP Options

OSPF Mode


☒ Passive ☐ Active ☐ Inactive

Proxy ARP Mode

☒ Inactive ☐ Up or Dormant ☐ Up only

OK

Cancel

Fig. 127: WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces->Autogenerated from PRI (ISDN-S2M)->

The WAN->Leased Line->Interfaces->Autogenerated from PRI (ISDN-S2M)-> menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description for the connection.

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
Default Route	Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
Local IP Address	Enter the IP address you received from your network operator.
Route Entries	Define other routing entries for this connection class. Add new entries with Add .

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the reachability of the remote terminal is to be checked.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Compression	<p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. If encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Encryption is not used.• <i>STAC</i>• <i>MS-STAC</i>• <i>MPPC</i>: Microsoft Point-to-Point Compression

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Mode	<p>Specify whether OSPF protocol packets are sent over the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. OSPF

Field	Description
	<p>protocol packets sent over this interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is disabled for this interface.
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether and how ARP requests are to be responded to for the specified connection partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this connection partner. • <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i> or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Idle</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route. • <i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the connection partner is <i>Up</i>, i.e. a connection already exists to the connection partner.

17.4 Real Time Jitter Control

When telephoning over the Internet, voice data packets normally have the highest priority. Nevertheless, if the upstream bandwidth is low, noticeable delays in voice transmission can occur when other packets are routed at the same time.

The real time jitter control function solves this problem. So that the "line" is not blocked for too long for the voice data packets, the size of the other packets can be reduced, if required, during a telephone call.

17.4.1 Controlled Interfaces

In the **WAN->Real Time Jitter Control->Controlled Interfaces** a list of functions is displayed for which the Real Time Jitter Control function is configured.

17.4.1.1 New

Click the **New** button to optimise voice transmission for other interfaces.

Controlled Interfaces

Basic Settings

Interface

None

Control Mode

Controlled RTP Streams only

Maximum Upload Speed

0

kbps

OK

Cancel

Fig. 128: WAN->Real Time Jitter Control->Controlled Interfaces->New

The menu **WAN->Real Time Jitter Control->Controlled Interfaces->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Settings menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Define for which interfaces voice transmission is to be optimised.
Control Mode	<div>Select the mode for the optimisation.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Controlled RTP Streams only</i> (default value): By means of the data routed via the media gateway, the system detects voice data traffic and optimises the voice transmission.<i>All RTP Streams</i>: All RTP streams are optimised.<i>Inactive</i>: Voice data transmission is not optimised.<i>Always</i>: Voice data transmission is always optimised.
Maximum Upload Speed	Enter the maximum available upstream bandwidth in kbp/s for the selected interface.

Chapter 18 VPN

A connection that uses the Internet as a "transport medium" but is not publicly accessible is referred to as a VPN (Virtual Private Network). Only authorised users have access to such a VPN, which is seemingly also referred to as a VPN tunnel. Normally the data transported over a VPN is encrypted.

A VPN allows field staff or staff working from home offices to access data on the company's network. Subsidiaries can also connect to head office over VPN.

Various protocols are available for creating a VPN tunnel, e.g. IPSec or PPTP.

The connection partner is authenticated with a password, using preshared keys or certificates.

With IPSec the data is encrypted using AES or 3DES, for example; with PPTP, you can use MPPE.

18.1 IPSec

IPSec enables secure connections to be set up between two locations (VPN). This enables sensitive business data to be transferred via an unsecure medium such as the Internet. The devices used function here as the endpoints of the VPN tunnel. IPSec involves a number of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standards, which specify mechanisms for the protection and authentication of IP packets. IPSec offers mechanisms for encrypting and decrypting the data transferred in the IP packets. The IPSec implementation can also be smoothly integrated in a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI, see [Certificates](#) on page 106). IPSec implementation achieves this firstly by using the Authentication Header (AH) protocol and Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP) protocol and secondly through the use of cryptographic key administration mechanisms like the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol.

Additional Traffic Filter

Teldat gateways support two different methods of setting up IPSec connections:

- a method based on policies and
- a method based on routing.

The policy-based method can only be configured using the Setup tool. With the GUI, you use the routing-based method. (The routing-based method is also available using the Setup tool.)

The policy-based method uses data traffic filters to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs. This allows for a very "fine-grained" filter to be applied to the IP packet, even at the level of the protocol and the port.

The routing-based method offers various advantages over the policy-based method, e.g., NAT/PAT within a tunnel, IPSec in combination with routing protocols and the creation of VPN backup scenarios. With the routing-based method, the configured or dynamically learned routes are used to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs. Although this method does simplify many configurations, problems may also be caused by competing routes or the "coarser" filtering of data traffic.

The **Additional Traffic Filter** parameter fixes this problem. You can apply a "finer" filter, i.e. you can enter the source IP address or the source port. If a **Additional Traffic Filter** is configured, this is used to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs; the route now only determines which data traffic is to be routed.

If an IP packet does not match the defined **Additional Traffic Filter**, it is rejected.

If an IP packet meets the requirements in an **Additional Traffic Filter**, IPSec phase 2 negotiation begins and data traffic is transferred over the tunnel.



Note

The parameter **Additional Traffic Filter** is exclusively relevant for the initiator of the IPSec connection, it is only used for outgoing traffic.



Note

Please note that the phase 2 policies must be configured identically on both of the IPSec tunnel endpoints.

18.1.1 IPSec Peers

An endpoint of a communication is defined as peer in a computer network. Each peer offers its services and uses the services of other peers.

A list of all configured IPSec Peers is displayed in the **VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers** menu.

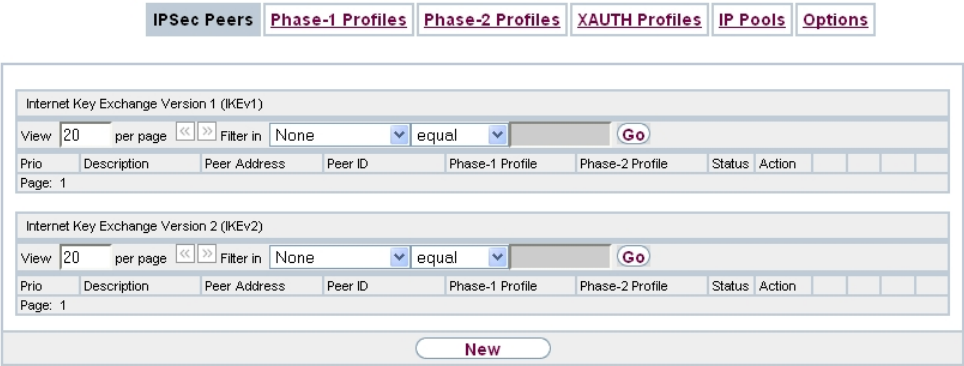



Fig. 129: VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers

Peer Monitoring

The menu for monitoring a peer is called by selecting the  button for the peer in the peer list. See [Values in the IPsec Tunnels list](#) on page 532.

18.1.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up more IPsec peers.

IPSec Peers

Phase-1 Profiles

Phase-2 Profiles

XAUTH Profiles

IP Pools

Options

Peer Parameters

Administrative Status

☒ Up ☐ Down

Description

Peer-1

Peer Address

Peer ID

Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)
Peer-1.

Internet Key Exchange

IKEv1

Preshared Key

Interface Routes

IP Address Assignment

Static

Default Route

☐ Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Additional Traffic Filter

Description

Protocol

Src. IP/Mask:Port

Dest. IP/Mask:Port

Add

Advanced Settings

Advanced IPSec Options

Phase-1 Profile

None (use default profile)

Phase-2 Profile

None (use default profile)

XAUTH Profile

Select one

Number of Admitted Connections

☒ One User ☐ Multiple Users

Start Mode

☒ On Demand ☐ Always up

Advanced IP Options

Public Source IP Address

☐ Enabled

Back Route Verify

☐ Enabled

Proxy ARP

☒ Inactive ☐ Up or Dormant ☐ Up only

OK

Cancel

Fig. 130: VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers->New

The menu **VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu **Peer Parameters**

Field	Description
Administrative Status	Select the status to which you wish to set the peer after saving the peer configuration.

bintec Rxxx2/RTxxx2

327

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Up</i> (default value): The peer is available for setting up a tunnel immediately after saving the configuration.• <i>Down</i>: The peer is initially not available after the configuration has been saved.
Description	<p>Enter a description of the peer that identifies it.</p> <p>The maximum length of the entry is 255 characters.</p>
Peer Address	<p>Enter the official IP address of the peer or its resolvable host name.</p> <p>The entry can be omitted in certain configurations, whereby your device then cannot initiate an IPSec connection.</p>
Peer ID	<p>Select the ID type and enter the peer ID.</p> <p>This entry is not necessary in certain configurations.</p> <p>The maximum length of the entry is 255 characters.</p> <p>Possible ID types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)</i>• <i>E-mail Address</i>• <i>IPv4 Address</i>• <i>ASN.1-DN (Distinguished Name)</i>• <i>Key ID: Any string</i> <p>On the peer device, this ID corresponds to the Local ID Value.</p>
Internet Key Exchange	<p>Not available to devices in the Wlxxxxn series. These devices only support IKEv1.</p> <p>Select the version of the Internet Exchange Protocol to be used.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>IKEv1</i> (default value): Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 1• <i>IKEv2</i>: Internet Kex Exchange Protocol Version 2

Field	Description
Authentication Method	<p>Only for Internet Key Exchange = <i>IKEv2</i></p> <p>Select the authentication method.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Preshared Keys</i> (default value): If you do not use certificates for the authentication, you can select Preshared Keys. These are configured during peer configuration in the IPSec Peers. The preshared key is the shared password.• <i>RSA Signature</i>: Phase 1 key calculations are authenticated using the RSA algorithm.
Local ID Type	<p>Only for Internet Key Exchange = <i>IKEv2</i></p> <p>Select the local ID type.</p> <p>Possible ID types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)</i>• <i>E-mail Address</i>• <i>IPV4 Address</i>• <i>ASN.1-DN (Distinguished Name)</i>• <i>Key ID</i>: Any string
Local ID	<p>Only for Internet Key Exchange = <i>IKEv2</i></p> <p>Enter the ID of your device.</p> <p>For Authentication Method = <i>DSA Signature</i> or <i>RSA Signature</i> the Use Subject Name from certificate option is displayed.</p> <p>When you enable the Use Subject Name from certificate option, the first alternative subject name indicated in the certificate is used, or, if none is specified, the subject name of the certificate is used.</p> <p>Note: If you use certificates for authentication and your certificate contains alternative subject names (see Certificates on page 106), you must make sure your device selects the first alternative subject name by default. Make sure you and your peer both use the same name, i.e. that your local ID and the peer ID your partner configures for you are identical.</p>

Field	Description
Preshared Key	<p>Enter the password agreed with the peer.</p> <p>The maximum length of the entry is 50 characters. All characters are possible except for <i>0x</i> at the start of the entry.</p>

Fields in the menu Interface Routes

Field	Description
IP Address Assignment	<p>Select the configuration mode of the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i> (default value): Enter a static IP address.• <i>IKE Config Mode Client</i>: Can only be selected for IKEv1: Select this option if your gateway receives an IP address from the server as IPSec client.• <i>IKE Config Mode Server</i>: Select this option if your gateway assigns an IP address as server for connecting clients. This is taken from the selected IP Assignment Pool.
Config Mode	<p>Only for IP Address Assignment = <i>IKE Config Mode Server</i> or <i>IKE Config Mode Client</i></p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Pull</i> (default value): The client requests the IP address and the gateway answers the request.• <i>Push</i>: The gateway suggests an IP address to the client and the client must either accept or reject this. <p>This value must be identical for both sides of the tunnel.</p>
IP Assignment Pool	<p>Only if IP Address Assignment = <i>IKE Config Mode Server</i></p> <p>Select an IP pool configured in the VPN->IPSec->IP Pools menu. If an IP pool has not been configured here yet, the message <i>Not yet defined</i> appears in this field.</p>
Default Route	<p>Only for IP Address Assignment = <i>Static</i> or <i>IKE Config Mode Client</i></p> <p>Select whether the route to this IPSec peer is to be defined as</p>

Field	Description
	<p>the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for IP Address Assignment = <i>Static</i> or <i>IKE Config Mode Server</i></p> <p>Enter the WAN IP address of your IPSec tunnel. This can be the same IP address as the address configured on your router as the LAN IP address.</p>
Metric	<p>Only for IP Address Assignment = <i>Static</i> or <i>IKE Config Mode Client</i> and Default Route = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>Select the priority of the route.</p> <p>The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route.</p> <p>Value range from <i>0</i> to <i>15</i>. The default value is <i>1</i>.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only for IP Address Assignment = <i>Static</i> or <i>IKE Config Mode Client</i></p> <p>Define routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or LAN.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for <i>Remote IP Address</i>.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (possible values <i>0..15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.

Fields in the menu Additional Traffic Filter

Field	Description
Additional Traffic Filter	<p>Only for Internet Key Exchange = <i>IKEv1</i></p> <p>Use Add to create a new filter.</p>

Additional data traffic filters

Teldat Gateways support two different methods for establishing IPSec connections:

- a method based on policies and
- a method based on routing.

The policy-based method can only be configured using the Setup tool. With the GUI, you use the routing-based method. (The latter is also available using the Setup tool.)

The policy-based method uses data traffic filters to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs. This enables the filtering of the IP packets to be very "fine grained" down to protocol and port level.

The routing-based method offers various advantages over the policy-based method, e.g., NAT/PAT within a tunnel, IPSec in combination with routing protocols and the creation of VPN backup scenarios. With the routing-based method, the configured or dynamically learned routes are used to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs. While it is true that this method simplifies many configurations, at the same time there can be problems due to competing routes or the "coarser" filtering of the data traffic.

The **Additional Traffic Filter** parameter fixes this problem. You can filter more "finely", i. e. you can, e. g., specify the source IP address or the source port. If there is a **Additional Traffic Filter** configured, it is used to negotiate the IPSec phase 2 SAs; the route only determines which data traffic is to be routed.

If an IP packet does not match the defined **Additional Traffic Filter** it is discarded.

If an IP packet meets the requirements in an **Additional Traffic Filter**, IPSec phase 2 negotiation begins and data traffic is transferred over the tunnel.



Note

The **Additional Traffic Filter** parameter is only relevant to the initiator of the IPSec connection, it only applies to outgoing data traffic.



Note

Please note that the phase 2 policies must be configured identically on both of the IPSec tunnel endpoints.

Add new entries with **Add**.

IPSec Peers

Phase-1 Profiles

Phase-2 Profiles

XAUTH Profiles

IP Pools

Options

Peer Parameters

Administrative Status

☒ Up ☐ Down

Description

Peer-1

Peer Address

Peer ID

Internet Key

Interface Role

IP Address

Default Role

Local IP Address

Metric

1

Additional Traffic Filter

Additional Traffic Filter

Basic Parameters

Description

Protocol

Any

Source IP Address/Netmask

Network

Destination IP Address/Netmask

Network

Apply

Cancel

Advanced Settings

OK

Cancel

Fig. 131: VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers->New->Add

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for the filter.
Protocol	Select a protocol. The <i>Any</i> option (default value) matches any protocol.
Source IP Address/Netmask	Enter, if required, the source IP address and netmask of the data packets. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Any</i><i>Host</i>: Enter the IP address of the host.<i>Network</i> (default value): Enter the network address and the related netmask.
Source Port	Only for Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i> Enter the source port of the data packets. The default setting –

Field	Description
	<i>All</i> - (= -1) means that the port is not specified.
Destination IP Address/Netmask	Enter the destination IP address and corresponding netmask of the data packets.
Destination Port	Only for Protocol = <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i> Enter the destination port of the data packets. The default setting <i>-All</i> - (= -1) means that the port is not specified.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Advanced IPsec Options

Field	Description
Phase-1 Profile	Select a profile for Phase 1. Besides user-defined profiles, pre-defined profiles are available. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None (use default profile)</i>: Uses the profile marked as standard in VPN->IPsec->Phase-1 Profiles• <i>Multi-Proposal</i>: Uses a special profile which contains the proposals for Phase 1 3DES/MD5, AES/MD5 and Blowfish/MD5 regardless of the proposal selection in menu VPN->IPsec->Phase-1 Profiles.• <i><Profilname></i>: Uses a profile configured in menu VPN->IPsec->Phase-1 Profiles for Phase 1.
Phase-2 Profile	Select a profile for Phase 2. Besides user-defined profiles, pre-defined profiles are available. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None (use default profile)</i>: Uses the profile marked as standard in VPN->IPsec->Phase-2 Profiles• <i>Multi-Proposal</i>: Uses a special profile which contains the proposals for Phase 2 3DES/MD5, AES-128/MD5 and Blowfish/MD5 regardless of the proposal selection in menu VPN->IPsec->Phase-2 Profiles.• <i><Profilname></i>: Uses a profile configured in menu VPN->IPsec->Phase-2 Profiles for Phase 2.

Field	Description
XAUTH Profile	<p>Select a profile created in VPN->IPSec->XAUTH Profiles if you wish to use this IPSec peer XAuth for authentication.</p> <p>If XAuth is used together with IKE Config Mode, the transactions for XAuth are carried out before the transactions for IKE Config Mode.</p>
Number of Admitted Connections	<p>Choose how many users can connect using this peer profile.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>One User</i> (default value): Only one peer can be connected with the data defined in this profile.• <i>Multiple Users</i>: Several peers can be connected with the data defined in this profile. The peer entry is duplicated for each connection request with the data defined in this profile.
Start Mode	<p>Select how the peer is to be switched to the active state.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>On Demand</i> (default value): The peer is switched to the active state by a trigger.• <i>Always up</i>: The peer is always active.

Fields in the menu **Advanced IP Options**

Field	Description
Public Source IP Address	<p>If you are operating more than one Internet connection in parallel, you can specify here the public IP address which is to be used as the source address for the peer's data traffic. Select whether the Public Source IP Address is to be enabled.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>In the input field, enter the public IP address which is to be used as the sender address.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Back Route Verify	<p>Select whether a check on the back route should be activated for the interface to the connection partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is disabled by default.
MobiKE	<p>Only for peers with IKEv2.</p> <p>MobiKE With changing public IP addresses, enables only these addresses to be updated in the SAs, without having to renegotiate the SAs themselves.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>Note that MobiKE requires a current IPSec client, e.g. an up-to-date Windows 7 or Windows 8 client, or the most recent version of the Teldat IPSec client.</p>
Proxy ARP	<p>Select whether your device is to respond to ARP requests from its own LAN on behalf of the specific connection partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this IPSec peer.• <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the IPSec peer is <i>Up</i> (active) or <i>Dormant</i> (dormant). In the case of <i>Dormant</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.• <i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the IPSec peer is <i>Up</i> (active), i.e. a connection already exists to the IPSec peer.

IPSec Callback

Teldat devices support the DynDNS service to enable hosts without fixed IP addresses to obtain a secure connection over the Internet. This service enables a peer to be identified using a host name that can be resolved by DNS. You do not need to configure the IP address of the peer.

The DynDNS service does not signal whether a peer is actually online and cannot cause a peer to set up an Internet connection to enable an IPSec tunnel over the Internet. This possibility is created with IPSec callback: Using a direct ISDN call to a peer, you can signal that you are online and waiting for the peer to set up an IPSec tunnel over the Internet. If the called peer currently has no connection to the Internet, the ISDN call causes a connection to be set up. This ISDN call costs nothing (depending on country), as it does not have

to be accepted by your device. The identification of the caller from his or her ISDN number is enough information to initiate setting up a tunnel.

To set up this service, you must first configure a call number for IPSec callback on the passive side in the **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->MSN Configuration->New** menu. The value **Service** is available for this purpose in the *IPSec* field. This entry ensures that incoming calls for this number are routed to the IPSec service.

If callback is active, the peer is caused to initiate setting up an IPSec tunnel by an ISDN call as soon as this tunnel is required. If callback is set to passive, setting up a tunnel to the peer is always initiated if an ISDN call is received on the relevant number (**MSN** in menu **Physical Interfaces->ISDN Ports->MSN Configuration->New** for **Service** *IPSec*). This ensures that both peers are reachable and that the connection can be set up over the Internet. The only case in which callback is not executed is if SAs (Security Associations) already exist, i.e. the tunnel to the peer already exists.



Note

If a tunnel is to be set up to a peer, the interface over which the tunnel is to be implemented is activated first by the IPSec Daemon. If IPSec with DynDNS is configured on the local device, the own IP address is propagated first and then the ISDN call is sent to the remote device. This ensures that the remote device can actually reach the local device if it initiates the tunnel setup.

Transfer of IP Address over ISDN

Transferring the IP address of a device over ISDN (in the D channel and/or B channel) opens up new possibilities for the configuration of IPSec VPNs. This enables restrictions that occur in IPSec configuration with dynamic IP addresses to be avoided.



Note

To use the IP address transfer over ISDN function, you must obtain a free-of-charge extra licence.

You can obtain the licence data for extra licences via the online licensing pages in the support section at www.teldat.de. Please follow the online licensing instructions.

Before System Software Release 7.1.4, IPSec ISDN callback only supported tunnel setup if the current IP address of the initiator could be determined by indirect means (e.g. via DynDNS). However, DynDNS has serious disadvantages, such as the latency until the IP address is actually updated in the database. This can mean that the IP address propagated

via DynDNS is not correct. This problem is avoided by transferring the IP address over ISDN. This type of transfer of dynamic IP addresses also enables the more secure ID Protect mode (main mode) to be used for tunnel setup.

Method of operation: Various modes are available for transferring your own IP address to the peer: The address can be transferred free in the D channel or in the B channel, but here the call must be accepted by the remote station and therefore incurs costs. If a peer whose IP address has been assigned dynamically wants to arrange for another peer to set up an IPSec tunnel, it can transfer its own IP address as per the settings described in [Fields in the menu IPSec Callback](#) on page 339. Not all transfer modes are supported by all telephone companies. If you are not sure, automatic selection by the device can be used to ensure that all the available possibilities can be used.



Note

The callback configuration should be the same on the two devices so that your device is able to identify the IP address information from the called peer.

The following roles are possible:

- One side takes on the active role, the other the passive role.
- Both sides can take on both roles (both).

The IP address transfer and the start of IKE phase 1 negotiation take place in the following steps:

- (1) Peer A (the callback initiator) sets up a connection to the Internet in order to be assigned a dynamic IP address and be reachable for peer B over the Internet.
- (2) Your device creates a token with a limited validity and saves it together with the current IP address in the MIB entry belonging to peer B.
- (3) Your device sends the initial ISDN call to peer B, which transfers the IP address of peer A and the token as per the callback configuration.
- (4) Peer B extracts the IP address of peer A and the token from the ISDN call and assigns them to peer A based on the calling party number configured (the ISDN number used by peer A to send the initial call to peer B).
- (5) The IPSec Daemon at peer B's device can use the transferred IP address to initiate phase 1 negotiation with peer A. Here the token is returned to peer A in part of the payload in IKE negotiation.
- (6) Peer A is now able to compare the token returned by peer B with the entries in the MIB and so identify the peer without knowing its IP address.

As peer A and peer B can now mutually identify each other, negotiations can also be con-

ducted in the ID Protect mode using preshared keys.



Note

In some countries (e.g. Switzerland), the call in the D channel can also incur costs. An incorrect configuration at the called side can mean that the called side opens the B channel the calling side incurs costs.

The following options are only available on devices with an ISDN connection:

Fields in the menu IPsec Callback

Field	Description
Mode	<p>Select the Callback Mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): IPsec callback is deactivated. The local device neither reacts to incoming ISDN calls nor initiates ISDN calls to the remote device.• <i>Passive</i>: The local device only reacts to incoming ISDN calls and, if necessary, initiates setting up an IPsec tunnel to the peer. No ISDN calls are sent to the remote device to cause this to set up an IPsec tunnel.• <i>Active</i>: The local device sends an ISDN call to the remote device to cause this to set up an IPsec tunnel. The device does not react to incoming ISDN calls.• <i>Both</i>: Your device can react to incoming ISDN calls and send ISDN calls to the remote device. The setting up of an IPsec tunnel is executed (after an incoming ISDN call) and initiated (by an outgoing ISDN call).
Incoming Phone Number	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Passive</i> or <i>Both</i></p> <p>Enter the ISDN number from which the remote device calls the local device (calling party number). Wildcards may also be used.</p>
Outgoing Phone Number	<p>Only for Mode = <i>Active</i> or <i>Both</i></p> <p>Enter the ISDN number with which the local device calls the remote device calls (called party number). Wildcards may also be used.</p>

Field	Description
Transfer own IP address over ISDN/GSM	<p>Select whether the IP address of your own device is to be transferred over ISDN for IPsec callback.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Transfer Mode	<p>Only for Transfer own IP address over ISDN/GSM = enabled</p> <p>Select the mode in which your device is to attempt to transfer its IP address to the peer.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Autodetect best mode</i>: Your device automatically determines the most favourable mode. It first tries all D channel modes before switching to the B channel. (Costs are incurred for using the B channel.)• <i>Autodetect only D Channel Modes</i>: Your device automatically determines the most favourable D channel mode. The use of the B channel is excluded.• <i>Use specific D Channel Mode</i>: Your device tries to transfer the IP address in the mode set in the Mode field.• <i>Try specific D Channel Mode, fall back to B Channel</i>: Your device tries to transfer the IP address in the mode set in the Mode field. If this does not succeed, the IP address is transferred in the B channel. (This incurs costs.)• <i>Use only B Channel Mode</i>: Your device transfers the IP address in the B channel. This incurs costs.
D Channel Mode	<p>Only for Transfer Mode = <i>Use specific D Channel Mode</i> or <i>Try specific D Channel Mode, fall back to B Channel</i></p> <p>Select the D channel mode in which your device tries to transfer the IP address.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LLC</i> (default value): The IP address is transferred in the "LLC information elements" of the D channel.• <i>SUBADDR</i>: The IP address is transferred in the subaddress "information elements" of the D channel.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LLC and SUBADDR</i>: The IP address is transferred in both the "LLC" and "subaddress information elements".

18.1.2 Phase-1 Profiles

A list of all configured tunnel profiles is displayed in the **VPN->IPSec->Phase-1 Profiles** menu.

IPSec PeersPhase-1 ProfilesPhase-2 ProfilesXAUTH ProfilesIP PoolsOptions

Internet Key Exchange Version 1 (IKEv1)

View 20 per page<<>>Filter in NoneequalGo

Default	Description	Proposals	Authentication	Mode	DH Group	Lifetime
Page: 1						
Create new IKEv1 Profile		New				

Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2)

View 20 per page<<>>Filter in NoneequalGo

Default	Description	Proposals	Lifetime
Page: 1			
Create new IKEv2 Profile		New	

OKCancel

Fig. 132: VPN->IPSec->Phase-1 Profiles

In the **Default** column, you can mark the profile to be used as the default profile.

18.1.2.1 New

Choose the **New** (at **Create new IKEv1 Profile** or **Create new IKEv2 Profile**) button to create additional profiles.

IPSec Peers

Phase-1 Profiles

Phase-2 Profiles

XAUTH Profiles

IP Pools

Options

Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters

Description

IKE-1

Proposals

Encryption

Authentication

Enabled

AES

MD5

AES

MD5

☐

AES

MD5

☐

DH Group

☐ 1(768 Bit) ☒ 2(1024 Bit) ☐ 5(1536 Bit)

Lifetime

14400

Seconds

0

kBytes

Authentication Method

Preshared Keys

Mode

☐ Main Mode (ID Protect) ☒ Aggressive ☐ Strict

Local ID Type

Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)

Local ID Value

r4402

Advanced Settings

Alive Check

Autodetect

Block Time

30

Seconds

NAT Traversal

Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 133: VPN->IPSec->Phase-1 Profiles->New

The menu VPN->IPSec->Phase-1 Profiles->New consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description that uniquely defines the type of rule.
Proposals	<p>In this field, you can select any combination of encryption and message hash algorithms for IKE phase 1 on your device. The combination of six encryption algorithms and four message hash algorithms gives 24 possible values in this field. At least one proposal must exist. Therefore the first line of the table cannot be deactivated.</p> <p>Encryption algorithms (Encryption):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>3DES</i> (default value): 3DES is an extension of the DES algorithm with an effective key length of 112 bits, which is rated as secure. It is the slowest algorithm currently supported.• <i>Twofish</i>: Twofish was a final candidate for the AES

Field	Description
	<p>(Advanced Encryption Standard). It is rated as just as secure as Rijndael (AES), but is slower.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Blowfish</i>: Blowfish is a very secure and fast algorithm. Twofish can be regarded as the successor to Blowfish.• <i>CAST</i>: CAST is also a very secure algorithm, marginally slower than Blowfish, but faster than 3DES.• <i>DES</i>: DES is an older encryption algorithm, which is rated as weak due to its small effective length of 56 bits.• <i>AES</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. The partner's AES key length is used here. If this has also selected the parameter <i>AES</i> , a key length of 128 bits is used.• <i>AES-128</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 128 bits.• <i>AES-192</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 192 bits.• <i>AES-256</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 256 bits. <p>Hash algorithms (Authentication):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>MD5</i> (default value): MD5 (Message Digest #5) is an older hash algorithm. It is used with a 96 bit digest length for IPSec.• <i>SHA1</i>: SHA1 (Secure Hash Algorithm #1) is a hash algorithm developed by NSA (United States National Security Association). It is rated as secure, but is slower than MD5. It is used with a 96 bit digest length for IPSec.• <i>RipeMD 160</i>: RipeMD 160 is a 160 bit hash algorithm. It is used as a secure replacement for MD5 and RipeMD.• <i>Tiger192</i>: Tiger 192 is a relatively new and very fast algorithm. <p>Please note that the description of the encryption and authentic-</p>

Field	Description
	ation or the hash algorithms is based on the author's knowledge and opinion at the time of creating this User Guide. In particular, the quality of the algorithms is subject to relative aspects and may change due to mathematical or cryptographic developments.
DH Group	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>The Diffie-Hellman group defines the parameter set used as the basis for the key calculation during phase 1. "MODP" as supported by Teldat devices stands for "modular exponentiation".</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>1 (768 Bit)</i>: During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 768 bits is used to create the encryption material.• <i>2 (1024 Bit)</i>: During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 1024 bits is used to create the encryption material.• <i>5 (1536 Bit)</i>: During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 1536 bits is used to create the encryption material.
Lifetime	<p>Create a lifetime for phase 1 keys.</p> <p>As for RFC 2407, the default value is eight hours, which means the key must be renewed once eight hours have elapsed.</p> <p>The following options are available for defining the Lifetime:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Input in Seconds: Enter the lifetime for phase 1 key in seconds. The value can be a whole number from 0 to 2147483647. The default value is <i>14400</i>.• Input in kBytes: Enter the lifetime for phase 1 keys as amount of data processed in kBytes. The value can be a whole number from 0 to 2147483647. The default value is <i>0</i>. The default value as per RFC is used <i>0</i> seconds and <i>0</i> Kbytes are entered.
Authentication Method	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Select the authentication method.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Preshared Keys</i> (default value): If you do not use certificates for the authentication, you can select Preshared Keys. These are configured during peer configuration in the VPN->IPSec->IPSec Peers. The preshared key is the shared password.• <i>DSA Signature</i>: Phase 1 key calculations are authenticated using the DSA algorithm.• <i>RSA Signature</i>: Phase 1 key calculations are authenticated using the RSA algorithm.• <i>RSA Encryption</i>: In RSA encryption the ID payload is also encrypted for additional security.
Local Certificate	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Only for Authentication Method = <i>DSA Signature</i>, <i>RSA Signature</i> or <i>RSA Encryption</i></p> <p>This field enables you to select one of your own certificates for authentication. It shows the index number of this certificate and the name under which it is saved. This field is only shown for authentication settings based on certificates and indicates that a certificate is essential.</p>
Mode	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Select the phase 1 mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Aggressive</i> (default value): The Aggressive Mode is necessary if one of the peers does not have a static IP address and preshared keys are used for authentication. It requires only three messages to configure a secure channel.• <i>Main Mode (ID Protect)</i>: This mode (also designated Main Mode) requires six messages for a Diffie-Hellman key calculation and thus for configuring a secure channel, over which the IPSec SAs can be negotiated. A condition is that both peers have static IP addresses if preshared keys are used for authentication. <p>Also define whether the selected mode is used exclusively</p>

Field	Description
	Strict), or the peer can also propose another mode.
Local ID Type	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Select the local ID type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)</i>• <i>E-mail Address</i>• <i>IPV4 Address</i>• <i>ASN.1-DN (Distinguished Name)</i>
Local ID Value	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Enter the ID of your device.</p> <p>For Authentication Method = <i>DSA Signature</i>, <i>RSA Signature</i> or <i>RSA Encryption</i> the Use Subject Name from certificate option is displayed.</p> <p>When you enable the Use Subject Name from certificate option, the first alternative subject name indicated in the certificate is used, or, if none is specified, the subject name of the certificate is used.</p> <p>Note: If you use certificates for authentication and your certificate contains alternative subject names (see Certificates on page 106), you must make sure your device selects the first alternative subject name by default. Make sure you and your peer both use the same name, i.e. that your local ID and the peer ID your partner configures for you are identical.</p>

Alive Check

During communication between two IPSec peers, one of the peers may become unavailable, e.g. due to routing problems or a reboot. However, this can only be detected when the end of the lifetime of the security connection is reached. Up until this point the data packets are lost. These are various methods of performing an alive check to prevent this happening. In the **Alive Check** field you can specify whether a method should be used to check the availability of a peer.

Two methods are available: Heartbeats and Dead Peer Detection.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Alive Check	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Select the method to be used to check the functionality of the IPSec connection.</p> <p>In addition to the default method Dead Peer Detection (DPD), the (proprietary) Heartbeat method is implemented. This sends and receives signals every 5 seconds, depending on the configuration. If these signals are not received after 20 seconds, the SA is discarded as invalid.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Autodetect</i> (default value): Your device detects and uses the mode supported by the remote terminal.• <i>Inactive</i>: Your device sends and expects no heartbeat. Set this option if you use devices from other manufacturers.• <i>Heartbeats (Expect only)</i>: Your device expects a heartbeat from the peer but does not send one itself.• <i>Heartbeats (Send only)</i>: Your device expects no heartbeat from the peer, but sends one itself.• <i>Heartbeats (Send &Expect)</i>: Your device expects a heartbeat from the peer and sends one itself.• <i>Dead Peer Detection</i>: Use DPD (dead peer detection) in accordance with RFC 3706. DPD uses a request-reply protocol to check the availability of the remote terminal and can be configured independently on both sides. This option only checks the availability of the peer if data is to be sent to it.• <i>Dead Peer Detection (Idle)</i>: Use DPD (dead peer detection) in accordance with RFC 3706. DPD uses a request-reply protocol to check the availability of the remote terminal and can be configured independently on both sides. This option is used to carry out a check at certain intervals depending on forthcoming data transfers. <p>Only for Phase-1 (IKEv2) Parameters</p> <p>Enable or disable alive check.</p>

Field	Description
	The function is enabled by default.
Block Time	<p>Define how long a peer is blocked for tunnel setups after a phase 1 tunnel setup has failed. This only affects locally initiated setup attempts.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>-1</i> to <i>86400</i> (seconds); <i>-1</i> means the value in the default profile is used and <i>0</i> means that the peer is never blocked.</p> <p>The default value is <i>30</i>.</p>
NAT Traversal	<p>NAT Traversal (NAT-T) also enables IPSec tunnels to be opened via one or more devices on which network address translation (NAT) is activated.</p> <p>Without NAT-T, incompatibilities may arise between IPSec and NAT (see RFC 3715, section 2). These primarily prevent the setup of an IPSec tunnel from a host within a LANs and behind a NAT device to another host or device. NAT-T enables these kinds of tunnels without conflicts with NAT device, activated NAT is automatically detected by the IPSec Daemon and NAT-T is used.</p> <p>Only for <i>IKEv1 profiles</i></p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Enabled</i> (default value): NAT Traversal is enabled.• <i>Disabled</i>: NAT Traversal is disabled.• <i>Force</i>: The device always behaves as it would if NAT were in use. <p>Only for <i>IKEv2 profiles</i></p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
CA Certificates	<p>Only for Phase-1 (IKE) Parameters</p> <p>Only for Authentication Method = <i>DSA Signature</i>, <i>RSA Signature</i> or <i>RSA Encryption</i></p> <p>If you enable the Trust the following CA certificates option,</p>

Field	Description
	you can select up to three CA certificates that are accepted for this profile. This option can only be configured if certificates are loaded.

18.1.3 Phase-2 Profiles

You can define profiles for phase 2 of the tunnel setup just as for phase 1.

In the **VPN->IPSec->Phase-2 Profiles** menu, a list of all configured IPSec phase 2 profiles is displayed.

IPSec PeersPhase-1 ProfilesPhase-2 ProfilesXAUTH ProfilesIP PoolsOptions

View 20 per page<<>>Filter in NoneequalGo

Default	Description	Proposals	PFS Group	Lifetime	
Page: 1					

NewOKCancel

Fig. 134: VPN->IPSec->Phase-2 Profiles

In the **Default** column, you can mark the profile to be used as the default profile.

18.1.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional profiles.

IPSec Peers

Phase-1 Profiles

Phase-2 Profiles

XAUTH Profiles

IP Pools

Options

Phase-2 (IPSEC) Parameters

Description

IPSec-2

Proposals

Encryption

Authentication

Enabled

AES

MD5

AES

MD5

AES

MD5

Use PFS Group

☒ Enabled

☐ 1(768 Bit)

☒ 2(1024 Bit)

☐ 5(1536 Bit)

Lifetime

7200

Seconds

0

kBytes

Rekey after

80

% Lifetime

Advanced Settings

IP Compression

☐ Enabled

Alive Check

Autodetect

Propagate PMTU

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 135: VPN->IPSec->Phase-2 Profiles->New

The menu VPN->IPSec->Phase-2 Profiles->New consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Phase-2 (IPSEC) Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	<p>Enter a description that uniquely identifies the profile.</p> <p>The maximum length of the entry is 255 characters.</p>
Proposals	<p>In this field, you can select any combination of encryption and message hash algorithms for IKE phase 2 on your default. The combination of six encryption algorithms and two message hash algorithms gives 12 possible values in this field.</p> <p>Encryption algorithms (Encryption):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 3DES (default value): 3DES is an extension of the DES algorithm with an effective key length of 112 bits, which is rated as secure. It is the slowest algorithm currently supported.• -- ALL --: All options can be used.• AES: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. The partner's AES key length is used here. If this has also selected the parameter

Field	Description
	<p><i>AES</i> , a key length of 128 bits is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>AES-128</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 128 bits.• <i>AES-192</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 192 bits.• <i>AES-256</i>: Rijndael has been nominated as AES due to its fast key setup, low memory requirements, high level of security against attacks and general speed. Here, it is used with a key length of 256 bits.• <i>Twofish</i>: Twofish was a final candidate for the AES (Advanced Encryption Standard). It is rated as just as secure as Rijndael (AES), but is slower.• <i>Blowfish</i>: Blowfish is a very secure and fast algorithm. Twofish can be regarded as the successor to Blowfish.• <i>CAST</i>: CAST is also a very secure algorithm, marginally slower than Blowfish, but faster than 3DES.• <i>DES</i>: DES is an older encryption algorithm, which is rated as weak due to its small effective length of 56 bits. <p>Hash algorithms (Authentication):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>MD5</i> (default value): MD5 (Message Digest #5) is an older hash algorithm. It is used with a 96 bit digest length for IPSec.• <i>-- ALL --</i>: All options can be used.• <i>SHA1</i>: SHA1 (Secure Hash Algorithm #1) is a hash algorithm developed by NSA (United States National Security Association). It is rated as secure, but is slower than MD5. It is used with a 96 bit digest length for IPSec. <p>Note that RipeMD 160 and Tiger 192 are not available for message hashing in phase 2.</p>
Use PFS Group	<p>As PFS (Perfect Forward Secrecy) requires another Diffie-Hellman key calculation to create new encryption material, you must select the exponentiation features. If you enable PFS (<i>Enabled</i>), the options are the same as for the configuration of DH Group in the VPN->IPSec->Phase-1 Profiles menu. PFS is</p>

Field	Description
	<p>used to protect the keys of a renewed phase 2 SA, even if the keys of the phase 1 SA have become known.</p> <p>The field has the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>1 (768 Bit)</i>: During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 768 bits is used to create the encryption material.• <i>2 (1024 Bit)</i> (default value): During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 1024 bits is used to create the encryption material.• <i>5 (1536 Bit)</i>: During the Diffie-Hellman key calculation, modular exponentiation at 1536 bits is used to create the encryption material.
Lifetime	<p>Define how the lifetime is defined that will expire before phase 2 SAs need to be renewed.</p> <p>The new SAs are negotiated shortly before expiry of the current SAs. As for RFC 2407, the default value is eight hours, which means the key must be renewed once eight hours have elapsed.</p> <p>The following options are available for defining the Lifetime:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Input in Seconds: Enter the lifetime for phase 2 key in seconds. The value can be a whole number from 0 to 2147483647. The default value is 7200.• Input in kBytes: Enter the lifetime for phase 2 keys as amount of data processed in Kbytes. The value can be a whole number from 0 to 2147483647. The default value is 0. <p>Rekey after: Specify the percentage in the course of the lifetime at which the phase 2 keys are to be regenerated.</p> <p>The percentage entered is applied to both the lifetime in seconds and the lifetime in Kbytes.</p> <p>The default value is 80 %.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
IP Compression	<p>Select whether compression is to be activated before data encryption. If data is compressed effectively, this can result in higher performance and a lower volume of data to be transferred. In the case of fast lines or data that cannot be compressed, you are advised against using this option as the performance can be significantly affected by the increased effort during compression.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Alive Check	<p>Select whether and how IPSec heartbeats are used.</p> <p>A Teldat IPSec heartbeat is implemented to determine whether or not a Security Association (SA) is still valid. This function sends and receives signals every 5 seconds, depending on the configuration. If these signals are not received after 20 seconds, the SA is discarded as invalid.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Autodetect</i> (default value): Automatic detection of whether the remote terminal is a Teldat device. If it is, <i>Heartbeats (Send &Expect)</i> (for a remote terminal with Teldat) or <i>In-active</i> (for a remote terminal without Teldat) is set.• <i>Inactive</i>: Your device sends and expects no heartbeat. Set this option if you use devices from other manufacturers.• <i>Heartbeats (Expect only)</i>: Your device expects a heartbeat from the peer but does not send one itself.• <i>Send</i>: Your device expects no heartbeat from the peer, but sends one itself.• <i>Heartbeats (Send &Expect)</i>: Your device expects a heartbeat from the peer and sends one itself.
Propagate PMTU	<p>Select whether the PMTU (Path Maximum Transfer Unit) is to be propagated during phase 2.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

18.1.4 XAUTH Profiles

In the **XAUTH Profiles** menu a list of all XAUTH profiles is displayed.

Extended Authentication for IPSec (XAuth) is an additional authentication method for IPSec tunnel users.

The gateway can take on two different roles when using XAuth as it can act as a server or as a client:

- As a server the gateway requires a proof of authorisation.
- As a client the gateway provides proof of authorisation.

In server mode multiple users can obtain authentication via XAuth, e.g. users of Apple iPhones. Authorisation is verified either on the basis of a list or via a Radius Server. If using a one time password (OTP), the password check can be carried out by a token server (e.g. SecOVID from Kobil), which is installed behind the Radius Server. If a company's headquarters is connected to several branches via IPSec, several peers can be configured. A specific user can then use the IPSec tunnel over various peers depending on the assignment of various profiles. This is useful, for example, if an employee works alternately in different branches, if each peer represents a branch and if the employee wishes to have on-site access to the tunnel.

XAuth is carried out once IPSec IKE (Phase 1) has been completed successfully and before IKE (Phase 2) begins.

If XAuth is used together with IKE Config Mode, the transactions for XAuth are carried out before the transactions for IKE Config Mode.

18.1.4.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional profiles.

IPSec PeersPhase-1 ProfilesPhase-2 ProfilesXAUTH ProfilesIP PoolsOptions

Basic Parameters

Description	
Role	Server
Mode	radius
RADIUS Server Group ID	No Radius Server configured for XAUTH

OKCancel

Fig. 136: VPN->IPSec->XAUTH Profiles->New

The **VPN->IPSec->XAUTH Profiles->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for this XAuth profile.
Role	<p>Select the role of the gateway for XAuth authentication.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Server</i> (default value): The gateway requires a proof of authorisation.• <i>Client</i>: The gateway provides proof of authorisation.
Mode	<p>Only for Role = <i>Server</i></p> <p>Select how authentication is carried out.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>RADIUS</i> (default value): Authentication is carried out via a Radius server. It is configured in the System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS menu and selected in the RADIUS Server Group ID field.• <i>Local</i>: Authentication is carried out via a local list.
Name	<p>Only for Role = <i>Client</i></p> <p>Enter the authentication name of the client.</p>
Password	<p>Only for Role = <i>Client</i></p> <p>Enter the authentication password.</p>
RADIUS Server Group ID	<p>Only for Role = <i>Server</i></p> <p>Select the desired list in System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS configured RADIUS group.</p>
Users	<p>Only for Role = <i>Server</i> and Mode = <i>Local</i></p> <p>If your gateway is configured as an XAuth server, the clients can be authenticated via a locally configured user list. Define the members of the user group of this XAUTH profile here by</p>


Field	Description
	entering the authentication name of the client (Name)) and the authentication password (Password). Add new members with Add .

18.1.5 IP Pools

In the **IP Pools** menu a list of all IP pools for your configured IPSec connections is displayed.

If for an IPSec peer you have set **IP Address Assignment** *IKE Config Mode Server*, you must define the IP pools here from which the IP addresses are assigned.

18.1.5.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP address pools. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

IPSec PeersPhase-1 ProfilesPhase-2 ProfilesXAUTH ProfilesIP PoolsOptions

Basic Parameters

IP Pool Name

IP Address Range

 -

DNS Server

Primary

Secondary

OK

Cancel

Fig. 137: VPN->IPSec->IP Pools->New

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
IP Pool Name	Enter any description to uniquely identify the IP pool.
IP Address Range	Enter the first (first field) and last (second field) IP address of the IP address pool.
DNS Server	Primary: Enter the IP address of the DNS server that is to be used, preferably, by clients who draw an address from this pool. Secondary: Optionally, enter the IP address of an alternative

Field	Description
	DNS server.

18.1.6 Options

IPSec PeersPhase-1 ProfilesPhase-2 ProfilesXAUTH ProfilesIP PoolsOptions

Global Options

Enable IPSec	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Delete complete IPSec configuration	
IPSec Debug Level	Debug

Advanced Settings

IPSec over TCP	<input type="checkbox"/> NCP Path Finder Technology
Send Initial Contact Message	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Sync SAs with ISP interface state	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Use Zero Cookies	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Zero Cookie Size	32 Bit
Dynamic RADIUS Authentication	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

PKI Handling Options

Ignore Certificate Request Payloads	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Send Certificate Request Payloads	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Send Certificate Chains	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Send CRLs	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Send Key Hash Payloads	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled

OKCancel

Fig. 138: VPN->IPSec->Options

The menu **VPN->IPSec->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global Options menu.

Field	Description
Enable IPSec	Select whether you want to activate IPSec. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is active as soon as an IPSec Peer is configured.
Delete complete IPSec configuration	If you click the icon, delete the complete IPSec configuration of your device.

Field	Description
	<p>This cancels all settings made during the IPSec configuration. Once the configuration is deleted, you can start with a completely new IPSec configuration.</p> <p>You can only delete the configuration if Enable IPSec = not activated.</p>
IPSec Debug Level	<p>Select the priority of the syslog messages of the IPSec subsystem to be recorded internally.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Emergency</i> (highest priority)• <i>Alert</i>• <i>Critical</i>• <i>Error</i>• <i>Warning</i>• <i>Notice</i>• <i>Information</i>• <i>Debug</i> (default value, lowest priority) <p>Syslog messages are only recorded internally if they have a higher or identical priority to that indicated, i.e. all messages generated are recorded at syslog level "debug".</p>

The **Advanced Settings** menu is for adapting certain functions and features to the special requirements of your environment, i.e. mostly interoperability flags are set. The default values are globally valid and enable your system to work correctly to other Teldat devices, so that you only need to change these values if the remote terminal is a third-party product or you know special settings are necessary. These may be needed, for example, if the remote end operates with older IPSec implementations.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
IPSec over TCP	<p>Determine whether IPSec over TCP is to be used.</p> <p>IPSec over TCP is based on NCP pathfinder technology. This technology insures that data traffic (IKE, ESP, AH) between peers is integrated into a pseudo HTTPS session.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Send Initial Contact Message	<p>Select whether IKE Initial Contact messages are to be sent during IKE (phase 1) if no SAs with a peer exist.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Sync SAs with ISP interface state	<p>Select whether all SAs are to be deleted whose data traffic was routed via an interface on which the status has changed from <i>Up</i> to <i>Down</i>, <i>Dormant</i> or <i>Blocked</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Use Zero Cookies	<p>Select whether zeroed ISAKMP Cookies are to be sent.</p> <p>These are equivalent to the SPI (Security Parameter Index) in IKE proposals; as they are redundant, they are normally set to the value of the negotiation currently in progress. Alternatively, your device can use zeroes for all values of the cookie. In this case, select <i>Enabled</i>.</p>
Zero Cookie Size	<p>Only for Use Zero Cookies = enabled.</p> <p>Enter the length in bytes of the zeroed SPI used in IKE proposals.</p> <p>The default value is <i>32</i>.</p>
Dynamic RADIUS Authentication	<p>Select whether RADIUS authentication is to be activated via IPSec.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

Fields in the PKI Handling Options menu.

Field	Description
Ignore Certificate Re-	Select whether certificate requests received from the remote

Field	Description
quest Payloads	<p>end during IKE (phase 1) are to be ignored.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Send Certificate Request Payloads	<p>Select whether certificate requests are to be sent during IKE (phase 1).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Send Certificate Chains	<p>Select whether complete certificate chains are to be sent during IKE (phase 1).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>Deactivate this function if you do not wish to send the peer the certificates of all levels (from your level to the CA level).</p>
Send CRLs	<p>Select whether CRLs are to be sent during IKE (phase 1).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Send Key Hash Payloads	<p>Select whether key hash payloads are to be sent during IKE (phase 1).</p> <p>In the default setting, the public key hash of the remote end is sent together with the other authentication data. Only applies for RSA encryption. Activate this function with <i>Enabled</i> to suppress this behaviour.</p>

18.2 L2TP

The layer 2 tunnel protocol (L2TP) enables PPP connections to be tunnelled via a UDP connection.

Your Teldat device supports the following two modes:

- L2TP LNS Mode (L2TP Network Server): for incoming connections only
- L2TP LAC Mode (L2TP Access Concentrator): for outgoing connections only

Note the following when configuring the server and client: An L2TP tunnel profile must be created on each of the two sides (LAC and LNS). The corresponding L2TP tunnel profile is used on the initiator side (LAC) to set up the connection. The L2TP tunnel profile is needed on the responder side (LNS) to accept the connection.

18.2.1 Tunnel Profiles

A list of all configured tunnel profiles is displayed in the **VPN->L2TP->Tunnel Profiles** menu.

18.2.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional tunnel profiles.

Tunnel ProfilesUsersOptions

Basic Parameters

Description

L2TP1

Local Hostname

Remote Hostname

Password

••••••••

LAC Mode Parameters

Remote IP Address

UDP Source Port

☐ Fixed

UDP Destination Port

1701

Advanced Settings

Local IP Address

Hello Intervall

30

Seconds

Minimum Time between Retries

1

Seconds

Maximum Time between Retries

16

Seconds

Maximum Retries

5

Data Packets Sequence Numbers

☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 139: VPN->L2TP->Tunnel Profiles ->New

The menu **VPN->L2TP->Tunnel Profiles ->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	<p>Enter a description for the current profile.</p> <p>The device automatically names the profiles <i>L2TP</i> and numbers them, but the value can be changed.</p>
Local Hostname	<p>Enter the host name for LNS or LAC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LAC</i>: The local hostname is used in outgoing tunnel setup messages to identify this device and is associated with the remote hostname of a tunnel profile configured on the LNS. These tunnel setup messages are SCCRQs (Start Control Connection Request) sent from the LAC and SCCRPs (Start Control Connection Reply) sent from the LNS.• <i>LNS</i>: Is the same as the value for Remote Hostname of the incoming tunnel setup message from the LAC.
Remote Hostname	<p>Enter the host name of the LNS or LAC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LAC</i>: Defines the value for Local Hostname of the LNS (contained in the SCCRQs received from the LNS and the SCCRPs received from the LAC). A Local Hostname configured in the LAC must match Remote Hostname configured for the intended profile in the LNS and vice versa.• <i>LNS</i>: Defines the Local Hostname of the LAC. If the Remote Hostname field remains empty on the LNS, the related profile qualifies as the standard entry and is used for all incoming calls for which a profile with a matching remote hostname cannot be found.
Password	<p>Enter the password to be used for tunnel authentication. Authentication between LAC and LNS takes place in both directions, i.e. the LNS checks the Local Hostname and the Password contained in the SCCRQ of the LAC and compares them with those specified in the relevant profile. The LAC does the same with the fields of the SCCRP of the LNS.</p> <p>If this field remains empty, authentication data in the tunnel setup messages are not sent and are ignored.</p>

Fields in the LAC Mode Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Remote IP Address	<p>Enter the fixed IP address of the LNS used as the destination address for connections based on this profile.</p> <p>The destination must be a device that can behave like an LNS.</p>
UDP Source Port	<p>Enter how the port number to be used as the source port for all outgoing L2TP connections based on this profile is to be determined.</p> <p>By default, the Fixed option is disabled, which means that ports are dynamically assigned to the connections that use this profile.</p> <p>If you want to enter a fixed port, enable the <i>Fixed</i> option. Select this option if you encounter problems with the firewall or NAT.</p> <p>The available values are <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p>
UDP Destination Port	<p>Enter the destination port number to be used for all calls based on this profile. The remote LNS that receives the call must monitor this port on L2TP connections.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1701</i> (RFC 2661).</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Local IP Address	<p>Enter the IP address to be used as the source address for all L2TP connections based on this profile.</p> <p>If this field is left empty, your device uses the IP address of the interface used to reach the remote IP Address by the L2TP tunnel.</p>
Hello Intervall	<p>Enter the interval (in seconds) between the sending of two L2TP HELLO messages. These messages are used to keep the tunnel open.</p> <p>The available values are <i>0</i> to <i>255</i>, the default value is <i>30</i>. The</p>

Field	Description
	value <i>0</i> means that no L2TP HELLO messages are sent.
Minimum Time between Retries	<p>Enter the minimum time (in seconds) that your device waits before resending a L2TP control packet for which it received no response.</p> <p>The wait time is dynamically extended until it reaches the Maximum Time between Retries. The available values are <i>1</i> to <i>255</i>, the default value is <i>1</i>.</p>
Maximum Time between Retries	<p>Enter the maximum time (in seconds) that your device waits before resending a L2TP control packet for which it received no response.</p> <p>The available values are <i>8</i> to <i>255</i>, the default value is <i>16</i>.</p>
Maximum Retries	<p>Enter the maximum number of times your device is to try to resend the L2TP control packet for which is received no response.</p> <p>The available values are <i>8</i> to <i>255</i>, the default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Data Packets Sequence Numbers	<p>Select whether your device is to use sequence numbers for data packets sent through a tunnel on the basis of this profile.</p> <p>The function is not currently used.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

18.2.2 Users

A list of all configured interface L2TP partners is displayed in the **VPN->L2TP->Users** menu.

18.2.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new L2TP partners.

Tunnel ProfilesUsersOptions

Basic Parameters

Description

Connection Type

LNS

LAC

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

300

Seconds

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

Static

Provide IP Address

Default Route

Enabled

Create NAT Policy

Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

300

Seconds

Authentication

MS-CHAPv2

Encryption

None

Enabled

Windows compatible

Compression

None

STAC

MS-STAC

MPPC

LCP Alive Check

Enabled

Prioritize TCP ACK Packets

Enabled

IP Options

OSPF Mode

Passive

Active

Inactive

Proxy ARP Mode

Inactive

Up or Dormant

Up only

DNS Negotiation

Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 140: VPN->L2TP->Users->New

The menu **VPN->L2TP->Users->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	<div>Enter a name for uniquely identifying the L2TP partner.</div> <div>The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used. The maximum length of the entry is 25 characters.</div>

Field	Description
Connection Type	<p>Select whether the L2TP partner is to take on the role of the L2TP network server (LNS) or the functions of a L2TP access concentrator client (LAC client).</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>LNS</i> (default value): If you select this option, the L2TP partner is configured so that it accepts L2TP tunnels and restores the encapsulated PPP traffic flow.• <i>LAC</i>: If you select this option, the L2TP partner is configured so that it encapsulates a PPP traffic flow in L2TP and sets up a L2TP tunnel to a remote LNS.
Tunnel Profile	<p>Only for Connection Type = <i>LAC</i></p> <p>Select a profile created in the Tunnel Profile menu for the connection to this L2TP partner.</p>
User Name	Enter the code of your device.
Password	Enter the password.
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled</p> <p>Enter the idle time in seconds for static short hold. The static short hold setting determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the short hold. The default value is <i>300</i>.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically.

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Static</i> (default value): You enter a static IP address. • <i>Provide IP Address</i>: Only for Connection Type = LNS. Your device dynamically assigns an IP address to the remote terminal. • <i>Get IP Address</i>: Only for Connection Type = LAC. Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address.
Default Route	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Get IP Address and <i>Static</i></p> <p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Get IP Address and <i>Static</i></p> <p>Specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be activated for this connection.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
IP Assignment Pool (IPCP)	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Provide IP Address</p> <p>Select an IP pool configured in the WAN->Internet + Dialup->IP Pools menu.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>Enter the WAN IP address of your device.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>Enter Remote IP Address and Netmask of the LANs for L2TP partners and the corresponding Metric. Add new entries with Add.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this L2TP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i> (default value): Primarily run CHAP, on denial, the authentication protocol required by the PPTP partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>PAP</i>: Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i>: Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
Encryption	<p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the L2TP partner. This is only possible if STAC or MS-STAC compression is not activated for the connection. If Encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i>: MPP encryption is not used.• <i>Enabled</i> (default value): MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used to RFC 3078.• <i>Windows compatible</i>: MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used as compatible with Microsoft and Cisco.

Field	Description
Compression	<p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. If encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Encryption is not used.• <i>STAC</i>• <i>MS-STAC</i>• <i>MPPC</i>: Microsoft Point-to-Point Compression
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This is recommended for leased lines, PPTP and L2TP connections.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Prioritize TCP ACK Packets	<p>Select whether the TCP download is to be optimised in the event of intensive TCP upload. This function can be specially applied for asymmetrical bandwidths (ADSL).</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Mode	<p>Select whether and how routes are propagated via the interface and/or OSPF protocol packets are sent.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is activated for this interface, i.e. routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is disabled for this interface.
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to respond to ARP requests from its own LAN on behalf of the specific L2TP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Inactive</i> (default value): Deactivates Proxy ARP for this L2TP partner.<i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the L2TP partner is <i>Up</i> (active) or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Idle</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.<i>Up only</i>: Your device responds to an ARP request only if the status of the connection to the L2TP partner is <i>Up</i> (active), i.e. a connection already exists to the L2TP partner.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server und Secondary DNS Server and WINS Server Primary and Secondary from the L2TP partner or sends these to the L2TP partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

18.2.3 Options

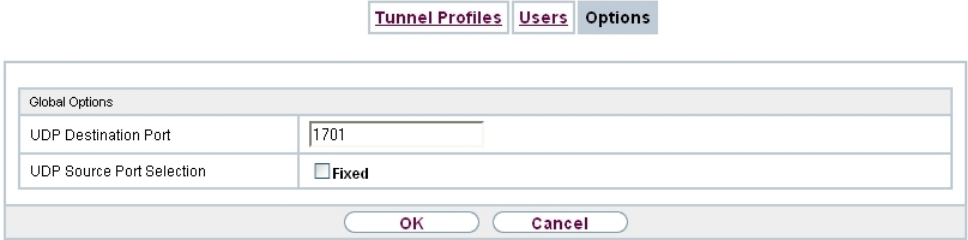


Fig. 141: VPN->L2TP->Options

The menu **VPN->L2TP->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global Options menu.

Field	Description
UDP Destination Port	<p>Enter the port to be monitored by the LNS on incoming L2TP tunnel connections.</p> <p>Available values are all whole numbers from 1 to 65535, the default value is 1701, as specified in RFC 2661.</p>
UDP Source Port Selection	<p>Select whether the LNS should only use the monitored port (UDP Destination Port) as the local source port for the L2TP connection.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Fixed</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

18.3 PPTP

The Point-to-Point Tunnelling Protocol (=PPTP) can be used to set up an encrypted PPTP tunnel to provide security for data traffic over an existing IP connection.

First a connection to an ISP (=Internet Service Provider) is set up at both sites. Once these connections are available, a tunnel is set up to the PPTP partner over the Internet using PPTP.

The PPTP subsystem sets up a control connection between the endpoints of the tunnel. This is used to send control data to set up, keep alive and terminate the connection between the two PPTP tunnel end-points. As soon as this control connection is set up, the PPTP transfers the traffic data packed in GRE packets (GRE = Generic Routing Encapsulation).

18.3.1 PPTP Tunnels

A list of all PPTP tunnels is displayed in the **PPTP Tunnels** menu.

18.3.1.1 New

Click on **New** to set up further PPTP partners.

PPTP TunnelsOptionsIP Pools

PPTP Partner Parameters

Description

PPTP Mode

☒PNS

☐Windows Client Mode

User Name

Password

••••••••

Always on

☐Enabled

Connection Idle Timeout

300

Seconds

Remote PPTP IP Address

IP Mode and Routes

IP Address Mode

☐Static

☐Provide IP Address

Default Route

☐Enabled

Create NAT Policy

☐Enabled

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

Advanced Settings

Block after connection failure for

300

Seconds

Authentication

MS-CHAPv2

Encryption

☐None

☒Enabled

☐Windows compatible

Compression

☒None

☐STAC

☐MS-STAC

☐MPPC

LCP Alive Check

☒Enabled

IP Options

OSPF Mode

☒Passive

☐Active

☐Inactive

Proxy ARP Mode

☒Inactive

☐Up or Dormant

☐Up only

DNS Negotiation

☒Enabled

PPTP Callback

Callback

☐Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 142: VPN->PPTP->PPTP Tunnels->New

The **VPN->PPTP->PPTP Tunnels->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the PPTP Partner Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	<p>Enter a unique name for the tunnel.</p> <p>The first character in this field must not be a number No special characters or umlauts must be used.</p>
PPTP Mode	<p>Enter the role to be assigned to the PPTP interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>PNS</i> (default value): this assigns the PPTP interface the role of PPTP server. • <i>Windows Client Mode</i>: This assigns the PPTP interface the role of PPTP client.
User Name	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password.
Always on	<p>Select whether the interface should always be activated.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Connection Idle Timeout	<p>Only if Always on is disabled.</p> <p>Enter the idle interval in seconds. This determines how many seconds should pass between sending the last traffic data packet and clearing the connection.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i> (seconds). <i>0</i> deactivates the timeout.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p> <p>Example: <i>10</i> for FTP transmission, <i>20</i> for LAN-to-LAN transmission, <i>90</i> for Internet connections.</p>
Remote PPTP IP Address	<p>Only for PPTP Mode = <i>PNS</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the PPTP partner.</p>
Remote PPTP IP Address/Host Name	<p>Only for PPTP Mode = <i>Windows Client Mode</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the PPTP partner.</p>

Fields in the IP Mode and Routes menu.

Field	Description
IP Address Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to be assigned a static IP address or whether it should be assigned this dynamically.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Static</i> (default value): You enter a static IP address.• <i>Provide IP Address</i>: Only for PPTP Mode = PNS: Your device dynamically assigns an IP address to the remote terminal.• <i>Get IP Address</i>: Only for PPTP Mode = Windows Client Mode: Your device is dynamically assigned an IP address.
Default Route	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>Select whether the route to this connection partner is to be defined as the default route.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Create NAT Policy	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>When you configure an PPTP connection, specify whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is to be enabled.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Only for IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>Assign the IP address from your LAN to the PPTP interface which is to be used as your device's internal source address.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Only if IP Address Mode = Static</p> <p>Define routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or LAN.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (possible values <i>0 . . . 15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.
IP Assignment Pool (IPCP)	<p>Only if PPTP Mode = <i>PNS</i>, IP Address Mode = <i>Provide IP Address</i></p> <p>Select a IP pool configured in the VPN->PPTP->IP Pools menu.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Block after connection failure for	<p>Enter the wait time in seconds before the device should try again after an attempt to set up a connection has failed.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i>.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select the authentication protocol for this PPTP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>PAP</i>: Only run PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol); the password is transferred unencrypted.• <i>CHAP</i>: Only run CHAP (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol as per RFC 1994); password is transferred encrypted.• <i>PAP/CHAP</i>: Primarily run CHAP, otherwise PAP.• <i>MS-CHAPv1</i>: Only run MS-CHAP version 1 (PPP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol).• <i>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP</i>: Give priority to CHAP, if refused use the authentication protocol requested by the PPTP partner. (MSCHAP version 1 or 2 possible.)• <i>MS-CHAPv2</i> (default value): Run MS-CHAP version 2 only.• <i>None</i>: Some providers use no authentication. In this case, select this option.
Encryption	<p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. If Encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i>: MPP encryption is not used.• <i>Enabled</i> (default value): MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used to RFC 3078.• <i>Windows compatible</i>: MPP encryption V2 with 128 bit is used as compatible with Microsoft and Cisco.
Compression	<p>If necessary, select the type of encryption that should be used for data traffic to the connection partner. If encryption is set, the remote terminal must also support it, otherwise a connection cannot be set up.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Encryption is not used.• <i>STAC</i>• <i>MS-STAC</i>• <i>MPPC</i>: Microsoft Point-to-Point Compression
LCP Alive Check	<p>Select whether the availability of the remote terminal is to be checked by sending LCP echo requests or replies. This is recommended for leased lines, PPTP and L2TP connections.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Fields in the IP Options menu.

Field	Description
OSPF Mode	<p>Select whether and how routes are propagated via the interface and/or OSPF protocol packets are to be sent.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Passive</i> (default value): OSPF is not activated for this interface, i.e. no routes are propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface. Networks reachable over this interface are, however, included when calculating the routing information and propagated over active interfaces.• <i>Active</i>: OSPF is activated for this interface, i.e. routes are

Field	Description
	<p>propagated or OSPF protocol packets sent over this interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i>: OSPF is disabled for this interface.
Proxy ARP Mode	<p>Select whether your device is to answer APR requests from your LAN on behalf of the specific PPTP partner.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Inactive</i> (default value): Disables Proxy-ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) for this PPTP partner.• <i>Up or Dormant</i>: Your device only responds to an ARP request if the status of the connection to the PPTP partner is <i>Up</i> (active) or <i>Dormant</i>. In the case of <i>Idle</i>, your device only responds to the ARP request; the connection is not set up until someone actually wants to use the route.• <i>Up only</i>: Your device answers an APR request only if the status of the connection to the PPTP partner is <i>Active</i>, i.e. if a connection to the PPTP partner has already been established.
DNS Negotiation	<p>Select whether your device receives IP addresses for Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server from the PPTP partner or sends these to the PPTP partner.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Fields in the PPTP Callback menu.

Field	Description
Callback	<p>Enables a PPTP tunnel through the Internet to be set up with a PPTP partner, even if the partner is currently inaccessible. As a rule, the PPTP partner will be requested by means of an ISDN call to go online and set up a PPTP connection.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>Note that you must activate the relevant option on the gateways of both partners. An ISDN connection is usually required for this function. Without ISDN, callback is only to be activated in spe-</p>

Field	Description
	cial applications.
Incoming ISDN Number	Only if Callback is enabled. Enter the ISDN number from which the remote device calls the local device (calling party number).
Outgoing ISDN Number	Only if Callback is enabled. Enter the ISDN number with which the local device calls the remote device calls (called party number).

Fields in the Dial Port Selection (only if callback = activated)

Field	Description
Selected Ports	Enter the ISDN port over which callback is carried out. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All Ports</i>: The callback is routed over an available ISDN port.• <i>Specify port</i>: In Specific Ports You can select the required ISDN port.
Specific Ports	Only for Selected Ports = <i>Specify port</i> , you can select additional ports with Add .

18.3.2 Options

In this menu, you can make general settings of the global PPTP profile.

PPTP TunnelsOptionsIP Pools

Global Options

GRE Window Adaption☒ Enabled

GRE Window Size

Max. incoming control connections per remote IP Address

OK

Cancel

Fig. 143: VPN->PPTP->Options

The **VPN->PPTP->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global Options menu.

Field	Description
GRE Window Adaption	<p>Select whether the GRE Window Adaptation is to be enabled.</p> <p>This adaptation only becomes necessary if you have installed service pack 1 from Microsoft Windows XP. Since, in SP 1, Microsoft has changed the confirmation algorithm in the GRE protocol, the automatic window adaptation for GRE must be turned off for Teldat devices.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
GRE Window Size	<p>Enter the maximum number of GRE packets that can be sent without confirmation.</p> <p>Windows XP uses a higher initial reception window in the GRE, which is why the maximum send window size must be adjusted here by the GRE Window Size value. Possible values are 0 to 256.</p> <p>The default value is 0.</p>
Max. incoming control connections per remote IP Address	<p>Enter the maximum number of control connections.</p>

18.3.3 IP Pools


The **IP Pools** menu displays a list of all IP pools for PPTP connections.

Your device can operate as a dynamic IP address server for PPTP connections. You can use this function by providing one or more pools of IP addresses. These IP addresses can be assigned to dialling-in connection partners for the duration of the connection.

Any host routes entered always have priority over IP addresses from the address pools. This means if an incoming call has been authenticated, your device first checks whether a host route is entered in the routing table for this caller. If not, your device can allocate an IP address from an address pool (if available). If address pools have more than one IP address, you cannot specify which connection partner receives which address. The addresses are initially assigned in order. If a new dial-in takes place within an interval of one hour, an attempt is made to allocate the same IP address assigned to this partner the last time.

Choose the**Add** button to set up new IP pools.

18.3.3.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP address pools. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

PPTP TunnelsOptionsIP Pools

Basic Parameters

IP Pool Name

IP Address Range

-

DNS Server

Primary

Secondary

OK

Cancel

Fig. 144: VPN->PPTP+IP Pools->New

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
IP Pool Name	Enter any description to uniquely identify the IP pool.
IP Address Range	Enter the first (first field) and last (second field) IP address of the IP address pool.
DNS Server	Primary: Enter the IP address of the DNS server that is to be used, preferably, by clients who draw an address from this pool. Secondary: Optionally, enter the IP address of an alternative DNS server.

18.4 GRE

Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a network protocol that encapsulates other protocols and transports them in the form of IP tunnels to the specified recipients.

The specification of the GRE protocol is available in two versions:

- GRE V.1 for use in PPTP connections (RFC 2637, configuration in the **PPTP** menu)
- GRE V.0 (RFC 2784) for general encapsulation using GRE

In this menu you can configure a virtual interface for using GRE V.0. The data traffic routed

over this interface is then encapsulated using GRE and sent to the specified recipient.

18.4.1 GRE Tunnels

A list of all configured GRE tunnels is displayed in the **VPN->GRE->GRE Tunnels** menu.

18.4.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new GRE tunnels.

GRE Tunnels

Basic Parameters

Description

Local GRE IP Address

Remote GRE IP Address

Default Route

Local IP Address

Route Entries

Remote IP Address

Netmask

Metric

1

Add

MTU

Use key

Enabled

Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 145: VPN->GRE->GRE Tunnels->New

The **VPN->GRE->GRE Tunnels->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter a description for the GRE tunnel.
Local GRE IP Address	Enter the source IP address of the GRE packets to the GRE partner. If no IP address is given (this corresponds to IP address 0.0.0.0), the source IP address of the GRE packets is selected automatically from one of the addresses of the interface via which the GRE partner is reached.
Remote GRE IP Address	Enter the target IP address of the GRE packets to the GRE partner.

Field	Description
Default Route	<p>If you enable the Default Route, all data is automatically routed to one connection.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Local IP Address	<p>Here, enter the (LAN-side) IP address that is to be used as your device's source address for your own packets through the GRE tunnel.</p>
Route Entries	<p>Define other routing entries for this connection partner.</p> <p>Add new entries with Add.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Remote IP Address</i>: IP address of the destination host or network.• <i>Netmask</i>: Netmask for Remote IP Address If no entry is made, your device uses a default netmask.• <i>Metric</i>: The lower the value, the higher the priority of the route (range of values <i>0... 15</i>). The default value is <i>1</i>.
MTU	<p>Enter the maximum packet size (Maximum Transfer Unit, MTU) in bytes that is allowed for the GRE connection between the partners.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>8192</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>1500</i>.</p>
Use key	<p>Enable the key input for the GRE connection, which makes it possible to distinguish between several parallel GRE connections between two GRE partners (see RFC 1701).</p> <p>The identification is enabled with <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Key Value	<p>Only if Use key is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the GRE connection key.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>2147483647</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>

Chapter 19 Firewall

The Stateful Inspection Firewall (SIF) provided for Teldat gateways is a powerful security feature.

The SIF with dynamic packet filtering has a decisive advantage over static packet filtering: The decision whether or not to send a packet cannot be made solely on the basis of source and destination addresses or ports but also using dynamic packet filtering based on the state of the connection to a partner.

This means packets that belong to an already active connection can also be forwarded. The SIF also accepts packets that belong to an "affiliated connection". The negotiation of an FTP connection takes place over port 21, for example, but the actual data exchange can take place over a completely different port.

SIF and other security features

Teldat's Stateful Inspection Firewall fits into the existing security architecture of Teldat. The configuration work for the SIF is comparatively straightforward with systems like Network Address Translation (NAT) and IP Access Lists (IPAL).

As SIF, NAT and IPAL are active in the system simultaneously, attention must be given to possible interaction: If any packet is rejected by one of the security instances, this is done immediately. This is irrelevant whether another instance would accept it or not. Your need for security features should therefore be accurately analysed.

The essential difference between SIF and NAT/IPAL is that the rules for the SIF are generally applied globally, i.e. not restricted to one interface.

In principle, the same filter criteria are applied to the data traffic as those used in NAT and IPAL:

- Source and destination address of the packet (with an associated netmask)
- Service (preconfigured, e.g. Echo, FTP, HTTP)
- Protocol
- Port number(s)

To illustrate the differences in packet filtering, a list of the individual security instances and their method of operation is given below.

NAT

One of the basic functions of NAT is the translation of the local IP addresses of your LAN into the global IP addresses you are assigned by your ISP and vice versa. All connections initiated externally are first blocked, i.e. every packet your device cannot assign to an existing connection is rejected. This means that a connection can only be set up from inside to outside. Without explicit permission, NAT rejects every access from the WAN to the LAN.

IP Access Lists

Here, packets are allowed or rejected exclusively on the basis of the criteria listed above, i.e. the state of the connection is not considered (except for **Services** = *TCP*).

SIF

The SIF sorts out all packets that are not explicitly or implicitly allowed. The result can be a "deny", in which case no error message is sent to the sender of the rejected packet, or a "reject", where the sender is informed of the packet rejection.

The incoming packets are processed as follows:

- The SIF first checks if an incoming packet can be assigned to an existing connection. If so, it is forwarded. If the packet cannot be assigned to an existing connection, a check is made to see if a suitable connection is expected (e.g. as affiliated connection of an existing connection). If so, the packet is also accepted.
- If the packet cannot be assigned to any existing or expected connection, the SIF filter rules are applied: If a deny rule matches the packet, the packet is rejected without sending an error message to the sender of the packet; if a reject rule matches, the packet is rejected and an ICMP Host Unreachable message sent to the sender of the packet. The packet is only forwarded if an accept rule matches.
- All packets without matching rules are rejected without sending an error message to the sender when all the existing rules have been checked (=default behaviour).

19.1 Policies

19.1.1 Filter Rules

The default behaviour with **Action** = *Access* consists of two implicit filter rules: If an incoming packet can be assigned to an existing connection and if a suitable connection is expected (e.g. such as an affiliated connection of an existing connection), the packet is allowed.

The sequence of filter rules in the list is relevant: The filter rules are applied to each packet

in succession until a rule matches. If overlapping occurs, i.e. more than one filter rule matches a packet, only the first rule is executed. This means that if the first rule denies a packet, whereas a later rule allows it, the packet is rejected. A deny rule also has no effect if a relevant packet has previously been allowed by another filter rule.

A list of all configured filter rules is displayed in the **Firewall->Policies->Filter Rules** menu.

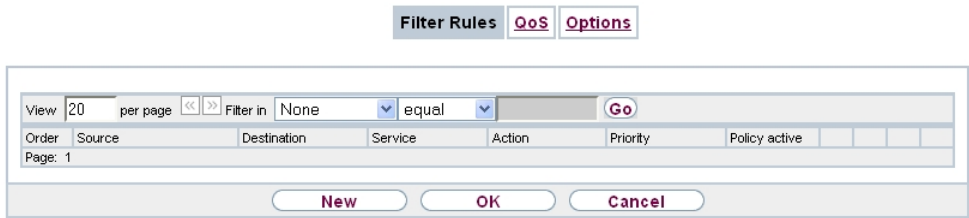




Fig. 146: Firewall->Policies->Filter Rules

You can use the  button to insert another policy above the list entry. The configuration menu for creating a new policy opens.

You can use the  button to move the list entry. A dialog box opens, in which you can select the position to which the policy is to be moved.

19.1.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional parameters.

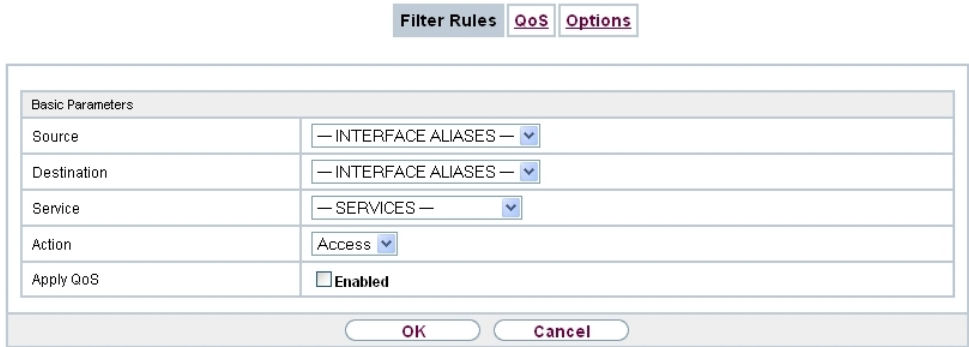


Fig. 147: Firewall->Policies->Filter Rules->New

The menu **Firewall->Policies->Filter Rules->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Source	<p>Select one of the preconfigured aliases for the source of the packet.</p> <p>In the list, all WAN/LAN interfaces, interface groups (see Firewall->Interfaces->Groups), addresses (see Firewall->Addresses->Address List) and address groups (see Firewall->Addresses->Groups) are available.</p> <p>The value <i>Any</i> means that neither the source interface nor the source address is checked.</p>
Destination	<p>Select one of the preconfigured aliases for the destination of the packet.</p> <p>In the list, all WAN/LAN interfaces, interface groups (see Firewall->Interfaces->Groups), addresses (see Firewall->Addresses->Address List) and address groups (see Firewall->Addresses->Groups).</p> <p>The value <i>Any</i> means that neither the destination interface nor the destination address is checked.</p>
Service	<p>Select one of the preconfigured services to which the packet to be filtered must be assigned.</p> <p>The extensive range of services configured ex works includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>ftp</i> • <i>telnet</i> • <i>smtp</i> • <i>dns</i> • <i>http</i> • <i>nntp</i> • <i>Internet</i> • <i>Netmeeting</i> <p>Additional services are created in Firewall->Services->Service List.</p> <p>In addition, the service groups configured in Firewall->Services->Groups can be selected.</p>

Field	Description
Action	<p>Select the action to be applied to a filtered packet.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Access</i> (default value): The packets are forwarded on the basis of the entries.• <i>Deny</i>: The packets are rejected.• <i>Reject</i>: The packets are rejected. An error message is issued to the sender of the packet.
Apply QoS	<p>Only for Action = <i>Access</i></p> <p>Select whether you want to enable QoS for this policy with the priority selected in Priority.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The option is deactivated by default.</p> <p>If QoS is not activated for this policy, bear in mind that the data cannot be prioritised on the sender side either.</p> <p>A policy for which QoS has been enabled is also set for the firewall. Make sure therefore that data traffic that has not been expressly authorised is blocked by the firewall!</p>
Priority	<p>Only for Apply QoS = <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>Select the priority with which the data specified by the policy is handled on the send side.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): No priority.• <i>Low Latency</i>: Low Latency Transmission (LTT), i.e. handling of data with the lowest possible latency, e.g. suitable for VoIP data.• <i>High</i>• <i>Medium</i>• <i>Low</i>

19.1.2 QoS

More and more applications need increasingly larger bandwidths, which are not always available. Quality of Service (QoS) makes it possible to distribute the available bandwidths effectively and intelligently. Certain applications can be given preference and bandwidth reserved for them.

A list of all QoS rules is displayed in the **Firewall->Policies->QoS** menu.

19.1.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new QoS rules.

Filter RulesQoSOptions

Configure QoS Interface

Interface

Select one

Traffic Shaping

☐ Enabled

Filter Rules

Source | Destination | Service | Priority | Use | Bandwidth (Bit/s) | Bounded

OK

Cancel

Fig. 148: Firewall->Policies->QoS->New

The **Firewall->Policies->QoS->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Configure QoS Interface menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface on which bandwidth management is to be carried out.
Traffic Shaping	Select whether you want to activate bandwidth management for the selected interface. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
Specify bandwidth	Only for Traffic Shaping = <i>Enabled</i> Enter the maximum available bandwidth in kbps for the selected interface.

Field	Description
Filter Rules	<p>This field contains a list of all configured firewall policies for which QoS was activated (Apply QoS = <i>Enabled</i>). The following options are available for each list entry:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use: Select whether this entry should be assigned to the QoS interface. The option is deactivated by default.• Bandwidth: Enter the maximum available bandwidth in Bit/s for the service specified under Service. <i>0</i> is entered by default.• Bounded: Select whether the bandwidth defined in Bandwidth can be exceeded in the longer term. By activating this field, you specify that it cannot be exceeded. If the option is deactivated, the bandwidth can be exceeded and the excess data rate is handled in accordance with the priority defined in the firewall policy. The option is deactivated by default.

19.1.3 Options

In this menu, you can disable or enable the firewall and can log its activities. In addition, you can define after how many seconds of inactivity a session shall be ended.

Filter Rules

QoS

Options

Global Firewall Options

Firewall Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Logged Actions	All
Full Filtering	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Session Timer	
UDP Inactivity	<input type="text" value="180"/> Seconds
TCP Inactivity	<input type="text" value="3600"/> Seconds
PPTP Inactivity	<input type="text" value="86400"/> Seconds
Other Inactivity	<input type="text" value="30"/> Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 149: Firewall->Policies->Options

The menu **Firewall->Policies->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Global Firewall Options menu.

Field	Description
Firewall Status	<p>Enable or disable the firewall function.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i></p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Logged Actions	<p>Select the firewall syslog level.</p> <p>The messages are output together with messages from other subsystems.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All</i> (default value): All firewall activities are displayed.• <i>Deny</i>: Only reject and deny events are shown, see "Action".• <i>Accept</i>: Only accept events are shown.• <i>None</i>: Syslog messages are not generated.
Full Filtering	<p>Here you define whether packets are only to be filtered if they are sent to an interface other than the interface that created the connection.</p> <p>With <i>Enable</i>, all the packets are filtered (default value).</p>

Fields in the Session Timer menu.

Field	Description
UDP Inactivity	<p>Enter the inactivity time after which a UDP session is to be re-garded as expired (in seconds).</p> <p>Possible values are <i>30</i> to <i>86400</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>180</i>.</p>
TCP Inactivity	<p>Enter the inactivity time after which a TCP session is to be re-garded as expired (in seconds).</p> <p>Possible values are <i>30</i> to <i>86400</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>3600</i>.</p>
PPTP Inactivity	<p>Enter the inactivity time after which a PPTP session is to be re-garded as expired (in seconds).</p> <p>Possible values are <i>30</i> to <i>86400</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The default value is <i>86400</i> .
Other Inactivity	<p>Enter the inactivity time after which a session of another type is to be regarded as expired (in seconds).</p> <p>Possible values are <i>30</i> to <i>86400</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>30</i>.</p>

19.2 Interfaces

19.2.1 Groups

A list of all configured interface routes is displayed in the **Firewall->Interfaces->Groups** menu.

You can group together the interfaces of your device. This makes it easier to configure fire-wall rules.

19.2.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new interface groups.

Groups

Basic Parameters

Description

Members

Interface	Selection
LOCAL	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN_EN1-0	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN_EN1-4	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 150: **Firewall->Interfaces->Groups->New**

The menu **Firewall->Interfaces->Groups->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description of the interface group.
Members	Select the members of the group from the available interfaces. To do this, activate the field in the Selection column.

19.3 Addresses

19.3.1 Address List

A list of all configured addresses is displayed in the **Firewall->Addresses->Address List** menu.

19.3.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional addresses.

Address List

Groups

Basic Parameters

Description

Address Type

☒ Address / Subnet

☐ Address Range

Address / Subnet

/

OK

Cancel

Fig. 151: Firewall->Addresses->Address List->New

The menu **Firewall->Addresses->Address List->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description of the address.
Address Type	Select the type of address you want to specify. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Address / Subnet</i> (default value): Enter an IP address with subnet mask.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Address Range</i>: Enter an IP address range with a start and end address.
Address / Subnet	<p>Only for Address Type = <i>Address / Subnet</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the host or a network address and the related netmask.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0.0.0.0</i>.</p>
Address Range	<p>Only for Address Type = <i>Address Range</i></p> <p>Enter the start and end IP address of the range.</p>

19.3.2 Groups

A list of all configured address groups is displayed in the **Firewall->Addresses->Groups** menu.

You can group together addresses. This makes it easier to configure firewall rules.

19.3.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up additional address groups.

Address List

Groups

Basic Parameters

Description

Selection

Addresses

Selection

ANY

☐

OK

Cancel

Fig. 152: Firewall->Addresses->Groups->New

The menu **Firewall->Addresses->Groups->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description of the address group.

Field	Description
Selection	Select the members of the group from the available Addresses . To do this, activate the Fields in the Selection column.

19.4 Services

19.4.1 Service List

In the **Firewall->Services->Service List** menu, a list of all available services is displayed.

19.4.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up additional services.

Service List

Groups

Basic Parameters

Description

Protocol

Any

OK

Cancel

Fig. 153: Firewall->Services->Service List->New

The menu **Firewall->Services->Service List->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter an alias for the service you want to configure.
Protocol	Select the protocol on which the service is to be based. The most important protocols are available for selection.
Destination Port Range	<p>Only for Protocol = <i>TCP, UDP/TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>In the first field, enter the destination port via which the service is to run.</p> <p>If a port number range is specified, in the second field enter the last port of the port range. By default the field does not contain an entry. If a value is displayed, this means that the previously</p>

Field	Description
	<p>specified port number is verified. If a port range is to be checked, enter the upper limit here.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p>
Source Port Range	<p>Only for Protocol = <i>TCP</i>, <i>UDP/TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i></p> <p>In the first field, enter the source port to be checked, if applicable.</p> <p>If a port number range is specified, in the second field enter the last port of the port range. By default the field does not contain an entry. If a value is displayed, this means that the previously specified port number is verified. If a port range is to be checked, enter the upper limit here.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p>
Type	<p>Only for Protocol = <i>ICMP</i></p> <p>The Type field shows the class of ICMP messages, the Code field specifies the type of message in greater detail.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>Echo Reply</i>• <i>Destination unreachable</i>• <i>Source Quench</i>• <i>Redirect</i>• <i>Echo</i>• <i>Time Exceeded</i>• <i>Parameter Problem</i>• <i>Timestamp</i>• <i>Timestamp Reply</i>• <i>Information Request</i>• <i>Information Reply</i>• <i>Address Mask Request</i>• <i>Address Mask Reply</i>

Field	Description
Code	<p>Selection options for the ICMP codes are only available for Type = <i>Destination unreachable</i></p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Any</i> (default value)• <i>Net Unreachable</i>• <i>Host Unreachable</i>• <i>Protocol Unreachable</i>• <i>Port Unreachable</i>• <i>Fragmentation Needed</i>• <i>Communication with Destination Network is Administratively Prohibited</i>• <i>Communication with Destination Host is Administratively Prohibited</i>

19.4.2 Groups

A list of all configured service groups is displayed in the **Firewall->Services->Groups** menu.

You can group together services. This makes it easier to configure firewall rules.

19.4.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up additional service groups.

Service List

Groups

Basic Parameters

Description

Members

Service	Selection
KaZaA	<input type="checkbox"/>
activity	<input type="checkbox"/>
any	<input type="checkbox"/>
apple-qt	<input type="checkbox"/>
auth	<input type="checkbox"/>
chargen	<input type="checkbox"/>
clients_1	<input type="checkbox"/>
clients_2	<input type="checkbox"/>
daytime	<input type="checkbox"/>
dhcp	<input type="checkbox"/>
discard	<input type="checkbox"/>
dns	<input type="checkbox"/>
echo	<input type="checkbox"/>
exec	<input type="checkbox"/>
unpriv	<input type="checkbox"/>
ups	<input type="checkbox"/>
uucp-path	<input type="checkbox"/>
who	<input type="checkbox"/>
whois	<input type="checkbox"/>
wins	<input type="checkbox"/>
x400	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 154: Firewall->Services->Groups->New

The menu **Firewall->Services->Groups->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the desired description of the service group.
Members	Select the members of the group from the available service aliases. To do this, activate the Fields in the Selection column.

Chapter 20 VoIP

Voice over IP (VoIP) uses the IP protocol for voice and video transmission.

The main difference compared with conventional telephony is that the voice information is not transmitted over a switched connection in a telephone network, but divided into data packets by the Internet protocol and these packets are then passed to the destination over undefined paths in a network. This technology uses the existing network infrastructure for voice transmission and shares this with other communication services.

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is used to establish, clear and control a communication session.

20.1 Application Level Gateway

To enable IP telephones to connect by SIP to a VoIP Provider your device has an Application Level Gateway (ALG), i.e. an appropriate proxy that implements the necessary NAT and firewall releases.




Note

The Application Level Gateway must always be used if NAT is enabled on the interface that makes the connection to the Internet.

20.1.1 SIP Proxies

Here you can view a list of application level gateway entries that have already been configured. These entries enable the ALG. Each entry defines a particular TCP or UDP destination port that is to be supervised by the ALG. In the ex works state, there are two entries configured for the SIP Ports TCP 5060 and UDP 5060 in accordance with the IANA definition.

20.1.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create application level gateway entries.

SIP ProxiesSIP Endpoints

Basic Parameters

Description	<input type="text"/>
Administrative Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol	UDP <input type="text"/> Destination Port <input type="text"/>
Session Timeout	<input type="text"/> 7200 Seconds
Low Latency Transmission	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

OKCancel

Fig. 155: VoIP->Application Level Gateway->SIP Proxies->+New

The VoIP->Application Level Gateway->SIP Proxies->+New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.


Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the application level gateway.
Administrative Status	Select whether the SIP proxy should be enabled or disabled. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> . The function is enabled by default.
Protocol	Select the protocol to be used. Possible values: <i>UDP</i> (default value) or <i>TCP</i> Enter the port to be supervised by the proxy as Destination Port . or each destination port to which VoIP clients from the LAN can connect, you must configure a proxy. The ports can be provider-specific.
Session Timeout	Enter the time in seconds for which a session stays up if no

Field	Description
	<p>data packets are sent or received.</p> <p>This value must be greater than the SIP Expire Time of the connected SIP client (SIP telephone, terminal adapter etc.)</p> <p>The default value is <i>1800</i>.</p>
Low Latency Transmission	<p>Specify whether a mechanism should be used to minimise the transit time of VoIP data packets between two subscribers. This guarantees good voice quality with high line load.</p> <p>Note that low latency transmission only has to be enabled for calls that are not established via the connections configured in VoIP->Media Gateway.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

20.1.2 SIP Endpoints

Shows the sessions that are currently being managed by ALG.


This includes static entries to make internal SIP servers/proxies (e.g. internal Asterisk server) accessible from the WAN (Internet) by NAPT. In addition, internal SIP clients without registration can be made accessible using a static entry. All active SIP sessions that have been initiated from internal SIP terminals are recognised dynamically and listed here. These are only displayed for monitoring and administration and cannot be edited.




Note

All automatically created entries that are not used for longer than 24 hours are automatically deleted from the table.

20.1.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to add static entries for SIP terminals in the LAN that are to be accessible by terminals from the WAN across the NAPT barrier. Choose the  icon to edit existing static entries.



Note


Entries created dynamically for active sessions cannot be edited. These entries can only be removed resulting in the immediate termination of the corresponding SIP connection.


SIP ProxiesSIP Endpoints

Basic Parameters

Type of Endpoint	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Client <input type="radio"/> Server
Protocol	UDP
Internal IP Address	
Remote Port	0
External Port	0

OKCancel

Fig. 156: VoIP->Application Level Gateway->SIP Endpoints->  +New

The VoIP->Application Level Gateway->SIP Endpoints->  +New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.	
Field	Description
Type of Endpoint	<div>Select the role for the SIP endpoint in the LAN.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Client (default value): The internal SIP endpoint is a SIP client (e.g. telephone).Server: The internal SIP endpoint is a SIP server into which the SIP endpoint can login externally.
Protocol	<div>Select the protocol to be used for data transmission.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">UDP (default value)TCP <div>If a protocol has been automatically recognised, it should not be changed.</div>


Field	Description
Internal IP Address	Specify the IP address for the internal SIP endpoint in the LAN.
Remote Port	Only for Type of Endpoint = <i>Client</i> Enter the port of the removed SIP terminal (in the WAN).
Internal Port	Only for Type of Endpoint = <i>Server</i> Enter the port for the internal SIP endpoint in the LAN.
External Port	Specify the port on the WAN site of the gateway that is used for access through the NAPT barriers to a SIP endpoint in the LAN. For clients, the external port is recognised automatically and should not be changed.

20.2 Media Gateway

A media gateway serves as a translation instance between different telecommunications networks, e.g between the plain old phone network and the next generation networks (IP networks).

With the Teldat Media Gateway, a company equipped with an automatic PBX on a wired telephone network can be connected to a SIP Trunking Service Provider on the Internet in order to use IP telephony.

The Teldat Media Gateway supports the binding of several SIP Provider Accounts. With this gateway, you can set up extensions, create an extension number plan and configure exchange functions and optimise voice data transmission for low bandwidth of the upload connection.



Note


Your device must be fitted with a DSP module to be able to use the media gateway functions. Information on building in the DSP module is provided in the installation instructions included with the module.

20.2.1 Extensions

Here you can configure the numbers of the terminal devices (=Extensions) connected to the media gateway, i.e. the numbers of the SIP terminals and the numbers of the ISDN terminals, depending on the available interfaces.

A list of all existing subscribers is displayed in the **VoIP->Media Gateway->Extensions** menu.

20.2.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to create new extensions.

Extensions

SIP Accounts

Call Routing

CLID Translation

Call Translation

ISDN Trunks

Options

Basic Parameters

Description

Extension / User Name

Interface Type

☒ SIP ☐ Analogue

Registration

☒ Enabled

Expire Time

60

Seconds

Authentication ID

Password

Protocol

UDP

Port

5060

Advanced Settings

Codec Settings

Codec Proposal Sequence

☒ Default ☐ Quality ☐ Lowest ☐ Highest

Sort Order

☒ G.711 uLaw

☒ G.711 aLaw

☒ G.729

☐ G.726-40

☐ T.38 Fax

☐ G.726-32

☐ G.726-24

☐ G.726-16

☐ DTMF Outband

☐ SRTP

☐ Data (RFC 4040)

Voice Quality Settings

Echo Cancellation

☒ Enabled

Comfort Noise Generation (CNG)

☒ Enabled

Packet Size

20

ms

OK

Cancel

Fig. 157: VoIP->Media Gateway->Extensions-> +New

The **VoIP->Media Gateway->Extensions->** **+New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the extension.
Extension / User Name	ISDN terminals: Enter the subscriber number the extension. SIP terminals: Enter the user name. A maximum of 40 characters can be entered.
Interface Type	Select the interface type to be used. The selection depends on the interfaces available. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>SIP</i>: A SIP terminal device is used for the call.• <i>ISDN</i>: An ISDN terminal device is used for the call. Can only be selected if ISDN interfaces configured with Euro ISDN point-to-multipoint (NT mode) are available.• <i>Analogue</i>: An analogue terminal device is used for the call. Can only be selected if analogue interfaces are available.
Select ISDN interface	Only for Interface Type = <i>ISDN</i> Select an ISDN interface. The ISDN interfaces you can select depends on the device used.
Select analogue inter- face	Only for Interface Type = <i>Analogue</i> Select an analogue interface. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• fxs5-1• fxs5-2• fxs5-3 (default value)• fxs5-4
Registration	Only for Interface Type = <i>SIP</i> Specify whether the registration mechanism is to be used by

Field	Description
	<p>SIP REGISTER. Normally, every SIP client (user) sends its current position to a REGISTRAR server by means of a REGISTER message. This information about the user and his current address is held by the REGISTRAR server and queried by other proxies to find the user.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>Apart from this standard procedure, the relevant data can also be sent to a particular IP address that is already known to the correspondent. Registration and authentication are not then needed and the Registration function is disabled. An example of this method is Microsoft Exchange SIP.</p>
Expire Time	<p>Only if Registration is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the time in seconds after which the current registration becomes invalid and a new registration request is therefore sent.</p> <p>For clients, the external port is recognised automatically and should not be changed.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>3600</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>60</i>.</p>
SIP Endpoint IP Address	<p>Only if Registration is disabled.</p> <p>For configurations with no registration (e.g. connection to a Microsoft Exchange Communication Server) the connection can be set up as a static host. This requires you to specify the static IP address of the terminal.</p>
Authentication ID	<p>Only for Interface Type = <i>SIP</i></p> <p>Enter a name that is to be used for authentication.</p> <p>A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.</p> <p>The name given here must also be entered on the SIP telephone.</p> <p>If you do not enter a name, the name in the Extension / User Name field is used.</p>

Field	Description
Password	<p>Only for Interface Type = <i>SIP</i></p> <p>Enter a password here.</p> <p>A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.</p> <p>The password given here must also be entered on the SIP telephone.</p>
Protocol	<p>Select the protocol to be used for data transmission.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>UDP</i> (default value), <i>TCP</i> or <i>TLS</i>.</p> <p>If a protocol has been automatically recognised, it should not be changed.</p>
Port	<p>Enter the number of the UDP, TCP port or TLS ports to be used for the connection to the server or proxy.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 65535.</p> <p>The default value is 5060.</p>

Fields in the Codec Settings menu.

Field	Description
Codec Proposal Sequence	<p>Choose the order in which the codecs are offered for use by the media gateway. If the first codec cannot be used, the second is tried and so on.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default</i> (default value): the codec in the first position in the menu will be used if possible.• <i>Quality</i>: The codecs are sorted by quality. If possible, the codec with the best quality is used.• <i>Lowest</i>: The codecs are sorted by required bandwidth. If possible, the codec with the lowest bandwidth requirement is used.• <i>Highest</i>: The codecs are sorted by required bandwidth. If possible, the codec with the highest bandwidth requirement is used.
Sort Order	Select the codecs to be proposed for the connection. The co-

Field	Description
	<p>decs chosen here are proposed in a certain order, depending on the setting in the Codec Proposal Sequence field.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>G.711 uLaw</i>: ISDN codec according to US law• <i>G.711 aLaw</i>: ISDN codec according to EU law• <i>G.729</i>: Compressed from 31 to 8 kbps; good voice quality• <i>G.726-40</i>: Compressed from 63 to 40 kbps• <i>G.726-32</i>: Compressed from 55 to 32 kbps• <i>G.726-24</i>: Compressed from 47 to 24 kbps• <i>G.726-16</i>: Compressed from 39 to 16 kbps• <i>DTMF Outband</i>: DTMF Outband. First the system attempts to use RFC 2833. If the remote terminal does not use this standard, SIP Info is used.• <i>T.38 Fax</i>: Allows the transmission of fax messages over data networks.• <i>SRTP</i>: SRTP is an encrypted variant of the Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP).• <i>Data (RFC 4040)</i>: Enable the transport of 64 kbit/s channel data in RTP packets. <p>By default <i>G.711 uLaw</i>, <i>G.711 aLaw</i> and <i>G.729</i> are enabled.</p> <p>The codecs actually used are the intersect of the codecs defined here and those signalled by the provider. For outgoing calls, any remaining codecs are dropped from the list that would require more than the available bandwidth.</p>

Fields in the Voice Quality Settings menu.

Field	Description
Echo Cancellation	<p>Select whether echo cancellation should be used.</p> <p>Echo cancellation is a technique to suppress echo feedback in voice communication on full duplex lines.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>

Field	Description
Comfort Noise Generation (CNG)	<p>Specify whether Comfort Noise Generation should be used.</p> <p>For digital voice transmission, this function introduces a low level of background noise to avoid the impression that, during pauses at the other end, the connection is lost.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Packet Size	<p>Specify how many milliseconds of voice an RTP data packet should contain.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>5</i> to <i>500</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>20</i>.</p>

20.2.2 SIP Accounts

If your want your device to connect to other SIP servers (e.g. servers of Internet SIP Service providers), you can configure the necessary entries here. In this case, the media gateway acts as a SIP client.

Furthermore, you can configure the entries for SIP trunking scenarios here. In this case, the media gateway acts as a SIP server for other SIP servers. An example for this is the connection of a SIP PBX (e.g. Asterisk) to the media gateway.

This means that not only all SIP provider accounts are configured here but also direct dial-in PBXs connected with the media gateway.




Note

In no case should you use this menu to configure SIP extensions, i.e. for SIP clients or PSTN clients such as SIP telephones, terminal adapters or ISDN telephones

SIP extensions can be configured in the **VoIP->Extensions** menu.

The **VoIP->Media Gateway->SIP Accounts** menu displays a list of all existing SIP accounts (SIP Client Mode and SIP Server Mode).

20.2.2.1 Edit or New

Select the **New** button to create new SIP accounts. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. In this menu SIP accounts are configured in SIP client mode as well as in SIP server mode.

ExtensionsSIP AccountsCall RoutingCLID TranslationCall TranslationISDN TrunksOptions

Basic Parameters

Description	<input type="text"/>
Administrative Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Trunk Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Off <input type="radio"/> Client <input type="radio"/> Server <input type="radio"/> gw-trunk
Registrar	<input type="text"/>
Outbound Proxy	<input type="text"/>
Realm	<input type="text"/>
Protocol	UDP <input type="button" value="v"/> Port: 5060
User Name	<input type="text"/>
Authentication ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Registration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Expire Time	600 Seconds

Advanced Settings

Codec Settings


Codec Proposal Sequence	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Quality <input type="radio"/> Low Bandwidth <input type="radio"/> High Bandwidth				
Sort Order	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> G.711 uLaw	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> G.711 aLaw	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> G.729	<input type="checkbox"/> G.726-40	<input type="checkbox"/> T.38 Fax
	<input type="checkbox"/> G.726-32	<input type="checkbox"/> G.726-24	<input type="checkbox"/> G.726-16	<input type="checkbox"/> DTMF Outband	<input type="checkbox"/> SRTP
	<input type="checkbox"/> Data (RFC 4040)				

Voice Quality Settings

Echo Cancellation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Comfort Noise Generation (CNG)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Packet Size	20 ms

OKCancel

Fig. 158: VoIP->Media Gateway->SIP Accounts-> +New

The VoIP->Media Gateway->SIP Accounts-> +New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the SIP account.
Administrative Status	<p>Select whether the SIP account should be enabled or disabled.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Trunk Mode	<p>Select whether and in which trunk mode the SIP account should be operated.</p> <p>Trunk mode (DDI, Direct Dial In) allows an incoming call to be assigned correctly to a terminal (DDI). For an outgoing call, the caller can be indicated to the called party.</p> <p>The setting that you can use depends on the provider.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Off</i> (default value): Trunk mode is not used. The SIP account has only one number.• <i>Client</i>: The media gateway is operated as DDI client. It is assigned a DDI.• <i>Server</i>: The media gateway is operated as a DDI server so that DDI clients can connect.• <i>gw-trunk</i>: The media gateway is operated as DDI client, but used as a trunk. This setting is used to connect a software-based IP PBX from Swyx.
Registrar	<p>Only for Trunk Mode = <i>Off</i>, <i>Client</i> and <i>gw-trunk</i>Enter the IP address or domain name (FQDN) of the SIP registrar. The maximum number of characters is 40.</p> <p>Entries with spaces are not allowed.</p>
SIP Endpoint IP Address	<p>Only for Trunk Mode = <i>Server</i> and Registration deactivated</p> <p>Enter the IP address or domain name (FQDN) of the SIP proxy server.</p>
Outbound Proxy	<p>Only for Trunk Mode = <i>Off</i>, <i>Client</i> or <i>gw-trunk</i></p> <p>Enter the name or IP address of the SIP outbound proxy server.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>A maximum of 32 characters can be entered.</p> <p>Here you must make an entry only if, for all SIP sessions, the communication is not to be direct but via a further proxy.</p> <p>In SIP client mode: Enter a name or IP address only if this is explicitly specified by the provider.</p>
Realm	<p>Enter a new domain name or a new IP address for the SIP proxy server.</p> <p>If you do not make an entry, the entry in the Registrar field is used.</p> <p>In SIP client mode: Enter a name or IP address only if this is explicitly specified by the provider.</p>
Protocol	<p>Select the protocol to be used for data transport.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>UDP</i> (default value) or <i>TCP</i></p> <p>Enter the Port via which the data is to be transported.</p> <p>The default value is <i>5060</i>.</p> <p>In SIP client mode: The ports can be provider-specific.</p>
User Name	<p>In SIP client mode: Enter the username for authentication if your VoIP provider has assigned one for you.</p> <p>In SIP server mode: You must define the user name.</p> <p>A maximum of 40 characters can be entered.</p>
Authentication ID	<p>Enter a name that is to be used for authentication with the outbound proxy.</p> <p>If you do not enter a name, the name in the User Name field is used.</p> <p>In SIP client mode: Enter a name only if this is explicitly specified by the provider.</p>
Password	<p>In SIP client mode: The VoIP provider gives you a PIN or password for authentication. You must enter this value here.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>In SIP server mode: Define a PIN or a password.</p> <p>A maximum of 40 characters can be entered.</p>
Registration	<p>Specify whether the registration mechanism is to be used by SIP REGISTER. Normally, every SIP client (user) sends its current position to a REGISTRAR server by means of a REGISTER message. This information about the user and his current address is held by the REGISTRAR server and queried by other proxies to find the user.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>Apart from this standard procedure, the relevant data can also be sent to a particular IP address that is already known to the correspondent. Registration and authentication are not then needed and the Registration function is disabled. An example of this method is Microsoft Exchange SIP.</p>
Expire Time	<p>Only if Registration is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the time in seconds after which the current registration becomes invalid and a new registration request is therefore sent.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>38400</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>600</i>.</p> <p>In answer to a REGISTER request, a server can set another Expire Time which overwrites the setting here.</p>

Fields in the Trunk Settings menu.

Field	Description
SIP Header Field(s) for Caller Address	<p>Only for Trunk Mode = <i>Client</i>, <i>Server</i> or <i>gw-trunk</i></p> <p>Select the position of the sender ID (e.g. subscriber number) in the SIP header for outgoing calls. (For incoming calls, the subscriber number is taken automatically from the SIP header.)</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Disabled</i> (default value): the sender ID is not sent.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Display and User Name</i>: The sender ID is placed in both "Display" and "User" fields of the SIP header.• <i>Display only</i>: The sender ID is placed in the "Display" field of the SIP header.• <i>User only</i>: The sender ID is sent in the "User" field of the SIP header.• <i>P-Preferred</i>: The so-called "p-preferred-identity" field is added to the SIP header and contains the sender ID.• <i>P-Asserted</i>: The so-called "p-asserted-identity" field is added to the SIP header and contains the sender ID.
Call Number	<p>Only for Trunk Mode = <i>Server</i></p> <p>You can set a number that is added as a prefix for outgoing calls to the sender's number and is removed from the destination number for incoming calls. This corresponds to the trunk (exchange) number of an exchange.</p>

Fields in the Codec Settings menu.

Field	Description
Codec Proposal Sequence	<p>Choose the order in which the codecs are offered for use by the media gateway. If the first codec cannot be used, the second is tried and so on.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default</i> (default value): the codec in the first position in the menu will be used if possible.• <i>Quality</i>: The codecs are sorted by quality. If possible, the codec with the best quality is used.• <i>Low Bandwidth</i>: The codecs are sorted by required bandwidth. If possible, the codec with the lowest bandwidth requirement is used.• <i>High Bandwidth</i>: The codecs are sorted by required bandwidth. If possible, the codec with the highest bandwidth requirement is used.
Sort Order	<p>Select the codecs to be proposed for the connection. The codecs chosen here are proposed in a certain order, depending on the setting in the Codec Proposal Sequence field.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>G.711 uLaw</i>: ISDN codec according to US law• <i>G.711 aLaw</i>: ISDN codec according to EU law• <i>G.729</i>: Compressed from 31 to 8 kbps; good voice quality• <i>G.726-40</i>: Compressed from 63 to 40 kbps• <i>G.726-32</i>: Compressed from 55 to 32 kbps• <i>G.726-24</i>: Compressed from 47 to 24 kbps• <i>G.726-16</i>: Compressed from 39 to 16 kbps• <i>DTMF Outband</i>: DTMF Outband. First the system attempts to use RFC 2833. If the remote terminal does not use this standard, SIP Info is used.• <i>T.38 Fax</i>: Allows the transmission of fax messages over data networks.• <i>SRTP</i>: SRTP is an encrypted variant of the Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP).• <i>Data (RFC 4040)</i>: Enable the transport of 64 kbit/s channel data in RTP packets. <p>By default <i>G.711 uLaw</i>, <i>G.711 aLaw</i> and <i>G.729</i> are enabled.</p> <p>The codecs actually used are the intersect of the codecs defined here and those signalled by the provider. For outgoing calls, any remaining codecs are dropped from the list that would require more than the available bandwidth.</p>

Fields in the Voice Quality Settings menu.

Field	Description
Echo Cancellation	<p>Select whether echo cancellation should be used.</p> <p>Echo cancellation is a technique to suppress echo feedback in voice communication on full duplex lines.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Comfort Noise Generation (CNG)	<p>Specify whether Comfort Noise Generation should be used.</p> <p>For digital voice transmission, this function introduces a low</p>


Field	Description
	<p>level of background noise to avoid the impression that, during pauses at the other end, the connection is lost.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Packet Size	<p>Specify how many milliseconds of voice an RTP data packet should contain.</p> <p>Possible values are 5 to 500.</p> <p>The default value is 20.</p>

20.2.3 Call Routing

Here you can define the conditions for the routing of calls. Define a list with rules or rule chains that are used to manipulate the indicated destination numbers.

A list of all existing entries is displayed in the **VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Routing** menu.

20.2.3.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to create new entries.

ExtensionsSIP AccountsCall RoutingCLID TranslationCall TranslationISDN TrunksOptions

Basic Parameters

Description

Administrative Status

Type

Calling Line

Calling Address

Called Address

Routing Rules

Priority	Line	Called Address Translation	Status	Action		
1	-					

Add

Routing Rule

Priority

Administrative Status

Line

Called Address Translation

Apply

OK

Cancel

Fig. 159: VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Routing->+New

The VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Routing->+New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the entry.
Administrative Status	Select whether the entry should be activated. The function is enabled with <i>Enable</i> . The function is enabled by default.
Type	Specify how calls are to be routed. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Accept Rule</i>: For calls forwarded by the media gateway to a PBX or an ISDN TE connector or a SIP DDI client. For this, the following can be used: PRI interfaces in NT mode, BRI in-

Field	Description
	<p>terfaces in NT mode, SIP accounts in trunk mode (server mode).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Deny</i>: For calls that are not to be routed (to be blocked).
Calling Line	<p>You can restrict the application of the entry to the line on which the call comes in.</p> <p>The selection depends on the interfaces available and on the SIP accounts that have been created.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>pri<Interface Index></i>: restricts the routing entry to the selected PRI interface.• <i>bri<Interface Index></i>: restricts the routing entry to the selected BRI interface.• <i><SIP Account></i>: restricts the routing entry to the selected SIP account.• <i>Any</i>: No restriction of the entry.
Calling Address	<p>You can restrict the application of the entry to a particular caller. To do this, you must specify the subscriber number exactly (no wildcards).</p>
Called Address	<p>Enter the called address to which the rule is to be applied.</p> <p>To do this, enter an address numerically (e.g. a subscriber number) or alphanumerically (e.g. for a trunk) that is to be compared with a dialled address.</p> <p>The following wildcards can be used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• * means that at the end of a character string any number of characters may follow,• ? is a placeholder for an arbitrary character. <p>If the configured address agrees with the signalled address, the entry is used.</p>

In the **Routing Rules** menu you can define rules to determine how the subscriber number is manipulated before it is used for dialling.

Use **Add** to create more entries.

Fields in the Routing Rules menu (For Type = Accept Rule only)


Field	Description
Priority	<p>Enter a whole number starting with 1 in ascending order to define the order of filter rules.</p> <p>The rules are worked through in the order given in the list.</p> <p>If a line or SIP account is not available, the next rule is automatically used.</p>
Administrative Status	<p>Select whether the rule should be activated.</p> <p>The rule is enabled with <i>Enable</i>.</p> <p>The rule is active by default.</p>
Line	<p>Choose the ISDN line (PRI, BRI) or SIP account used for the outgoing call.</p>
Called Address Translation	<p>Enter how the subscriber number is manipulated before it is used for dialling.</p> <p>Notation: <a:b>; i.e. a is replaced by b. Every rule must be ended with a semicolon. A number of rules can be chained together using semicolons as separators, e.g. <a:b>;<c:d>;<e:f>. After confirmation of entry, the rule chain is automatically sorted by the "best match" method.</p> <p>Numerical and alphanumerical values are permissible.</p> <p>? is a placeholder for an arbitrary character.</p> <hr/> <p>Example 20.1. Example of a rule</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Rule: <:+49911>;• number dialled: 96731234• manipulated number: +4991196731234

20.2.4 CLID Translation

Here you define the processing of the calling party number for incoming calls. You can, for example, add a prefix to a received call number in order to route corresponding outgoing calls via a particular SIP account.

In the **VoIP->Media Gateway->CLID Translation** menu, a list of all existing entries is shown on which the received number is edited.

20.2.4.1 Edit or New


Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to create entries for CLID translation.

ExtensionsSIP AccountsCall RoutingCLID TranslationCall TranslationISDN TrunksOptions


Basic Parameters

Description

Calling Line



Called Line

Any

Called Address

Calling Address Translation

OK

Cancel

Fig. 160: **VoIP->Media Gateway->CLID Translation->** **+New**

The **VoIP->Media Gateway->CLID Translation->** **+New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the entry.
Calling Line	<div>Select the ISDN line or SIP account from which the call comes.</div> <div>The selection depends on the interfaces available and on the SIP accounts that have been created.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>pri<Interface Index></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected</div>

Field	Description
	<p>PRI interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>bri<Interface Index></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected BRI interface.• <i><SIP Account></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected SIP account.• <i>Any</i>: No restriction of the entry.
Called Line	<p>Here you have the option of entering the destination line of the call.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>pri<Interface Index></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected PRI interface.• <i>bri<Interface Index></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected BRI interface.• <i><SIP Account></i>: Restricts the entry to the selected SIP account.• <i>Any</i>: No restriction of the entry. <p>Enter either Called Line or Called Address.</p> <p>If a value other than <i>Any</i> is selected, Called Address should not be used. If Called Line = <i>Any</i> and Called Address is not used, all calls for Called Line are processed.</p>
Called Address	<p>Here you have the option of entering the destination address of the call.</p> <p>Enter either Called Line or Called Address. If Called Address is used, then Called Line = <i>Any</i> can be set .</p>
Calling Address Translation	<p>Enter the transformation rule applied to the call numbers.</p> <p>Notation: <a:b>; i.e. a is replaced by b. Every rule must be ended with a semicolon. A number of rules can be chained together using semicolons as separators, e.g. <a:b>;<c:d>;<e:f>;. After confirmation of entry, the rule chain is automatically sorted by the "best match" method.</p> <p>? is a placeholder for an arbitrary digit.</p>

Field	Description
	<div>Example 20.2. Example of a rule<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Rule: <:+49911>;• number dialled: 96731234• manipulated number: +4991196731234</div>

20.2.5 Call Translation

You can create a list for the translation of subscriber numbers, i.e. this list associates internal and external numbers.




Note

Which number (called party number or calling party number) is translated depends on the direction (incoming or outgoing) of the call in question. For incoming calls it is the called party number, for outgoing calls the calling party number that is translated.

For example, the internal number 340 can be shown externally as 09119673900 or a call from outside for the number 09119673200 can be routed internally to the number 340.

In the **VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Translation** menu, a list of existing transformations is displayed.

20.2.5.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to create entries for call translation.

Extensions

SIP Accounts

Call Routing

CLID Translation

Call Translation

ISDN Trunks

Options

Basic Parameters

Description

Direction

Both


Associated Line


Local Address

External Address

OK

Cancel

Fig. 161: VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Translation-> +New

The VoIP->Media Gateway->Call Translation-> +New menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the call translation.
Direction	Select the direction for the entry. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Both</i> (default value): For incoming and outgoing calls (bidirectional).• <i>Incoming</i>: For incoming calls.• <i>Outgoing</i>: For outgoing calls.
Associated Line	Select the ISDN line or SIP account via which the calls are to be routed. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>pri</i><Interface Index>: Restricts the call to the selected PRI interface.• <i>bri</i><Interface Index>: Restricts the call to the selected BRI interface.• <<i>SIP Account</i>>: restricts the call to the selected SIP account.
Local Address	Enter the internal number (e.g. extension or PABX number). For

Field	Description
	<p>incoming calls, the signalled Called Party Number (corresponds in the menu to the External Address) is translated to Local Address. For outgoing calls, the signalled Calling Party Number (corresponds in the menu to the Local Address field) is translated to External Address.</p> <p>Numerical and alphanumerical characters are permissible.</p> <p>? is a placeholder for an arbitrary digit.</p> <p>See Local Address and External Address must contain the same number of wildcards.</p>
External Address	<p>Enter the external number (e.g. ISDN MSN or SIP account subscriber number). For incoming calls, the signalled Called Party Number (corresponds in the menu to the External Address) is translated to Local Address. For outgoing calls, the signalled Calling Party Number (corresponds in the menu to the Local Address field) is translated to External Address.</p> <p>The External Address is not shown if the field Associated Line = <i><SIP Account></i> is set. In this case, the User Name of the selected SIP Account is used as External Address..</p>

20.2.6 ISDN Trunks

The **ISDN Trunks** menu is only displayed if you device has at least two ISDN connections in point-to-point mode (BRI or PRI), which are configured as TE (party line) or NT.




Note

Note that, for BRI connections, the connection mode (NT mode or TE mode) must be set by jumper in the device.

In this menu, the ISDN party lines (bundles) are defined.

20.2.6.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to create a new party line.

ExtensionsSIP AccountsCall RoutingCLID TranslationCall TranslationISDN TrunksOptions

Basic Parameters

Description

ISDN Mode

External

☐ bri2-0

OK

Cancel

Fig. 162: VoIP->Media Gateway->ISDN Trunks

The **VoIP->Media Gateway->ISDN Trunks** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the party line. The maximum number of characters is 40.
ISDN Mode	Select the mode in which the party line is to be operated. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Extern</i> (default value): Point-to-Point TE connection (telecom party line)• <i>Trunk</i>Point-to-Point NT connection (for connection of a PABX).
Members	Select the desired ISDN interfaces to be included with this party line.

20.2.7 Options

In the **VoIP->Media Gateway->Options** menu you can perform global settings for the Media Gateway.

ExtensionsSIP AccountsCall RoutingCLID TranslationCall TranslationISDN TrunksOptions

Basic Parameters

Media Gateway Status

☐ Enabled

Session Border Controller Mode

Auto

Media Stream Termination

☒ Enabled

Default Drop Extension

Dial Latency

5

Seconds

Advanced Settings

Speed Dialing

ShortcutReplacement

Add

OKCancel

Fig. 163: VoIP->Media Gateway->Options

The **VoIP->Media Gateway->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Media Gateway Status	<p>Select whether the media gateway function should be enabled.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Session Border Controller Mode	<p>Specify how the media gateway should behave in conjunction with a session border controller mode.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Auto</i> (default value): for all extensions that exactly agree with an existing SIP account, the call routing is handled by the session border controller, i.e. all SIP messages configured for the corresponding SIP account are forwarded to the session border controller. For all other extensions, the call routing is handled by the media gateway in accordance with the entries configured under Call Routing. Note that the call routing is handled by the media gateway if the provider is not available (backup).<i>Off</i>: Call routing is handled exclusively by the media gateway in accordance with the entries configured under Call Routing and the local extensions. For calls that are to be routed via a

Field	Description
	<p>particular provider (SIP account), you must configure a corresponding call routing entry. Internal calls (from internal extension to internal extension) that are only to be routed internally do not require an additional call routing entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i><SIP Trunk></i>: Select a SIP trunk account configured under VoIP->Media Gateway->SIP Accounts. In this case, the call routing for all extensions is handled by the session border controller, all SIP messages are forwarded to the session border controller. Note that the call routing is handled by the media gateway if the provider is not available (backup). <p>Please note: Entries in Call Routing have priority ahead of the session border controller configuration!</p>
Media Stream Termination	<p>Choose how RTP sessions are controlled by the system.</p> <p>If the function is enabled, RTP sessions are terminated on the media gateway, i.e. all RTP streams are controlled by the media gateway and routed via the media gateway. The participating terminal devices (e.g. SIP telephones) are not connected directly with one another. Note that, for VoIP to VoIP connections, there is no code translation for different VoIP terminal codecs. The codecs of media gateway and VoIP terminals must therefore agree.</p> <p>If the function is disabled, RTP sessions are not terminated on the media gateway, i.e. all RTP streams are routed by the media gateway without termination. The RTP data packets can be routed in complex networks and thus also via other gateways.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Default Drop Extension	<p>You can specify an extension to which incoming calls are forwarded if they cannot be assigned to an extension or connected PABX.</p>
Dial Latency	<p>Enter the maximum delay time before the system assumes the call number entered is complete and starts the SIP dialling process (sends the SIP INVITE message). This timeout is reset each time that a button is pressed.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>15</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	The default value is 5. If you terminate the number entered with #, dialling is immediate.

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Speed Dialing	<p>Define short sequences of numbers that can be dialled instead of the entire number.</p> <p>Click Add to configure new speeddial numbers.</p> <p>Enter the desired speeddial number for the user, e.g. 123 under Shortcut.</p> <p>Under Replacement enter the subscriber number to be dialled in place of the speed dial number, e.g. 09119673.</p> <p>In the example above, if a user types in *123, the device dials 09119673.</p> <p>If the user wishes to call extension 111, he types in *123111. The device dials 09119673111.</p> <p>A period at the end of the number indicates a complete number. This is dialled immediately the period is recognised.</p>

If you want to use a speeddial number from this list, you must dial * followed by the speed-dial number.

20.3 RTSP

In this menu, you configure the use of the RealTime Streaming protocol (RTSP).

RTSP is a network protocol for controlling multimedia traffic flows in IP-based networks. Payload data is not transferred using RTSP. Rather, it is used to control a multimedia session between sender and recipient.

If you want to use RTSP, the firewall and NAT must be configured accordingly. In the **VoIP->RTSP** menu, you can activate the RTSP proxy to enable requested RTSP sessions over the defined port if required.

20.3.1 RTSP Proxy

In the **VoIP->RTSP->RTSP Proxy** menu, you configure the use of the RealTime Streaming protocol.

RTSP Proxy

Basic Parameters

RTSP Proxy

☐ Enabled

RTSP Port

554

OK

Cancel

Fig. 164: **VoIP->RTSP->RTSP Proxy**

The **VoIP->RTSP->RTSP Proxy** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
RTSP Proxy	Select whether you want to permit RTSP sessions. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
RTSP Port	Select the port over which the RTSP messages are to come in and go out. Possible values are 0 to 65535. The default value is 554.

Chapter 21 Local Services

This menu offers services for the following application areas:

- Name resolution (DNS)
- Configuration via web browser (HTTPS)
- Locating of dynamic IP addresses using a DynDNS provider
- Configuration of gateway as a DHCP server (assignment of IP addresses)
- Access restriction on the Internet (web filter)
- Assignment of incoming and outgoing data and voice calls to authorised users (CAPI server)
- Automation of tasks according to schedule (scheduling)
- Alive checks for hosts or interfaces, ping tests
- User LAN protection (theft protection)
- Realtime video/audio conferences (Messenger services, universal plug & play)
- Provision of public Internet accesses (hotspot).
- Use of a redundant gateway (BRRP).

21.1 DNS

Each device in a TCP/IP network is usually located by its IP address. Because host names are often used in networks to reach different devices, it is necessary for the associated IP address to be known. This task can be performed by a DNS server, which resolves the host names into IP addresses. Alternatively, name resolution can also take place over the HOSTS file, which is available on all PCs.

Your device offers the following options for name resolution:

- DNS Proxy, for forwarding DNS requests sent to your device to a suitable DNS server. This also includes specific forwarding of defined domains (Forwarded Domains).
- DNS cache, for saving the positive and negative results of DNS requests.
- Static entries (static hosts), to manually define or prevent assignments of IP addresses to names.
- DNS monitoring (statistics), to provide an overview of DNS requests on your device.

Name server

Under **Local Services->DNS->Global Settings->Basic Parameters** you enter the IP addresses of name servers that are queried if your device cannot answer requests itself or by forwarding entries. Global name servers and name servers that are attached to an interface can both be entered.

Your device can also receive the global name servers dynamically via PPP or DHCP and transfer them dynamically if necessary.

Strategy for name resolution on your device

A DNS request is handled by your device as follows:

- (1) If possible, the request is answered directly from the static or dynamic cache with IP address or negative response.
- (2) Otherwise, if a suitable forwarding entry exists, the relevant DNS server is asked, depending on the configuration of the Internet or dialin connections, if necessary by setting up a WAN connection at extra cost. If the DNS server can resolve the name, the information is forwarded and a dynamic entry created in the cache.
- (3) Otherwise, if name servers have been entered, taking into account the priority configured and if the relevant interface status is "up", the primary DNS server is queried and then the secondary DNS server. If one of the DNS servers can resolve the name, the information is forwarded and a dynamic entry created in the cache.
- (4) Otherwise, if a suitable Internet or dialin connection is selected as the standard interface, the relevant DNS server is asked, depending on the configuration of the Internet or dialin connections, if necessary by setting up a WAN connection at extra cost. If one of the DNS servers can resolve the name, the information is forwarded and a dynamic entry created in the cache.
- (5) Otherwise, if overwriting the addresses of the global name servers is allowed in the **WAN->Internet + Dialup** menu (**Interface Mode** = *Dynamic*), a connection is set up – if necessary at extra cost – to the first Internet or dialin connection configured to enable DNS server addresses to be requested from DNS servers (**DNS Negotiation** = *Enabled*), if this has not been already attempted. When the name servers have been negotiated successfully, these name servers are then available for more queries.
- (6) Otherwise the initial request is answered with a server error.

If one of the DNS servers answers with `non-existent domain`, the initial request is immediately answered accordingly and a corresponding negative entry is made in the DNS cache of your device.

21.1.1 Global Settings

Global Settings

DNS Servers

Static Hosts

Domain Forwarding

Cache

Statistics

Basic Parameters

Domain Name

WINS Server

Primary

0.0.0.0

Secondary

0.0.0.0

Advanced Settings

Positive Cache

☒ Enabled

Negative Cache

☒ Enabled

Cache Size

100

Entries

Maximum TTL for Positive Cache Entries

86400

Seconds

Maximum TTL for Negative Cache Entries

300

Seconds

Fallback interface to get DNS server

Automatic

IP address to use for DNS/WINS server assignment

As DHCP Server

☐ None

☒ Own IP Address

☐ DNS Setting

As IPCP Server

☐ None

☐ Own IP Address

☒ DNS Setting

OK

Cancel

Fig. 165: Local Services->DNS->Global Settings

The menu **Local Services->DNS->Global Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Domain Name	Enter the standard domain name of your device.
WINS Server	Enter the IP address of the first and, if necessary, alternative global Windows Internet Name Server (=WINS) or NetBIOS Name Server (=NBNS).
Primary	
Secondary	

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Positive Cache	Select whether the positive dynamic cache is to be activated,

Field	Description
	<p>i.e. successfully resolved names and IP addresses are to be stored in the cache.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Negative Cache	<p>Select whether the negative dynamic cache is to be activated, i.e. whether queried names for which a DNS server has sent a negative response are stored as negative entries in the cache.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Cache Size	<p>Enter the maximum total number of static and dynamic entries.</p> <p>Once this value is reached, the dynamic entry not requested for the longest period of time is deleted when a new entry is added. Cache Size is reduced by the user, dynamic entries are deleted if necessary. Statistical entries are not deleted. Cache Size cannot be set to lower than the current number of static entries.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>0.. 1000</i>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>100</i>.</p>
Maximum TTL for Positive Cache Entries	<p>Enter the value to which the TTL is to be set for a positive dynamic DNS entry in the cache if its TTL is <i>0</i> or its TTL exceeds the value for Maximum TTL for Positive Cache Entries .</p> <p>The default value is <i>86400</i>.</p>
Maximum TTL for Negative Cache Entries	<p>Enter the value set to which the TTL is to be set in the case of a negative dynamic entry in the cache.</p> <p>The default value is <i>86400</i>.</p>
Fallback interface to get DNS server	<p>Select the interface to which a connection is set up for name server negotiation if other name resolution attempts were not successful.</p> <p>The default value is <i>Automatic</i>, i.e. a one-time connection is set up to the first suitable connection partner configured in the system.</p>


Fields in the IP address to use for DNS/WINS server assignment menu.

Field	Description
As DHCP Server	<p>Select which name server addresses are sent to the DHCP client if your device is used as DHCP server.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i>: No name server address is sent.• <i>Own IP Address</i> (default value): The address of your device is transferred as the name server address.• <i>DNS Setting</i>: The addresses of the global name servers entered on your device are sent.
As IPCP Server	<p>Select which name server addresses are to be transmitted by your device in the event of dynamic server name negotiation if your device is used as the IPCP server for PPP connections.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i>: No name server address is sent.• <i>Own IP Address</i>: The address of your device is transferred as the name server address.• <i>DNS Setting</i> (default value): The addresses of the global name servers entered on your device are sent.

21.1.2 DNS Servers

A list of all configured DNS servers is displayed in the **Local Services->DNS->DNS Servers** menu.

21.1.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Select the **New** button to set up additional DNS servers.

Here you can configure both global DNS servers and DNS servers that are to be assigned to a particular interface.

Configuring a DNS server for a particular interface can be useful, for example, if accounts with different providers have been set up via different interfaces and load balancing is being used.

Global Settings

DNS Servers

Static Hosts

Domain Forwarding

Cache

Statistics

Basic Parameters

Admin Status

☒ Enabled

Description

Priority

5

Interface Mode

☐ Static ☒ Dynamic

Interface

None

OK

Cancel

Fig. 166: Local Services->DNS->DNS Servers->New

The **Local Services->DNS->DNS Servers->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Admin Status	<p>Select whether the DNS server should be enabled.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Description	<p>Enter a description for DNS server.</p>
Priority	<p>Assign a priority to the DNS server.</p> <p>You can assign more than one pair of DNS servers (Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server) to an interface (i. e. for example, to an Ethernet port or a PPPoE WAN partner). The pair with the highest priority is used if the interface is "up".</p> <p>Possible values from <i>0</i> (highest priority) to <i>9</i> (lowest priority).</p> <p>The default value is <i>5</i>.</p>
Interface Mode	<p>Select whether the IP addresses of name servers for resolving the names of Internet addresses are to be obtained automatically or whether up to two fixed DNS server addresses are to be entered, depending on the priority.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Static</i>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Dynamic</i> (default value)
Interface	<p>Select the interface to which the DNS server pair is to be assigned.</p> <p>For Interface Mode = <i>Dynamic</i></p> <p>A global DNS server is created with the setting <i>None</i>.</p> <p>For Interface Mode = <i>Static</i></p> <p>A DNS server is configured for all interfaces with the <i>Any</i> setting.</p>
Primary DNS Server	<p>Only if Interface Mode = <i>Manual</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the first name server for Internet address name resolution.</p>
Secondary DNS Server	<p>Only if Interface Mode = <i>Manual</i></p> <p>Optionally, enter the IP address of an alternative name server.</p>

21.1.3 Static Hosts

A list of all configured static hosts is displayed in the **Local Services->DNS->Static Hosts** menu.

21.1.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new static hosts.

Global SettingsDNS ServersStatic HostsDomain ForwardingCacheStatistics

Basic Parameters

DNS Hostname

Response

Positive

IP Address

0.0.0.0

TTL

86400

Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 167: Local Services->DNS->Static Hosts->New

The menu **Local Services->DNS->Static Hosts->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
DNS Hostname	<p>Enter the host name to which the IP Address defined in this menu is to be assigned if a positive response is received to a DNS request. If a negative response is received to a DNS request, no address is specified.</p> <p>The entry can also start with the wildcard *, e.g. *.teldat.de.</p> <p>If a name is entered without a dot, this is completed with OK "<Name.> " after confirmation.</p> <p>Entries with spaces are not allowed.</p>
Response	<p>In this entry, select the type of response to DNS requests.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Negative</i>: A DNS request for DNS Hostname gets a negative response.• <i>Positive</i> (default value): A DNS request for DNS Hostname is answered with the related IP Address.• <i>None</i>: A DNS request is ignored; no answer is given.
IP Address	<p>Only if Response = <i>Positive</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address assigned to DNS Hostname.</p>
TTL	<p>Enter the validity period of the assignment from DNS Hostname to IP Address in seconds (only relevant for Response = <i>Positive</i>) transmitted to requesting hosts.</p> <p>The default value is <i>86400</i> (= 24 h).</p>

21.1.4 Domain Forwarding

In the **Local Services->DNS->Domain Forwarding** menu, a list of all configured forwardings for defined domains is displayed.

21.1.4.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up additional forwardings.

Global SettingsDNS ServersStatic HostsDomain ForwardingCacheStatistics

Forwarding Parameters

Forward

☒ Host ☐ Domain

Host

Forward to

☒ Interface ☐ DNS Server

Interface

Automatic

OK

Cancel

Fig. 168: Local Services->DNS->Domain Forwarding->New

The menu **Local Services->DNS->Domain Forwarding->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Forwarding Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Forward	<p>Select whether a host or domain is to be forwarded.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Host</i> (default value)• <i>Domain</i>
Host	<p>Only for Forwarding = <i>Host</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the host to be forwarded.</p> <p>The entry can also start with the wildcard *, e.g. *.teldat.de. If a name is entered without a full stop, you complete with OK "<Default Domain>". " " is added.</p>
Domain	<p>Only for Forwarding = <i>Domain</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the domain to be forwarded.</p> <p>The entry can also start with the wildcard *, e.g. *.teldat.de. If a name is entered without a full stop, you complete with OK "<Default Domain>". " " is added.</p>

Field	Description
Forward to	<p>Select the forwarding destination requests to the name defined in Host or Domain.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Interface</i> (default value): The request is forwarded to the defined Interface.<i>DNS Server</i>: The request is forwarded to the defined DNS Server.
Interface	<p>Only for Forward to = <i>Interface</i></p> <p>Select the interface via which the requests for the defined Do-main are to be received and forwarded to the DNS server.</p>
DNS Server	<p>Only for Forward to = <i>DNS Server</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the primary and secondary DNS server.</p>

21.1.5 Cache

In the **Local Services->DNS->Cache** menu, a list of all available cache entries is displayed.

Global SettingsDNS ServersStatic HostsDomain ForwardingCacheStatistics

Automatic Refresh Interval60SecondsApply

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Description	IP Address	Response	TTL	Reference Counter	Select all / Deselect all	Make static
Page: 1						

OKCancel

Fig. 169: Local Services->DNS->Cache

You can select individual entries using the checkbox in the corresponding line, or select them all using the **Select all** button.

A dynamic entry can be converted to a static entry by marking the entry and confirming with **Make static**. This corresponding entry disappears from the list and is displayed in the list in the **Static Hosts** menu. The TTL is transferred.

21.1.6 Statistics

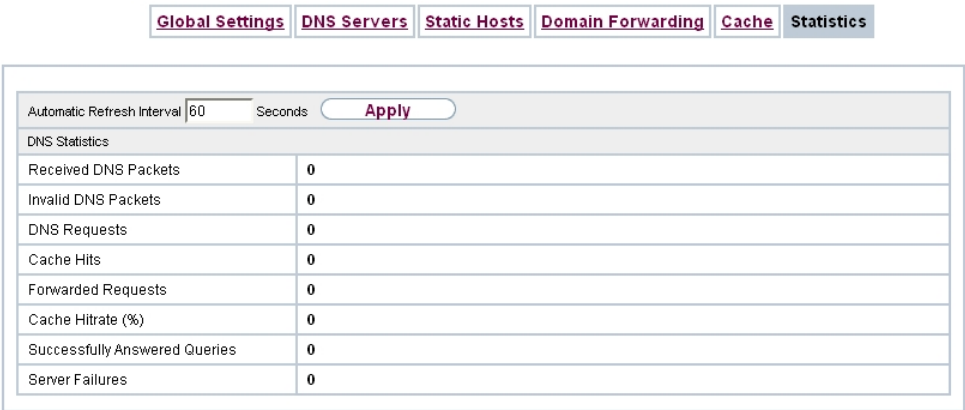


Fig. 170: Local Services->DNS->Statistics

In the **Local Services->DNS->Statistics** menu, the following statistical values are displayed:

Fields in the DNS Statistics menu.

Field	Description
Received DNS Packets	Shows the number of received DNS packets addressed direct to your device, including the response packets for forwarded requests.
Invalid DNS Packets	Shows the number of invalid DNS packets received and addressed direct to your device.
DNS Requests	Shows the number of valid DNS requests received and addressed direct to your device.
Cache Hits	Shows the number of requests that were answered with static or dynamic entries from the cache.
Forwarded Requests	Shows the number of requests forwarded to other name servers.
Cache Hitrate (%)	Indicates the number of Cache Hits pro DNS request in percentage.
Successfully Answered Queries	Shows the number of successfully answered requests (positive and negative).
Server Failures	Shows the number of requests that were not answered by any name server (either positively or negatively).

21.2 HTTPS

You can operate the user interface of your device from any PC with an up-to-date Web browser via an HTTPS connection.

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol Secure) is the procedure used to establish an encrypted and authenticated connection by SSL between the browser used for configuration and the device.

21.2.1 HTTPS Server

In the **Local Services->HTTPS->HTTPS Server** menu, configure the parameters of the backed up configuration connection via HTTPS.

HTTPS Server

HTTPS Parameters

HTTPS TCP Port

443

Local Certificate

Internal

Apply

Cancel

Fig. 171: Local Services->HTTPS->HTTPS Server

The **Local Services->HTTPS->HTTPS Server** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the HTTPS Parameters menu.

Field	Description
HTTPS TCP Port	<div>Enter the port via which the HTTPS connection is to be established.</div> <div>Possible values are 0 to 65535.</div> <div>The default value is 443.</div>
Local Certificate	<div>Select a certificate that you want to use for the HTTPS connection.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Internal</i> (default value): Select this option if you want to use the certificate built into the device.</div>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i><Certificate name></i>: Under System Management->Certificates->Certificate List select entered certificate.

21.3 DynDNS Client

The use of dynamic IP addresses has the disadvantage that a host in the network can no longer be found once its IP address has changed. DynDNS ensures that your device can still be reached after a change to the IP address.

The following configuration steps are necessary:

- Registration of a host name at a DynDNS provider
- Configuration of your device

Registration

The registration of a host name means that you define an individual user name for the DynDNS service, e.g. *dyn_client*. The service providers offer various domain names for this, so that a unique host name results for your device , e.g. *dyn_client.provider.com*. The DynDNS provider relieves you of the task of answering all DNS requests concerning the host *dyn_client.provider.com* with the dynamic IP address of your device.

To ensure that the provider always knows the current IP address of your device, your device contacts the provider when setting up a new connection and propagates its present IP address.

21.3.1 DynDNS Update

In the **Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Update** menu, a list of all configured DynDNS registrations for updating is displayed

21.3.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up further DynDNS registrations to be updated.

DynDNS Update

DynDNS Provider

Basic Parameters

Host Name

Interface

Select one

User Name

Password

••••••••

Provider

dyndns

Enable update

☐ Enabled

Advanced Settings

Mail Exchanger (MX)

Wildcard

☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 172: Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Update->New

The menu **Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Update->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Host Name	Enter the complete host name as registered with the DynDNS provider.
Interface	Select the WAN interface whose IP address is to be propagated over the DynDNS service (e.g. the interface of the Internet Service Provider).
User Name	Enter the user name as registered with the DynDNS provider.
Password	Enter the password as registered with the DynDNS provider.
Provider	<p>Select the DynDNS provider with which the above data is registered.</p> <p>A choice of DynDNS providers is already available in the unconfigured state and their protocols are supported.</p> <p>Other DynDNS providers can be configured in the Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Provider menu.</p>

Field	Description
	The default value is <i>DynDNS</i> .
Enable update	Select whether the DynDNS entry configured here is to be activated.
	The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> .
	The function is disabled by default.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Mail Exchanger (MX)	Enter the full host name of a mail server to which e-mails are to be forwarded if the host currently configured is not to receive mail.
	Ask your provider about this forwarding service and make sure e-mails can be received from the host entered as MX.
Wildcard	Select whether forwarding of all subdomains of the Host Name is to be enabled for the current IP address of the Interface (advanced name resolution).
	The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> .
	The function is disabled by default.

21.3.2 DynDNS Provider

A list of all configured DynDNS providers is displayed in the **Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Provider** menu.

21.3.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new DynDNS providers.

DynDNS Update

DynDNS Provider

Basic Parameters

Provider Name	<input type="text"/>
Server	<input type="text"/>
Update Path	<input type="text"/>
Port	<input type="text" value="80"/>
Protocol	<div>DynDNS</div>
Update Interval	<input type="text" value="300"/> Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 173: Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Provider->New

The menu **Local Services->DynDNS Client->DynDNS Provider->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Provider Name	Enter a name for this entry.
Server	Enter the host name or IP address of the server on which the provider's DynDNS service runs.
Update Path	Enter the path on the provider's server that contains the script for managing the IP address of your device. Ask your provider for the path to be used.
Port	Enter the port at which your device is to reach your provider's server. Ask your provider for the relevant port. The default value is 80.
Protocol	Select one of the protocols implemented. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">DynDNS (default value)Static DynDNSODS

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>HN</i>• <i>DYNS</i>• <i>GnuDIP-HTML</i>• <i>GnuDIP-TCP</i>• <i>Custom DynDNS</i>• <i>DnsExit</i>
Update Interval	<p>Enter the minimum time (in seconds) that your device must wait before it is allowed to propagate its current IP address to the DynDNS provider again.</p> <p>The default value is <i>300</i> seconds.</p>

21.4 DHCP Server

You can configure your device as a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server.

Your device and each PC in your LAN requires its own IP address. One option for allocating IP addresses in your LAN is the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). If you configure your device as a DHCP server, the device automatically assigns IP addresses to requesting PCs in the LAN from a predefined IP address pool.


If a client requires an IP address for the first time, it sends a DHCP request (with its MAC address) to the available DHCP server as a network broadcast.* The client then receives its IP address from Teldat (as part of a brief exchange).

You therefore do not need to allocate fixed IP addresses to PCs, which reduces the amount of configuration work in your network. To do this, you set up a pool of IP addresses, from which your device assigns IP addresses to hosts in the LAN for a defined period of time. A DHCP server also transfers the addresses of the domain name server entered statically or by PPP negotiation (DNS), NetBIOS name server (WINS) and default gateway.

21.4.1 IP Pool Configuration

The **Local Services->DHCP Server+IP Pool Configuration** menu displays a list of all the configured IP pools. This list is global and also displays pools configured in other menus.

21.4.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP address pools. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

IP Pool Configuration

DHCP Configuration

IP/MAC Binding

DHCP Relay Settings

Basic Parameters

IP Pool Name

IP Address Range

-

DNS Server

Primary

Secondary

OK

Cancel

Fig. 174: Local Services->DHCP Server+IP Pool Configuration+New

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters


Field	Description
IP Pool Name	Enter any description to uniquely identify the IP pool.
IP Address Range	Enter the first (first field) and last (second field) IP address of the IP address pool.
DNS Server	Primary: Enter the IP address of the DNS server that is to be used, preferably, by clients who draw an address from this pool. Secondary: Optionally, enter the IP address of an alternative DNS server.

21.4.2 DHCP Configuration

To activate your device as a DHCP server, you must first define IP address pools from which the IP addresses are distributed to the requesting clients.

A list of all configured IP address pools is displayed in the **Local Services->DHCP Server+DHCP Configuration** menu.


In the list, for each entry, you have the possibility under **Status** of enabling or disabling the configured DHCP pools.



Note

In the ex works state the DHCP pool is preconfigured with the IP addresses 192.168.0.10 to 192.168.0.49 and is used if there is no other DHCP server available in the network.

21.4.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP address pools. Choose the  icon to edit existing entries.

IP Pool Configuration

DHCP Configuration

IP/MAC Binding

DHCP Relay Settings

Basic Parameters

Interface

Select one

IP Pool Name

Not yet defined

Pool Usage

Local

Advanced Settings:

Gateway

Use router as gateway

Lease Time

120

Minutes

DHCP Options

Option

Value

Add

OK

Cancel

Fig. 175: Local Services->DHCP Server+DHCP Configuration->New

The **Local Services->DHCP Server+DHCP Configuration->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
Interface	Select the interface over which the addresses defined in IP Address Range are to be assigned to DHCP clients. When a DHCP request is received over this Interface , one of the addresses from the address pool is assigned.
IP Pool Name	Enter any description to uniquely identify the IP pool.

Field	Description
Pool Usage	<p>Specify whether the IP pool is used for DHCP requests in the same subnet or for DHCP requests that have been forwarded to your device from another subnet. In this case it is possible to define IP addresses from another network.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Local</i> (default value): The DHCP pool is only used for DHCP requests in the same subnet.• <i>Relay</i>: The DHCP pool is only used for DHCP requests forwarded from other subnets.• <i>Local/Relay</i>: The DHCP pool is used for DHCP requests in the same subnet and from other subnets.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:


Fields in the menu **Advanced Settings**

Field	Description
Gateway	<p>Select which IP address is to be transferred to the DHCP client as gateway.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Use router as gateway</i> (default value): Here, the IP address defined for the Interface is transferred.• <i>No gateway</i>: No IP address is sent.• <i>Specify</i>: Enter the corresponding IP address.
Lease Time	<p>Enter the length of time (in minutes) for which an address from the pool is to be assigned to a host.</p> <p>After the Lease Time expires, the address can be reassigned by the server.</p> <p>The default value is <i>120</i>.</p>
DHCP Options	<p>Specify which additional data is forwarded to the DHCP client.</p> <p>Possible values for Option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Time Server</i> (default value): Enter the IP address of the time server to be sent to the client.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>DNS Server</i>: Enter the IP address of the DNS server to be sent to the client.• <i>DNS Domain Name</i>: Enter the DNS domain to be sent to the client.• <i>WINS/NBNS Server</i>: Enter the IP address of the WINS/NBNS server to be sent to the client.• <i>WINS/NBT Node Type</i>: Select the type of the WINS/NBT node to be sent to the client.• <i>TFTP Server</i>: Enter the IP address of the TFTP server to be sent to the client.• <i>CAPWAP Controller</i>: Enter the IP address of the CAPWAP controller to be sent to the client.• <i>URL (provisioning server)</i>: This option enables you to send a client any URL. Use this option to send querying IP1x0 telephones the URL of the provisioning server if the telephones are to be provisioned automatically. The URL then needs to take the form <i>http://<IP address of the provisioning server>/eg_prov</i>.• <i>Vendor Group</i> (Vendor Specific Information): This enables you to send the client any manufacturer-specific information in any text string. <p>Several entries are possible. Add additional entries with the Add button.</p>

Edit

In the **Local Services->DHCP Server +DHCP Configuration->Advanced Settings** menu you can edit an entry in the **DHCP Options** field, if **Option** = *Vendor Group* is selected.

Choose the  icon to edit an existing entry. In popup menu, you configure manufacture-specific settings in the DHCP server for specific telephones.

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu

Field	Description
Select vendor	Your device does not currently use this parameter. Here, you can select for which manufacturer specific values

Field	Description
	<p>shall be transmitted for the DHCP server.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Siemens</i> (default value)• <i>Other</i>
Provisioning Server (code 3)	<p>Your device does not currently use this parameter.</p> <p>Enter which manufacturer value shall be transmitted.</p> <p>For the setting Select vendor = <i>Siemens</i>, the default value <i>sdlp</i> is displayed.</p> <p>You can complete the IP address of the desired server.</p>

21.4.3 IP/MAC Binding

The **Local Services->DHCP Server->IP/MAC Binding** menu displays a list of all clients that received an IP address from your device via DHCP.

You can allocate an IP address from a defined IP address pool to specific MAC addresses. You can do this by selecting the **Static Binding** option in the list to convert a list entry as a fixed binding, or you manually create a fixed IP/MAC binding by configuring this in the **New** sub-menu.



Note

You can only create new static IP/MAC bindings if IP address ranges were configured in **Local Services->DHCP Server->DHCP Pool**.

21.4.3.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new IP/MAC bindings.

IP Pool Configuration

DHCP Configuration

IP/MAC Binding

DHCP Relay Settings

Basic Parameters

Description

IP Address

MAC Address

OK

Cancel

Fig. 176: Local Services->DHCP Server->IP/MAC Binding->New

The menu **Local Services->DHCP Server->IP/MAC Binding->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter the name of the host to which the MAC Address the IP Address is to be bound. A character string of up to 256 characters is possible.
IP Address	Enter the IP address to be assigned to the MAC address specified in MAC Address is to be assigned.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address to which the IP address specified in IP Address is to be assigned.

21.4.4 DHCP Relay Settings

If your device for the local network does not distribute any IP addresses to the clients by DHCP, it can still forward the DHCP requests on behalf of the local network to a remote DHCP server. The DHCP server then assigns the your device an IP address from its pool, which in turn sends this to the client in the local network.

IP Pool Configuration

DHCP Configuration

IP/MAC Binding

DHCP Relay Settings

Basic Parameters

Primary DHCP Server

0.0.0.0

Secondary DHCP Server

0.0.0.0

OK

Cancel

Fig. 177: Local Services->DHCP Server->DHCP Relay Settings

The menu **Local Services->DHCP Server->DHCP Relay Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Primary DHCP Server	Enter the IP address of a server to which BootP or DHCP requests are to be forwarded.
Secondary DHCP Server	Enter the IP address of an alternative BootP or DHCP server.

21.5 Web Filter

In the**Local Services->Web Filter** menu, you can configure a URL-based Web Filter service, which during operation accesses the Proventia Web Filter from the company Internet Security Systems (www.iss.net) and checks how a requested Internet page is categorised by the Proventia Web Filter. The action resulting from the classification is configured on your device.

21.5.1 General

This menu contains the configuration of basic parameters for using the Proventia Web Filter.

General

Filter List

Black / White List

History

Web Filter Options

Web Filter Status

☒ Enabled

Filtered Input Interface(s):

Add

Maximum Number of History Entries

64

URL Path Depth

1

Action if server not reachable

☒ Allow all ☐ Block all ☐ Log all

Action if license not registered

☒ Allow all ☐ Block all ☐ Log all

License Information

Licence Key

B1BT

[Activate 30 days demo licence]

License Status

License valid until

Not activated

Apply

Fig. 178: Local Services->Web Filter->General

The **Local Services->Web Filter->General** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Web Filter Options menu.

Field	Description
Web Filter Status	Activate or deactivate the filter. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
Filtered Input Interface(s)	Select for which of the existing Ethernet and WLAN interfaces web filtering is to be activated.

Field	Description
	Press the Add button to add more interfaces. The requests from http Internet pages that reach your device via these interfaces are then monitored by web filtering.
Maximum Number of History Entries	Define the number of entries to be saved in the web filtering history (History menu). Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>512</i> . The default value is <i>64</i> .
URL Path Depth	Select the path length to which a URL is to be checked by the Cobion Orange Filter.
Action if server not reachable	Select which is to be done with URL requests if the web filtering server cannot be reached. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Allow all</i> (default value): Callup is permitted.• <i>Block all</i>: Callup of the requested page is blocked.• <i>Log all</i>: Callup is permitted, but logged.
Action if license not registered	Select what is to be done with URL requests if the licence key status is <i>Not Valid</i> . Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Allow all</i> (default value): Callup is permitted.• <i>Block all</i>: Callup of the requested page is blocked.• <i>Log all</i>: Callup is permitted, but logged.

The menu **License Information** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the License Information menu.

Field	Description
Licence Key	Enter the number of your Proventia Web Filter licence. The pre-set code assigned by ISS designates the device type. In the ex works state, you can activate a 30-day demo version of the Proventia Web Filter. To do this, click the link Activate 30 days demo licence

Field	Description
Licence Status	Shows the result of the last validity check of the licence. The validity of the licence is checked every 23 hours.
License valid until	This shows the expiry date of the licence (relative to the time set on your device) and cannot be edited.

21.5.2 Filter List

In the **Local Services->Web Filter->Filter List** menu, you configure how the various categories of Internet pages are to be handled.

You configure the relevant filters for this purpose. A list of filters already configured is displayed.

There are basically different approaches for configuring the filters:

- First a filter list can be created that only contains entries for those addresses that are to be blocked. In this case it is necessary to make an entry at the end of the filter list that allows all accesses that do not match a filter. (Setting for this: **Category** = *Default behaviour*, **Action** = *Allow* or *Allow and Log*)
- If you only create entries for those addresses that are to be allowed or logged, it is not necessary to change the default behaviour (= all other calls are blocked).

21.5.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create additional filters.

GeneralFilter ListBlack / White ListHistory

Filter Parameters

Category	Anonymous Proxies
Day	Everyday
Schedule (Start / Stop Time)	From 00:00 to 23:59
Action	<input type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Allow and Log <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block and Log

OKCancel

Fig. 179: Local Services->Web Filter->Filter List->New

The **Local Services->Web Filter->Filter List->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Filter Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Category	<p>Select which category of addresses/URLs the filter is to be used on.</p> <p>The options are first the standard categories of the Proventia Web Filter (default value: <i>Anonymous Proxies</i>). Actions can also be defined for the following special cases, e.g.:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Default behaviour</i>: This category applies to all Internet addresses.• <i>Other Category</i>: Some addresses are already known to the Proventia Web Filter, but not yet classified. The action associated with this category is used for such addresses.• <i>Unknown URL</i>: If an address is not known to the Proventia Web Filter, the action associated with this category is used.
Day	<p>Select the days on which the filter is to be active.</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Everyday</i> (default value): The filter is used every day of the week.• <i><Weekday></i>: The filter is used on a certain day of the week. Only one day can be selected per filter; several filters must be configured if several individual days are to be covered.• <i>Monday-Friday</i>: The filter is used from Monday to Friday. <p>The default value is <i>Everyday</i>.</p>
Schedule (Start / Stop Time)	<p>In From, enter the time at which the filter is to be activated. The time is entered in the form hh:mm. Enter the time at which the filter is to be deactivated after the to in the field. The time is entered in the form hh:mm. The default value is 00:00 to 23:59.</p>
Action	<p>Select the action to be executed if the filter matches a call.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Block and Log</i> (default value): The call of the requested page is prevented and logged.• <i>Allow and Log</i>: Callup is permitted, but logged. You can view the logged events in the Local Services->Web Filter->Filter List menu.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Allow</i>: Callup is allowed and not logged.

21.5.3 Black / White List

The **Local Services->Web Filter->Black / White List** menu contains a list of URLs or IP addresses, as the case applies. The addresses **on the White List** can also be called if they had been blocked because of filter configuration and classification in the Proventia web filter. The addresses **on the Black List** remain blocked even if they could be called because of filter configuration and classification in the Proventia web filter. In standard configuration neither of the two lists contains entries.

Use the **Add** button to add further URLs or IP addresses to the list.

GeneralFilter ListBlack / White ListHistory

URL / IP Address

BlacklistedWhitelisted

Add

OK

Cancel

Fig. 180: Local Services->Web Filter->Black / White List->Add

The **Local Services->Web Filter->Black / White List->Add** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Black / White List menu.

Field	Description
URL / IP Address	You enter a URL or IP address. The length of the entry is limited to 60 characters.
Blacklisted Whitelisted	<p>You can select whether an URL or IP Address can always (<i>Whitelisted</i>) or never (<i>Blacklisted</i>) be called up.</p> <p><i>Whitelisted</i> is enabled by default.</p> <p>Addresses listed in the White List are allowed automatically. It is not necessary to configure a suitable filter.</p>

21.5.4 History

In the **Local Services->Web Filter->History** menu, you can view the recorded history of the web filter. The history logs all requests that are marked for logging by a relevant filter (**Action** = *Allow and Log*), likewise all rejected requests.

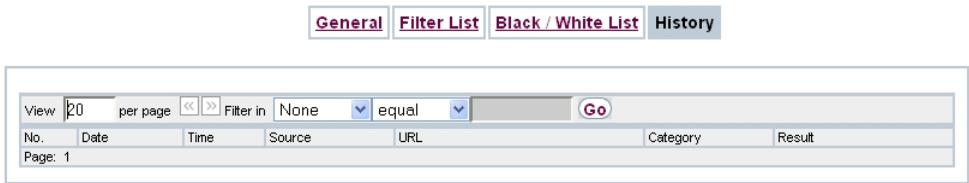


Fig. 181: Local Services->Web Filter->History

21.6 CAPI Server

You can use the CAPI Server function to assign user names and passwords to users of the CAPI applications on your device. This makes sure that only authorised users can receive incoming calls and make outgoing calls via CAPI.

The CAPI service allows connection of incoming and outgoing data and voice calls to communications applications on hosts in the LAN that access the Remote CAPI interface of your device. This enables, for example, hosts connected to your device to receive and send faxes.



Note

All incoming calls to the CAPI are offered to all registered and "eavesdropping" CAPI applications in the LAN.

In the ex works state, a user with the user name *default* and no password is entered for the CAPI subsystem.

Once you've created your intended users with password, you should delete the *default* user without password.

21.6.1 User

A list of all configured CAPI users is displayed in the **Local Services->CAPI Server->User** menu.

21.6.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to set up new CAPI users.

UserOptions

Basic Parameters

User Name

Password

••••••••

Access

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 182: Local Services->CAPI Server->User->New

The menu **Local Services->CAPI Server->User->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
User Name	Enter the user name for which access to the CAPI service is to be allowed or denied.
Password	Enter the password which the user User Name shall use for identification to gain access to the CAPI service.
Access	<div>Select whether access to the CAPI service is to be permitted or denied for the user.</div> <div>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</div> <div>The function is enabled by default.</div>

21.6.2 Options

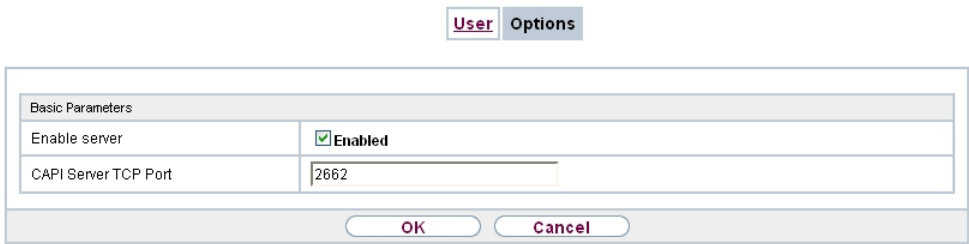


Fig. 183: Local Services->CAPI Server->Options

The menu **Local Services->CAPI Server->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Enable server	Select whether your device is to be enabled as a CAPI server. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> . The function is enabled by default.
Faxheader	Only for devices the RTxxx2 series. Select whether the fax header should be printed at the top of outgoing faxes. The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
CAPI Server TCP Port	The field can only be edited if Enable server is enabled. Enter the TCP port number for remote CAPI connections. The default value is <i>2662</i> .

21.7 Scheduling

Your device has a event scheduler, which enables certain standard actions (for example, activating and deactivating interfaces) to be carried out. Moreover, every existing MIB variable can be configured with any value.

You specify the **Actions** you want and define the **Trigger** that control when and under which conditions the **Actions** are to be carried out. A **Trigger** may be a single event or a sequence of events which are combined into an **Event List**. You also create an event list for a single event, but it only contains one event.

Actions can be initiated on a time-controlled basis. Moreover, the status or accessibility of interfaces or their data traffic may lead to execution of the configured actions, or also the validity of licences. Here also, it is possible to set up every MIB variable as initiator with any value.

To take the event scheduler live, enable the **Schedule Interval** under **Options**. This interval species the time gap in which the system checks whether at least one event has occurred. This event is used as the initiator for a configured action.



Caution

The configuration of actions that are not available as defaults requires extensive knowledge of the method of operation of Teldat gateways. An incorrect configuration can cause considerable disruption during operation. If applicable, save the original configuration on your PC.



Note

To run the event scheduler, the date configured on your device must be 1.1.2000 or later.

21.7.1 Trigger

The **Local Services->Scheduling->Trigger** menu displays all the event lists that have been configured. Every event list contains at least one event which is intended to be the initiator for an action.

21.7.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to create more event lists.

Trigger

Actions

Options

Basic Parameters

Event List

New

Description

Event Type

Time

Select time interval

Time Condition

Condition Type

Weekday

Periods

Day of Month

Condition Settings

Monday

Daily

1

Start Time

Hour

Minute

Stop Time

Hour

Minute

OK

Cancel

Fig. 184: Local Services->Scheduling->Trigger->New

The menu **Local Services->Scheduling->Trigger->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Event List	<p>You can create a new event list with <i>New</i> (default value). You give this list a name with Description. You use the remaining parameters to create the first event in the list.</p> <p>If you want to add to an existing event list, select the event list you want and add at least one more event to it.</p> <p>You can use event lists to create complex conditions for initiating an action. The events are processed in the same order in which they are created in the list.</p>
Description	<p>Only for Event List <i>New</i></p> <p>Enter your chosen designation for the event list.</p>
Event Type	<p>Select the type of event.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Time</i> (default value): The operations configured and assigned in Actions are initiated at specific points in time.<i>MTB/SNMP</i>: The actions configured and assigned in Actions

462

bintec Rxxx2/RTxxx2

Field	Description
	<p>are initiated when the defined MIB variables assumes the assigned values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Interface Status</i>: Operations configured and assigned in Actions are initiated, when the defined interfaces take on a specified status.• <i>Interface Traffic</i>: The operations configured and assigned in Actions are triggered if the data traffic on the specified interfaces falls below or exceed the defined value.• <i>Ping Test</i>: the operations configured and assigned in Actions are triggered if the defined IP address is accessible or not accessible.• <i>Certificate Lifetime</i>: Operations configured and assigned in Actions are initiated when the defined period of validity is reached.
Monitored Variable	<p>Only for Event Type <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select the MIB variable whose defined value is to be configured as initiator. First, select the System in which the MIB variable is saved, then the MIB Table and finally the MIB Variable itself. Only the MIB tables and MIB variables present in the respective area are displayed.</p>
Compare Condition	<p>Only for Event Type <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select whether the MIB variable <i>Greater</i> (default value), <i>Equal</i>, <i>Less</i>, <i>Not Equal</i> must have the value given in <i>Compare Value</i> or must lie within <i>Range</i> to initiate the operation.</p>
Compare Value	<p>Only for Event Type <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Enter the value of the MIB variable.</p>
Index Variables	<p>Only for Event Type <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Where required, select MIB variables to uniquely identify a specific data set in the MIB Table, e.g. <i>ConnIfIndex</i>. The unique identification of a particular table entry is derived from the combination of Index Variable (usually an index variable which is flagged with *) and Index Value.</p> <p>Use Index Variables to create more entries with Add.</p>

Field	Description
Monitored Interface	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Interface Status</i> and <i>Interface Traffic</i></p> <p>Select the interface whose defined status shall trigger an operation.</p>
Interface Status	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Interface Status</i></p> <p>Select the status that the interface must have in order to initiate the intended operation.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Up</i> (default value): The function is enabled.• <i>Down</i>: The interface is disabled.
Traffic Direction	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Interface Traffic</i></p> <p>Select the direction of the data traffic whose values should be monitored as initiating an operation.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>RX</i> (default value): Incoming data traffic is monitored.• <i>TX</i>: Outgoing data traffic is monitored.
Interface Traffic Condition	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Interface Traffic</i></p> <p>Select whether the value for data traffic must be <i>Greater</i> (default value) or <i>Less</i> the value specified in <i>Transferred Traffic</i> in order to initiate the operation.</p>
Transferred Traffic	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Interface Traffic</i></p> <p>Enter the desired value in kBytes for the data traffic to serve as comparison.</p> <p>The default value is <i>0</i>.</p>
Destination IP Address	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Ping Test</i></p> <p>Enter the IP address whose accessibility is to be checked.</p>
Source IP Address	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Ping Test</i></p>

Field	Description
	<p>Enter an IP address to be used as sender address for the ping test.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Automatic</i> (default value): The IP address of the interface over which the ping is sent is automatically entered as sender address.• <i>Specific</i>: Enter the desired IP address in the input field.
Status	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Ping Test</i></p> <p>Select whether Destination IP Address <i>Reacheable</i> must be (default value) or <i>Unreacheable</i> in order to initiate the operation.</p>
Interval	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Ping Test</i></p> <p>Enter the time in Seconds after which a ping must be resent.</p> <p>The default value is <i>60</i> seconds.</p>
Trials	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Ping Test</i></p> <p>Enter the number of ping tests to be performed until Destination IP Address as <i>Unreacheable</i> applies.</p> <p>The default value is <i>3</i>.</p>
Monitored Certificate	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Certificate Lifetime</i></p> <p>Select the certificate whose validity should be checked.</p>
Remaining Validity	<p>Only for Event Type <i>Certificate Lifetime</i></p> <p>Enter the desired value for the remaining validity of the certificate in percentage.</p>

Fields in the Select time interval menu.

Field	Description
Time Condition	<p>For Event Type <i>Time</i> only</p> <p>First select the type of time entry in Condition Type.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Weekday</i>: Select a weekday in Condition Settings.• <i>Periods</i> (default value): In Condition Settings, select a particular period.• <i>Day of Month</i>: Select a specific day of the month in Condition Settings. <p>Possible values for Condition Settings in Condition Type = <i>Weekday</i>:</p> <p><i>Monday</i> (default value) ... <i>Sunday</i>.</p> <p>Possible values for Condition Settings in Condition Type = <i>Periods</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Daily</i>: The initiator becomes active daily (default value).• <i>Monday-Friday</i>: The initiator becomes active daily from Monday to Friday.• <i>Monday - Saturday</i>: The initiator becomes active daily from Monday to Saturday.• <i>Saturday - Sunday</i>: The initiator becomes active on Saturdays and Sundays. <p>Possible values for Condition Settings in Condition Type = <i>Day of Month</i>:</p> <p><i>1... 31</i>.</p>
Start Time	Enter the time from which the initiator is to be activated. Activation is carried on the next scheduling interval. the default value of this interval is 55 seconds.
Stop Time	Enter the time from which the initiator is to be deactivated. Deactivation is carried on the next scheduling interval. If you do not enter a Stop Time or set a Stop Time = Start Time , the initiator is activated, and deactivated after 10 seconds.

21.7.2 Actions

In the **Local Services->Scheduling->Actions** menu is displayed a list of all operations to be initiated by events or event chains configured in **Local Services->Scheduling->Trigger**.

21.7.2.1 New

Choose the **New** button to configure additional operations.

TriggerActionsOptions

Basic Parameters

Description

Command Type

Reboot

Event List

Select one

Event List Condition

All

Reboot device after

60

Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 185: Local Services->Scheduling->Actions->New

The menu **Local Services->Scheduling->Actions->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Description	Enter your chosen designation for the action.
Command Type	<div>Select the desired action.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Reboot</i> (default value): Your device is rebooted.• <i>MIB/SNMP</i>: The desired value is entered for a MIB variable.• <i>Interface Status</i>: The status of an interface is modified.• <i>Wlan Status</i>: The status of an WLAN-SSID is modified.• <i>Software Update</i>: A software update is initiated.• <i>Configuration Management</i>: A configuration file is loaded onto your device or backed up by your device.</div>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Ping Test</i>: Accessibility of an IP address is checked.• <i>Certificate Management</i>: A certificate is to be renewed, deleted or entered.• <i>5 GHz WLAN Bandscan</i>: A scan of the 5 GHz frequency band is performed.• <i>5.8 GHz WLAN Bandscan</i>: A scan of the 5.8 GHz frequency range is performed.• <i>WLC: New Neighbor Scan</i>: Only for devices with Wireless LAN Controller. A Neighbor Scan is initiated in a WLAN network controlled by the WLAN controller.• <i>WLC: VSS State</i>: Only for devices with Wireless LAN Controller. The status of a wireless network is modified.
Event List	Select the event list you want which has been created in Local Services->Scheduling->Trigger .
Event List Condition	<p>For the selected chains of events, select how many of the configured events must occur for the operation to be initiated.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All</i> (default value): The operation is initiated if all events occur.• <i>One</i>: The operation is initiated if a single event occurs.• <i>None</i>: The operation is initiated if none of the events occurs.• <i>One not</i>: The operation is initiated if one of the events does not occur.
Reboot device after	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Reboot</i></p> <p>Enter the timespan in seconds that must elapse after occurrence of the event until the device is restarted.</p> <p>The default value is <i>60</i> seconds.</p>
MIB/SNMP Variable to add/edit	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select the MIB table in which the MIB variable whose value shall be changed is saved. First, select the System, then the MIB Table. Only the MIB tables present in the respective area are displayed.</p>

Field	Description
Command Mode	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select how the MIB entry is to be manipulated.</p> <p>Possible settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Change existing entry</i> (default value): An existing entry shall be modified.• <i>Create new MIB entry</i>: A new entry shall be created.
Index Variables	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Where required, select MIB variables to uniquely identify a specific data set in MIB Table, e.g. <i>ConnIfIndex</i>. The unique identification of a particular table entry is derived from the combination of Index Variable (usually an index variable which is flagged with *) and Index Value.</p> <p>Use Index Variables to create more entries with Add.</p>
Trigger Status	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select what status the event must have in order to modify the MIB variable as defined.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Active</i> (default value): The value of the MIB variable is modified if the initiator is active.• <i>Inactive</i>: The value of the MIB variable is modified if the initiator is inactive.• <i>Both</i>: The value of the MIB variable is differentially modified if the initiator status changes.
MIB Variables	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>MIB/SNMP</i></p> <p>Select the MIB variable whose value is to be configured as dependent upon initiator status.</p> <p>If the initiator is active (Trigger Status <i>Active</i>), the MIB variable is described with the value entered in Active Value.</p> <p>If the initiator is inactive (Trigger Status <i>Inactive</i>), the MIB variable is described with the value entered in Inactive Value.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>If the MIB variable is to be modified, depending on whether the initiator is active or inactive (Trigger Status <i>Both</i>), it is described with an active initiator with the value entered in Active Value and with an inactive initiator with the value in Inactive Value.</p> <p>Use Add to create more entries.</p>
Interface	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Interface Status</i></p> <p>Select the interface whose status should be changed.</p>
Set interface status	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Interface Status</i></p> <p>Select the status to be set for the interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Up</i> (default value)• <i>Down</i>• <i>Reset</i>
Source Location	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Software Update</i></p> <p>Select the source for the software update.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Current Software from Teldat Server</i> (default value): The latest software will be downloaded from the Teldat server.• <i>HTTP Server</i>: The latest software will be downloaded from an HTTP server that you define in <i>Server URL</i>.• <i>HTTPS Server</i>: The latest software will be downloaded from an HTTPS server that you define in <i>Server URL</i>.• <i>TFTP Server</i>: The latest software will be downloaded from an TFTP server that you define in <i>Server URL</i>.
Server URL	<p>For Command Type = <i>Software Update</i></p> <p>if Source Location not <i>Current Software from Teldat Server</i>.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Enter the URL of the server from which the desired software version is to be retrieved.</p> <p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> with Action = <i>Import configuration</i> or <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Enter the URL of the server from which a configuration file is to be retrieved, or on which the configuration file is to be backed up.</p>
File Name	<p>For Command Type = <i>Software Update</i></p> <p>Enter the file name of the software version.</p> <p>For Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> with Action = <i>Import certificate</i></p> <p>Enter the file name of the certificate file.</p>
Action	<p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i></p> <p>Select which operation is to be performed on a configuration file.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Import configuration</i> (default value)• <i>Export configuration</i>• <i>Rename configuration</i>• <i>Delete configuration</i>• <i>Copy configuration</i> <p>For Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i></p> <p>Select which operation you wish to perform on a certificate file.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Import certificate</i> (default value)• <i>Delete certificate</i>• <i>SCEP</i>
Protocol	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and</p>

Field	Description
	<p><i>Configuration Management</i> if Action = <i>Import configuration</i></p> <p>Select the protocol for the data transfer.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>HTTP</i> (default value)• <i>HTTPS</i>• <i>TFTP</i>
CSV File Format	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Import configuration</i> or <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Select whether the file is to be sent in the CSV format.</p> <p>The CSV format can easily be read and modified. In addition, you can view the corresponding file clearly using Microsoft Excel for example.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Remote File Name	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i></p> <p>For Action = <i>Import configuration</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the file under which it is saved on the server from which it is to be retrieved.</p> <p>For Action = <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Enter the file name under which it should be saved on the server.</p>
Local File Name	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Import configuration</i>, <i>Rename configuration</i> or <i>Copy configuration</i></p> <p>At import, renaming or copying enter a name for the configuration file under which to save it locally on the device.</p>
File Name in Flash	<p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Select the file to be exported.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Rename configuration</i></p> <p>Select the file to be renamed.</p> <p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Delete configuration</i></p> <p>Select the file to be deleted.</p> <p>For Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Copy configuration</i></p> <p>Select the file to be copied.</p>
Configuration contains certificates/keys	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Import configuration</i> or <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Select whether the certificates and keys contained in the configuration are to be imported or exported.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Encrypt configuration	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Import configuration</i> or <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Define whether the data of the selected Action are to be encrypted..</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Reboot after execution	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i></p> <p>Select whether your device should restart after the intended Action.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Version Check	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Configuration Management</i> and Action = <i>Import configuration</i></p> <p>Select whether, when importing a configuration file, to check on the server for the presence of a more current version of the</p>

Field	Description
	already loaded configuration. If not, the file import is interrupted. The function is disabled by default.
Destination IP Address	Only if Command Type = <i>Ping Test</i> Enter the IP address whose accessibility is to be checked.
Source IP Address	Only if Command Type = <i>Ping Test</i> Enter an IP address to be used as sender address for the ping test. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Automatic</i> (default value): The IP address of the interface over which the ping is sent is automatically entered as sender address.• <i>Specific</i>: Enter the desired IP address in the input field.
Interval	Only if Command Type = <i>Ping Test</i> Enter the time in Seconds after which a ping must be resent. The default value is <i>1</i> second.
Count	Only if Command Type = <i>Ping Test</i> Enter the number of ping tests to be performed until Destination IP Address is considered unreachable. The default value is <i>3</i> .
Server Address	Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Import certificate</i> Enter the URL of the server from which a certificate file is to be retrieved.
Local Certificate Description	For Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Import certificate</i> Enter a description for the certificate under which to save it on the device.

Field	Description
	<p>For Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Delete certificate</i></p> <p>Select the certificate to be deleted.</p>
Password for protected Certificate	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Import certificate</i></p> <p>Select whether to use a secure certificate requiring a password and enter it into the entry field.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Overwrite similar certificate	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Import certificate</i></p> <p>Select whether to overwrite a certificate already present on the your device with the new one.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Write certificate in configuration	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>Import certificate</i></p> <p>Select whether to integrate the certificate in a configuration file; and if so, select the desired configuration file.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
Certificate Request Description	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Enter a description under which the SCEP certificate on your device is to be saved.</p>
URL SCEP Server URL	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Enter the URL of the SCEP server, e.g. <i>http://scep.teldat.de:8080/scep/scep.dll</i></p> <p>Your CA administrator can provide you with the necessary data.</p>
Subject Name	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p>

Field	Description
	<p>Enter a subject name with attributes.</p> <p>Example: "CN=VPNServer, DC=mydomain, DC=com, c=DE"</p>
CA Name	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the CA certificate of the certification authority (CA) from which you wish to request your certificate, e.g. <i>cawindows</i>. Your CA administrator can provide you with the necessary data.</p>
Password	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>To obtain certificates, you may need a password from the certification authority. Enter the password you received from the certification authority here.</p>
Key Size	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Select the length of the key to be created. Possible values are <i>1024</i> (default value) to <i>2048</i> and <i>4096</i>.</p>
Autosave Mode	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Select whether your device automatically stores the various steps of the enrolment internally. This is an advantage if enrolment cannot be concluded immediately. If the status has not been saved, the incomplete registration cannot be completed. As soon as the enrolment is completed and the certificate has been downloaded from the CA server, it is automatically saved in the device configuration.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Use CRL	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>Certificate Management</i> and Action = <i>SCEP</i></p> <p>Define the extent to which certificate revocation lists (CRLs) are to be included in the validation of certificates issued by the own-</p>

Field	Description
	<p>er of this certificate.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Auto</i> (default value): In case there is an entry for a CDP, CRL distribution point this should be evaluated in addition to the CRLs globally configured in the device.• <i>Yes</i>: CRLs are always checked.• <i>No</i>: No checking of CRLs.
Select radio	<p>Only for Command Type = <i>5 GHz WLAN Bandscan</i> and <i>5.8 GHz WLAN Bandscan</i></p> <p>Select the WLAN module on which to perform the frequency band scan.</p>
WLC SSID	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>WLC: VSS State</i></p> <p>Select the wireless network administered over the WLAN controller whose status should be changed.</p>
Set status	<p>Only if Command Type = <i>WLC: VSS State</i></p> <p>Select the status for the selected wireless network.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Activate</i> (default value)• <i>Deactivate</i>

21.7.3 Options

You configure the schedule interval in the **Local Services->Scheduling->Options**.

Trigger

Actions

Options

Scheduling Options

Schedule Interval

0

sec

☒ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 186: Local Services->Scheduling->Options

The **Local Services->Scheduling->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Scheduling Options menu.

Field	Description
Schedule Interval	<p>Select whether the schedule interval is to be enabled for the interface.</p> <p>Enter the period of time in seconds after which the system checks whether configured events have occurred.</p> <p>Possible values are <i>0</i> to <i>65535</i>.</p> <p>The value <i>300</i> is recommended (5 minute accuracy). Values lower than 60 are generally pointless and are an unnecessary use of system resources.</p>

21.8 Surveillance

In this menu, you can configure an automatic availability check for hosts or interfaces and automatic ping tests.

You can monitor temperature with devices from the **bintec WI** series.




Note

This function cannot be configured on your device for connections that are authenticated via a RADIUS server.

21.8.1 Hosts

A list of all monitored hosts is displayed in the **Local Services->Surveillance->Hosts** menu.

21.8.1.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create additional monitoring tasks.

Hosts

Interfaces

Temperature

Ping Generator

Host Parameters

Group ID

New ID

Trigger

Monitored IP Address

Default Gateway

Source IP Address

Automatic

Interval

10

Seconds

Successful Trials

3

Unsuccessful Trials

3

Action to be performed

Action

Disable

Interface

Select one

Add

OK

Cancel

Fig. 187: Local Services->Surveillance->Hosts->New

The menu **Local Services->Surveillance->Hosts->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Host Parameters menu

Field	Description
Group ID	<p>If the availability of a group of hosts or the default gateway is to be monitored by your device, select an ID for the group or the default gateway.</p> <p>The group IDs are automatically created from 0 to 255. If an entry has not yet been created, a new group is created using the <i>New ID</i> option. If entries have been created, you can select one from the list of created groups.</p> <p>Each host to be monitored must be assigned to a group.</p> <p>The operation configured in Interface is only executed if no group member can be reached.</p>

Fields in the Trigger menu.

Field	Description
Monitored IP Address	<p>Enter the IP address of the host to be monitored.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Default Gateway</i> (default value): The default gateway is


Field	Description
	<p>monitored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Specific</i>: Enter the IP address of the host to be monitored manually in the adjacent input field.
Source IP Address	<p>Select how the IP address is to be determined that your device uses as the source address of the packet sent to the host to be monitored.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Automatic</i> (default value): The IP address is determined automatically.• <i>Specific</i>: Enter the IP address in the adjacent input field.
Interval	<p>Enter the time interval (in seconds) to be used for checking the availability of hosts.</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 65536.</p> <p>The default value is 10.</p> <p>Within a group, the smallest Interval of the group members is used.</p>
Successful Trials	<p>Specify how many pings need to be answered for the host to be regarded as accessible.</p> <p>You can use this setting to specify, for example, when a host is deemed to be accessible once more, and used again, instead of a backup device.</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 65536.</p> <p>The default value is 3.</p>
Unsuccessful Trials	<p>Specify how many pings need to be unanswered for the host to be regarded as inaccessible.</p> <p>You can use this setting to specify, for example, when a host is deemed to be inaccessible, and that a backup device should be used.</p> <p>Possible values are 1 to 65536.</p> <p>The default value is 3.</p>

Field	Description
Action to be performed	<p>Select which Action should be run. For most actions, you select an Interface to which the Action relates.</p> <p>All physical and virtual interfaces can be selected.</p> <p>For each interface, select whether it is to be enabled (<i>Enable</i>), disabled (<i>Disable</i> default value), reset (<i>Reset</i>), or the connection reestablished (<i>Redial</i>).</p> <p>With Action = <i>Monitor</i> you can monitor the IP address that is specified under Monitored IP Address. This information can be used for other functions, such as the Tracking IP Address.</p>

21.8.2 Interfaces

A list of all monitored hosts is displayed in the **Local Services->Surveillance->Interfaces** menu.

21.8.2.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to set up monitoring for other interfaces.

HostsInterfacesTemperaturePing Generator

Basic Parameters

Monitored Interface	Select one
Trigger	Interface goes up
Interface Action	Enable
Interface	Select one

OKCancel

Fig. 188: Local Services->Surveillance->Interfaces->New

The menu **Local Services->Surveillance->Interfaces->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Monitored Interface	Select the interface on your device that is to be monitored.

Field	Description
Trigger	<p>Select the state or state transition of Monitored Interface that is to trigger a particular Interface Action.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Interface goes up</i> (default value)• <i>Interface goes down</i>
Interface Action	<p>Select the action that is to follow the state or state transition defined in Trigger.</p> <p>The action is applied to the Interface(s) selected in Interface.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Enable</i> (default value): Activation of interface(s)• <i>Disable</i>: Deactivation of interface(s)
Interface	<p>Select the interface(s) for which the action defined in Interface is to be performed.</p> <p>You can choose all physical and virtual interfaces as well as options <i>All PPP Interfaces</i> and <i>All IPSec Interfaces</i>.</p>

21.8.3 Temperature

Devices from the **WI** series are fitted with a temperature sensor. This is located on the main board, under the first WLAN card.


The sensor measures the current temperature. Its measurement range is from -55 to +125 °C, with an accuracy of less than 1 °C.

In addition, the minimum and maximum temperatures reached are shown, together with the times at which they were reached. These values are cleared and refilled upon rebooting the device.

Lower and upper limits are set for the temperature by default; overstepping these sets an alert variable and generates a syslog message. The values are updated every 10 seconds.

The temperature limits are configured in the **Local Services->Surveillance->Temperature** menu. You can link the overstepping of a limit value with an action.

21.8.3.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to configure new limits and actions.

Hosts

Interfaces

Temperature

Ping Generator

Basic Parameters

Trigger

Temperature above °C

Action

Enable

Interface

Relay

OK

Cancel

Fig. 189: Local Services->Surveillance->Temperature ->New


Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Trigger	<div>Enter here the temperature limit value (min/max).</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Temperature aboveTemperature below
Action	<div>Select the desired action.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Enable (default value)Disable
Interface	<div>Select the interface to be used to perform the action.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Relay (default value): The overstepping of the limit is coupled with the relay (see Physical Interfaces->Relay->Relay Configuration menu).<Interface>: The selected interface is turned off if the temperature limit is exceeded.

21.8.4 Ping Generator

In the **Local Services->Surveillance->Ping Generator** menu, a list of all configured, automatically generated pings is displayed.

21.8.4.1 Edit or New

Choose the  icon to edit existing entries. Choose the **New** button to create additional pings.

Hosts

Interfaces

Temperature

Ping Generator

Basic Parameters

Destination IP Address

Source IP Address

Specific

Interval

10

Seconds

Trials

3

OK

Cancel

Fig. 190: **Local Services->Surveillance->Ping Generator->New**


The menu **Local Services->Surveillance->Ping Generator->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Destination IP Address	Enter the IP address to which the ping is automatically sent.
Source IP Address	<div>Enter the source IP address of the outgoing ICMP echo request packets.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Automatic</i>: The IP address is determined automatically.• <i>Specific</i> (default value): Enter the IP address in the adjacent input field e.g. to test a particular extended route.
Interval	<div>Enter the interval in seconds during which the ping is sent to the address specified in Remote IP Address.</div> <div>Possible values are 1 to 65536.</div>

Field	Description
	The default value is <i>10</i> .
Trials	Enter the number of ping tests to be performed until Destination IP Address as <i>Unreachable</i> applies. The default value is <i>3</i> .

21.9 ISDN Theft Protection

With the ISDN theft protection function, you can prevent a thief who has stolen a gateway from gaining access to the gateway owner's LAN. (Without theft protection, he could dial in to the LAN by ISDN if under **WAN->Internet + Dialup->ISDN->** the field **Always on** is activated.)

21.9.1 Options

All interfaces for which the theft protection is enabled are administratively set to "down" when the gateway boots.

The gateway then calls itself by ISDN and checks its location. If the configured ISDN call numbers differ from the numbers dialled, the interfaces remain disabled.

If the numbers agree, the device assumes that it is at the original location and the interfaces are administratively set to "up".

To reduce cost, the function uses the ISDN D channel.



Note

Note that the ISDN theft protection function is not available for Ethernet interfaces.

Options

Basic Parameters

ISDN Theft Protection Service	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Dialling Number	<input type="text"/>
Incoming Number	<input type="text"/>
Outgoing Number	<input type="text"/>
Monitored Interfaces	<div><div>Interface</div><div>Add</div></div>

Advanced Settings

Number of Dialling Retries	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Timeout	<input type="text" value="5"/> Seconds

OK

Cancel

Fig. 191: Local Services->ISDN Theft Protection->Options

The menu **Local Services->ISDN Theft Protection->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
ISDN Theft Protection Service	Enable or disable the ISDN theft protection function. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.
Dialling Number	Only if ISDN Theft Protection Service is enabled. Enter the subscriber number that the gateway dials to call itself.
Incoming Number	Only if ISDN Theft Protection Service is enabled. Enter the subscriber number to be compared with the current calling party number.
Outgoing Number	Only if ISDN Theft Protection Service is enabled. Enter the subscriber number to be set as calling party number.
Monitored Interfaces	Only if ISDN Theft Protection Service is enabled.

Field	Description
	Use Add to add a new interface. Select from the available interfaces those to which the ISDN theft protection function is to be applied.

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Number of Dialling Re-tries	Enter the number of dial attempts that the gateway is to make to call itself by ISDN after a reboot. Possible values are 1 to 255. The default value is 3.
Timeout	Enter the time in seconds that the gateway is to wait before trying again after an unsuccessful attempt to call itself. Possible values are 2 to 20. The default value is 5.

21.10 UPnP

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) makes it possible to use current messenger services (e.g. real time video/audio conferencing) as peer-to-peer communication where one of the peers lies behind a NAT-enabled gateway.

UPnP enables (mostly) Windows-based operating systems to take control of other devices with UPnP functionality on the local network. These include gateways, access points and print servers. No special device drivers are needed as known common protocols are used, such as TCP/IP, HTTP and XML.

Your gateway makes it possible to use the subsystem of the Internet Gateway Device (IGD) from the UPnP function range.

In a network behind a NAT-enabled gateway, the UPnP-configured computers act as LAN UPnP clients. To do this, the UPnP function on the PC must be enabled.

The pre-configured port used for UPnP communication between LAN UPnP clients and the gateway is 5678. The LAN UPnP client acts as a so-called service control point, i.e. it recognizes and controls the UPnP devices on the network.

The ports assigned dynamically by, for example, MSN Messenger, lie in the range from

5004 to 65535. The ports are released internally to the gateway on demand, i.e. when an audio/video transfer is started in Messenger. When the application is closed, the ports are immediately closed again.

The peer-to-peer-communication is initiated via public SIP servers with only the information from the two clients being forwarded. The clients then communicate directly with one another.

For further information about UPnP, see www.upnp.org.

21.10.1 Interfaces

In this menu, you configure the UPnP settings individually for each interface of your gateway.

You can determine whether UPnP requests from clients are accepted by each interface (for requests from the local network) and/or whether the interface can be controlled via UPnP requests.

Interfaces

General

View 20 per page << >> Filter in None equal Go

Interface	Answer to client request	Interface is UPnP controlled
en1-0	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
en1-4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Page: 1, Items: 1 - 2

OK

Cancel

Fig. 192: Local Services->UPnP->Interfaces

The menu **Local Services->UPnP->Interfaces** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Interfaces menu.

Field	Description
Interface	Shows the name of the interface for which the UPnP settings are to be made. The entry cannot be changed.
Answer to client request	Determine whether UPnP requests from clients are to be answered via the particular interface (from the local network). The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.

Field	Description
Interface is UPnP controlled	Determine whether the NAT configuration of this interface is controlled by UPnP. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The function is disabled by default.

21.10.2 General

In this menu, you make the basic UPnP settings.

InterfacesGeneral

Basic Parameters

UPnP Status

☐ Enabled

UPnP TCP Port

5678

OK

Cancel

Fig. 193: Local Services->UPnP->General

The **Local Services->UPnP->General** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the General menu.

Field	Description
UPnP Status	Decide how the gateway processes UPnP requests from the LAN. The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i> . The gateway proceeds with UPnP releases in accordance with the parameters contained in the request from the LAN UPnP client, independently of the IP address of the requesting LAN UPnP client. The function is disabled by default. The gateway rejects UPnP requests, NAT releases are not made.
UPnP TCP Port	Enter the number of the port on which the gateway listens for UPnP requests. The possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>65535</i> , the default value is <i>5678</i> .

21.11 HotSpot Gateway

The **HotSpot Solution** allows provision of public Internet accesses (using WLAN or wired Ethernet). The solution is adapted to setup of smaller and larger Hotspot solutions for cafes, hotels, companies, communal residences, campgrounds, etc.

The **HotSpot Solution** consists of a Teldat gateway installed onsite (with its own WLAN access point or additional connected WLAN device or wired LAN) and of the Hotspot server, centrally located at a computing centre. The operator account is administered on the server via an administration terminal (e.g., a hotel reception PC); this includes functions such as registration entry, generating tickets, statistical analysis, etc.

Login sequence at the Hotspot server

- When a new user connects with the Hotspot, he/she is automatically assigned an IP address via DHCP.
- As soon as he attempts to access any Internet site with a browser, the user is redirected to the home/login page.
- After the user has entered the registration data (user/password), these are sent to the central RADIUS server (Hotspot server) as RADIUS registration.
- Following successful registration, the gateway opens Internet access.
- For each user, the gateway sends regular additional information to the RADIUS server for recording accounting data.
- When the ticket expires, the user is automatically logged off and again redirected to the home/login page.

Requirements

To operate a Hotspot, the customer requires:

- a Teldat device as hotspot gateway with active Internet access and configured hotspot server entries for login and accounting (see menu **System Management->Remote Authentication->RADIUS->New** with **Group Description** *default group 0*)
- Teldat Hotspot hosting (article number 5510000198)
- Access data
- Documentation
- Software licensing

Please note that you must first activate the licence.

Go to www.teldat.de then **Service/Support -> Services -> Online Services**.

- Enter the required data (please note the relevant explanations on the license sheet), and follow the instructions of the online licensing.

- You then receive the Hotspot server's login data.



Note

Activation may require 2-3 business days.

Access data for gateway configuration

RADIUS Server IP	62.245.165.180
RADIUS Server Password	Set by Teldat GmbH
Domain	Individually set for customers by customer/dealer
Walled Garden Network	Individually set for customers by customer/dealer
Walled Garden Server URL	Individually set for customers by customer/dealer
Terms & Conditions URL	Individually set for customers by customer/dealer

Access data for configuration of the Hotspot server

Admin URL	https://hotspot.teldat.de/
Username	Individually set by Teldat
Password	Individually set by Teldat



Note

Also refer to the WLAN Hotspot Workshop that is available to download from www.teldat.de

21.11.1 HotSpot Gateway

In the **HotSpot Gateway** menu, you can configure the Teldat gateway installed onsite for the **Hotspot Solution**.

A list of all configured hotspot networks is displayed in the **Local Services->HotSpot**


Gateway->HotSpot Gateway menu.



Fig. 194: Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->HotSpot Gateway

You can use the **Enabled** option to enable or disable the corresponding entry.

21.11.1.1 Edit or New

You configure the hotspot networks in the **Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->HotSpot Gateway->**  menu. Choose the **New** button to set up additional Hotspot networks.

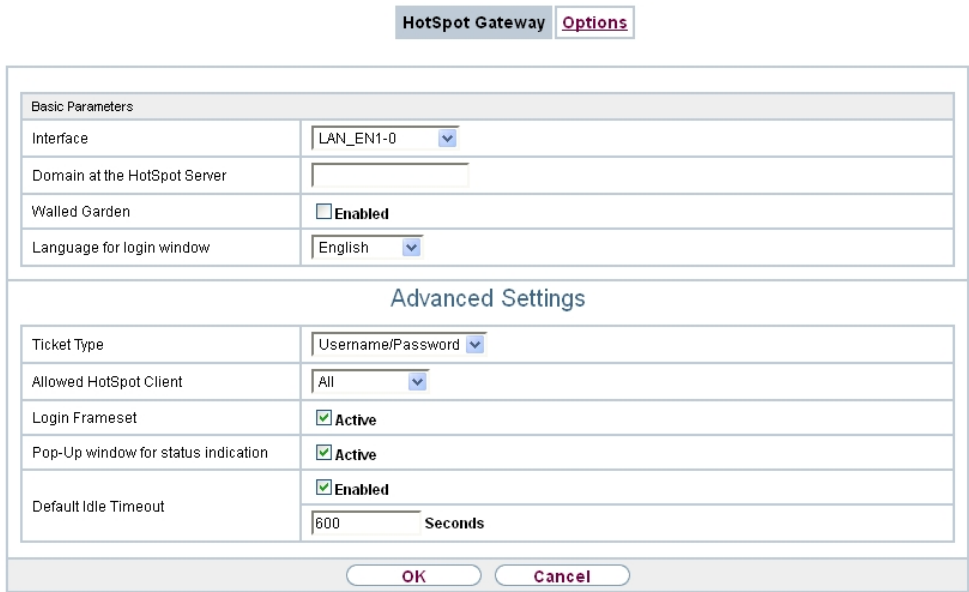



Fig. 195: Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->HotSpot Gateway->

The **Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->HotSpot Gateway->**  menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu Basic Parameters

Field	Description
Interface	<p>Choose the interface to which the Hotspot LAN or WLAN is connected. When operating over LAN, enter the Ethernet interface here (e. g. en1-0). If operating over WLAN, the WLAN interface to which the access point is connected must be selected.</p> <div>Caution<p>For security reasons you cannot configure your device over an interface that is configured for the Hotspot. Therefore take care when selecting the interface you want to use for the Hotspot.</p><p>If you select the interface over which the current configuration session is running, the current connection will be lost. You must then log in again over a reachable interface that is not configured for the Hotspot to configure your device.</p></div>
Domain at the HotSpot Server	<p>Enter the domain name that you used when setting up the HotSpot server for this customer. The domain name is required so that the Hotspot server can distinguish between the different clients (customers).</p>
Walled Garden	<p>Enable this function if you want to define a limited and free area of websites (intranet).</p> <p>The function is not activated by default.</p>
Walled Network / Netmask	<p>Only if Walled Garden is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the network address of the Walled Network and the corresponding Netmask of the intranet server.</p> <p>For the address range resulting from Walled Network / Netmask, clients require no authentication.</p> <p>Example: Enter 192.168.0.0 / 255.255.255.0, if all IP addresses from 192.168.0.0 to 19.168.0.255 are free. Enter 192.168.0.1 / 255.255.255.255, if only the IP address 192.168.0.1 is free.</p>
Walled Garden URL	<p>Only if Walled Garden is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the Walled Garden URL of the intranet server. Freely accessible websites must be reachable over this address.</p>

Field	Description
Terms &Conditions	<p>Only if Walled Garden is enabled.</p> <p>In the Terms &Conditions input field, enter the address of the general terms and conditions on the intranet server, or public server, e.g., <code>http://www.webserver.de/agb.htm</code>. The page must lie within the address range of the walled garden network.</p>
Additional freely accessible Domain Names	<p>Only if Walled Garden is enabled.</p> <p>Add further URLs or IP addresses with Add. The web pages can be accessed via these additional freely accessible addresses.</p>
Language for login window	<p>Here you can choose the language for the start/login page.</p> <p>The following languages are supported: <i>English, Deutsch, Italiano, Français, Español, Português and Netherlands</i>.</p> <p>The language can be changed on the start/login page at any time.</p>

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the menu **Advanced Settings**

Field	Description
Ticket Type	<p>Select the ticket type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Voucher</i>: Only the user name must be entered. Define a default password in the input field.• <i>Username/Password</i> (default value): User name and password must be entered.
Allowed HotSpot Client	<p>Here you can define which type of users can log in to the Hot-spot.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All</i>: All clients are approved.• <i>DHCP Client</i>: Prevents users who have not received an IP address from DHCP from logging in.

Field	Description
Login Frameset	<p>Enable or disable the login window.</p> <p>The login window on the HTML homepage consists of two frames.</p> <p>When the function is enabled, the login form displays on the left-hand side.</p> <p>When the function is disabled, only the website with information, advertising and/or links to freely accessible websites is displayed.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Pop-Up window for status indication	<p>Specify whether the device uses pop-up windows to display the status.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Default Idle Timeout	<p>Enable or disable the Default Idle Timeout. If a hotspot user does not trigger any data traffic for a configurable length of time, they are logged out of the hotspot.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>The default value is 600 seconds.</p>

21.11.2 Options

In the **Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->Options** menu, general settings are performed for the hotspot.

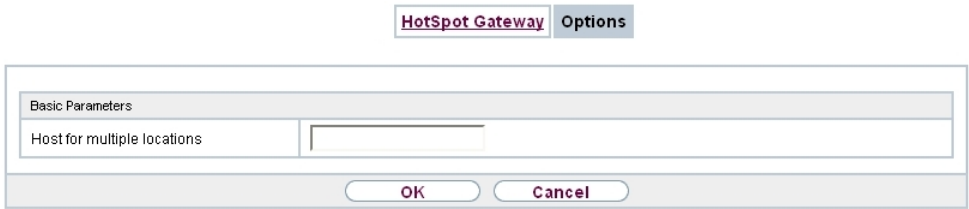


Fig. 196: Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->Options

The **Local Services->HotSpot Gateway->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Host for multiple locations	If several locations (branches) are set up on the Hotspot server, enter the value of the NAS identifier (RADIUS server parameter) that has been registered for this location on the Hotspot server.

21.12 BRRP

In the **BRRP** menu you can configure the redundancy of your gateway.



Note

You require a licence for devices in the R23x series and RS series.

BRRP (Bintec Router Redundancy Protocol) is a Teldat-specific implementation of the VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol). A router redundancy procedure is used mainly to safeguard the availability of a physical gateway in a LAN or WAN.

Terms and Definitions

A number of special terms are used to describe the function. The following terms are defined in the relevant RFC and in the Internet draft.

BRRP terms

Field	Description
VRRP router	“A router that uses the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol. It can be integrated into one or more “virtual routers”.”
Virtual Router	“An abstract object controlled by the VRRP, which is used as default router for the hosts of a LAN. It comprises a Virtual Router Identifier (Virtual Router ID) and an IP address or a group of associated IP addresses in a common LAN. A VRRP router can protect the data traffic of one or more virtual routers.”
IP Address Owner	“The VRRP router that possesses the IP address(es) of the virtual router as real interface address(es). This is the router that – if active - answers packets for ICMP pings, TCP connections, etc. to one of these IP addresses.”
Primary IP Address	“An IP address that is selected from the group of real interface addresses. A possible algorithm option is the selection of the

Field	Description
	first address. VRRP advertisements are always sent with the primary IP address as source of the IP packet.”
VRRP Advertisement	A keepalive that sends the master to the backup gateway to indicate his reachability.
Virtual Router Master	“The VRRP router that takes over forwarding the packets that have been sent to the IP addresses associated with the “virtual router”. It is also responsible for answering ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) requests for these IP addresses.”
Virtual Router Backup	“The group of VRRP routers that take over responsibility for forwarding the packets if the master fails.” In backup status these VRRP routers are inactive, i.e. they do not respond to any ARP requests.”

21.12.1 Virtual Routers

When using a route redundancy protocol, multiple routers are combined into a logical unit. The router redundancy protocol BRRP manages the routes involved and organises these as follows:

It ensures that only one routers within the logical connection is active.

It guarantees that if the active route fails, another router takes over the function of the failed device. The time that each router is active is determined by the priority assigned to the router.

Let us take the example of a simple scenario, in which gateway A provides Internet access for the hosts in a LAN. If this gateway fails, all hosts cannot access the Internet and their routes are configured statically. To allow the hosts continued access to the Internet, gateway B offers all hosts in the LAN the service that gateway A previously performed. All the tasks of a “virtual router” and the switching of services from one gateway to the other are controlled by the BRRP redundancy procedure.

The BRRP conforms to the specifications in RFC 2338 and the relevant Internet draft (see www.ietf.org).

The configuration of the router redundancy procedure is carried out in the following steps:

- Configuration of the interface via which the BRRP advertisement data packets are sent.



Note

This interface is used to transmit the BRRP advertisement data packets and possibly to transmit keepalive monitoring data packets. Another interface must be configured in the next step to transmit the usage data.

Configuration of the advertisement interface is performed in the **Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Router->New** menu under **BRRP Advertisement Interface**.

Only the active router in the router group sends advertisement data packets. The IPv4 multicast address 224.0.0.18 is used as the destination address for all routers in the group. All passive routers in the group must monitor this address so that if the advertisement data packets are not received that can react according to their priority and BRRP configuration.

- Configuration of the interface for transmitting usage data (configuration of the virtual interface).

A virtual interface is activated and deactivated by assigning it to a virtual router over the BRRP router redundancy protocol.

Configuration is performed in the **Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Router->New->Ethernet Interface** menu.

In this step, you configure the IP address settings and assign the interface to a virtual router. The properties of the virtual router (e.g. the priority) are also defined here.



Note

The system automatically assigns the MAC address of the virtual interface according to the following model: 00:00:5E:00:01:<ID of the virtual router>. The ID of the virtual router therefore determines the MAC address of the interface, which is used to transmit the usage data.

The configuration of the virtual interface (MAC address, IP address) and the configuration of the virtual router (sending interval for advertisement, master down trials) must be identical on all routers with the same virtual router ID within the logical group.

You must use IP addresses from different subnets for the advertisement interface and for the virtual interface.

All virtual interfaces on a physical router should normally have the same priority.

- Configuration of the synchronisation between the virtual router and configuration of the

events, which result in a switching of the operating status of the virtual router.

Controlling the operating status of a virtual router implicitly also controls the operating status of the interface to which the virtual router is linked. If an error occurs, all interfaces on a device have to be deactivated. Consequently, the operating status of all interfaces on a device must be synchronised. This synchronisation is required if multiple interfaces are monitored on a single device. This configuration is performed in the **Local Services->BRRP->VR Synchronisation->New** menu.

- Switching on the redundancy procedure. This configuration is performed in the **Local Services->BRRP->Options** menu.

You configure the advertisement interface and the virtual interface(s) in the **Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Router->New** menu. You must configure the same virtual routers with the same interfaces on all physical routers involved in the redundancy procedure. (However, the virtual routers have different priorities on the various physical routers.)

21.12.1.1 New

Choose the **New** button to configure other virtual routers.

Virtual Routers

VR Synchronisation

Options

BRRP Advertisement Interface

Ethernet Interface

Select one

IP Address

IP Address

Netmask

BRRP Monitored Interface

Virtual Router Interface

Advertisement interface not selected!

Virtual Router IP Address

IP Address

Netmask

255.255.255.0

Add

Virtual Router ID

1

Virtual Router Priority

100

Advanced Settings

Advertisement send interval

1

Master down trials

10

Pre-empt mode (go back into master state)

☒ Enabled

Enable authentication

☐

OK

Cancel


Fig. 197: Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Routers->New

The **Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Routers->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the BRRP Advertisement Interface menu.

Field	Description
Ethernet Interface	<p>Choose the interface via which BRRP advertisement packets are sent and expected.</p> <p>If you edit a Virtual Router, the Ethernet interface is displayed and cannot be changed.</p> <p>Please note: The Ethernet interface for sending the advertisements is always up and running and cannot therefore be used as the Virtual Router Interface.</p>
IP Address	<p>Shows the IP address(es) of the interface via which BRRP advertisement packets are sent and expected.</p>

Fields in the BRRP Monitored Interface menu.

Field	Description
Virtual Router Interface	<p>Indicates on which physical interface the virtual interface is based, if a new virtual interface is created. The name of the virtual interface is assigned automatically when it is created.</p> <p>Shows the name of the virtual interface, if a virtual interface that has already been created is edited.</p>
Virtual Router IP Address	<p>Enter the IP address and the netmask of the virtual router. Here enter the IP address that you want to use in the local network as the actual gateway IP address.</p> <div>Note<p>To avoid problems in the LAN, the IP Address for advertisements and the Virtual Router IP Address cannot originate from the same subnet.</p></div>
Virtual Router ID	<p>Select the ID of the virtual router.</p> <p>This ID identifies the “virtual router” in the LAN and is part of every BRRP advertisement packet that is sent by the current master.</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 1 and 255.</p>

Field	Description
Virtual Interface Priority	<p>Define the transmitted BRRP priority of the interface for the virtual router. Higher priorities determine the master interfaces during the initialization pahse as well as with active Pre-Empt-Mode.Possible values are between 1 and 255. The higher the value, the higher the priority. The value 255 defines that this virtual router always functions as master as soon as it is active.</p> <p>The default value is 100.</p> <p>A priority of 255 is used for routers the IP address of which is idential with the IP address of the virtual router.</p>

In the **Advanced Settings** menu you must configure all of the parameters for all virtual routers identically on all devices in the group. We recommend leaving the preset values.

The menu **Advanced Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Advanced Settings menu.

Field	Description
Advertisement send interval	<p>Determine how often a BRRP advertisement packet is sent if the virtual router is defined as master. Only the current master sends via multicast BRRP advertisements, which also contain the ID and the priority of the master.</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 1 and 255. The value is indicated in seconds and the default value is 1. 1.</p> <p>An advertisement timer based on the sending interval for advertisements runs in the router and an advertisement packet is sent when the timer expires.</p>
Master down trials	<p>Define the number of BRRP advertisements that must fail before the backup router with the lowest priority assumes that the master is inactive and takes over the role of master.</p> <p>A master down timer based on the Master down trials parameter runs in the router; when this timer expires, the backup assumes that the master is not reachable if no advertisement has been received.</p> <p>The effective master down interval is the time calculated from the number of expected but omitted BRRP advertisements, the advertisement interval and the skew time, which adds a minim-</p>

Field	Description
	<p>um period depending on the priority. The higher the priority, the shorter the time added. Consequently, a backup router with a higher priority responds more quickly than a router with lower priority).</p> <p>Possible values are whole numbers between 1 and 255 and the default value is 10.</p>
Pre-empt mode (go back into master state)	<p>Define whether a backup router with higher priority has priority over a master router with low priority.</p> <p>Pre-empt mode is used to prevent unnecessary switching.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>. The router with the higher priority always has priority. This means that when the actual master router is accessible once more, it is always enabled. If the function is not enabled, the currently enabled backup router continues to be enabled even when the actual master router is accessible once more, although the priority of the master router is higher than the priority of the backup router which is currently enabled.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p> <p>Note the following exception: If Virtual Interface Priority 255 is selected, the gateway with this priority certainly takes over the master role, i.e. the setting in Pre-empt mode (go back into master state) is ignored. You should therefore select a Virtual Interface Priority lower than 255255if you wish to use Pre-empt Mode.</p>
Enable authentication	<p>Enable or disable authentication.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>If the function is active, an input field is displayed. Enter the authentication key here.</p> <p>Please note: Note that the authentication key must be the same for all virtual routers in the group.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

21.12.2 VR Synchronisation

The watchdog daemon is configured in the **Local Services->BRRP->VR Synchronisation** menu, i.e. you define how state changes are handled.

After opening the menu **Local Services->BRRP->VR Synchronisation** a list of all synchronisations is displayed. You can either synchronise virtual interfaces or interfaces. New synchronisations can be added in the **New** menu.

For example, you can synchronise both virtual routers R1 and R2 over BRRP. To do this, you must create two entries. For the first entry, as **Monitoring VR / Interface** R1 and as **Synchronisation VR / Interface** you must use R2. For the second entry, as **Monitoring VR / Interface** R2 and as **Synchronisation VR / Interface** you must use R1.

21.12.2.1 New

Select the **New** button to create new synchronisations.

Virtual Routers

VR Synchronisation

Options

Basic Parameters

Monitoring VR / Interface

Monitoring Mode

BRRP

Virtual Router ID

Select one

Synchronisation VR / Interface

Synchronisation Mode

BRRP

Virtual Router ID

Select one

OK

Cancel

Fig. 198: **Local Services->BRRP->VR Synchronisation->New**

The **Local Services->BRRP->VR Synchronisation->New** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Monitoring VR / Interface menu.

Field	Description
Monitoring Mode	Shows which mechanism is used for monitoring a virtual router. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>BRRP</i>:The BRRP-specific state advertisements are used for determining the state of the master. (The master sends ad-

Field	Description
	vertisements as per its configuration in the Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Routers->New->Advanced Settings menu.)
Virtual Router ID	Select a virtual router using the Virtual Router ID and define which interface is to be checked. You can choose previously defined IDs (see Virtual Router ID in the Local Services->BRRP->Virtual Router->New menu under BRRP Monitored Interface). The watchdog daemon requests detailed information entered in the Virtual Routers .

Fields in the Synchronisation VR / Interface menu.

Field	Description
Synchronisation Mode	Indicates the mechanism with which virtual routers or interfaces are synchronised: Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>BRRP</i>: BRRP is used to synchronise the virtual router.
Virtual Router ID	Select the ID of the virtual router to be synchronised. Synchronising the virtual router implicitly synchronises the virtual interface associated with the virtual router.

21.12.3 Options

In the **Local Services->BRRP->Options** menu,you can enable or disable the BRRP function.

Virtual Routers

VR Synchronisation

Options

Basic Parameters

Enable BRRP☐ Enabled

OK

Cancel

Fig. 199: Local Services->BRRP->Options

The **Local Services->BRRP->Options**menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Enable BRRP	<p>Enable or disable the BRRP function.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>

Chapter 22 Maintenance

This menu provides you with numerous functions for maintaining your device. It firstly provides a menu for testing availability within the network. You can manage your system configuration files. If more recent system software is available, you can use this menu to install it. If you need other languages for the configuration interface, you can import these. You can also trigger a system reboot in this menu.

22.1 Diagnostics

In the **Maintenance->Diagnostics** menu, you can test the availability of individual hosts, the resolution of domain names and certain routes.

22.1.1 Ping Test

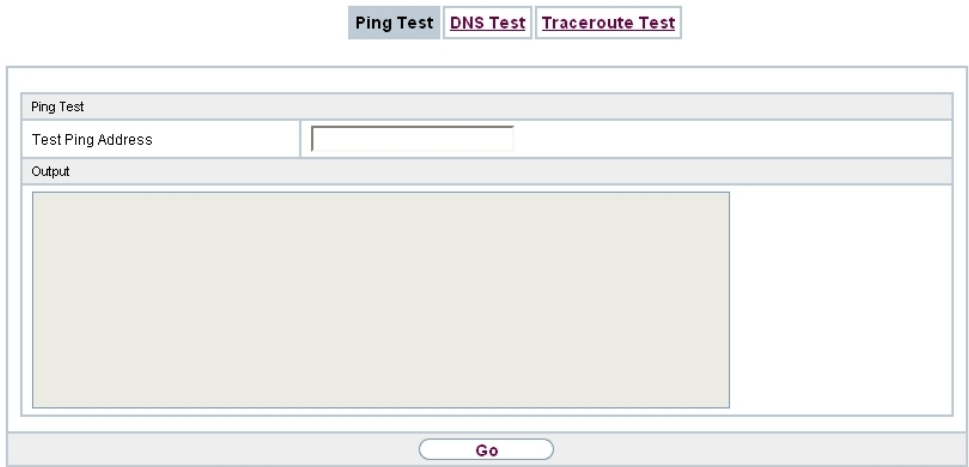


Fig. 200: Maintenance->Diagnostics->Ping Test

You can use the ping test to check whether a certain host in the LAN or an internet address can be reached. The **Output**field displays the ping test messages. The ping test is launched by entering the IP address to be tested in **Test Ping Address** and clicking the **Go** button.

22.1.2 DNS Test

Ping TestDNS TestTraceroute Test

DNS Test

DNS Address

Output

Go

Fig. 201: Maintenance->Diagnostics->DNS Test

The DNS test is used to check whether the domain name of a particular host is correctly re-solved. The **Output**field displays the DSN test messages. The ping test is launched by entering the domain name to be tested in **DNS Address** and clicking the **Go** button.

22.1.3 Traceroute Test

Ping TestDNS TestTraceroute Test

Traceroute Test

Traceroute Address

Output

Go

Fig. 202: Maintenance->Diagnostics->Traceroute Test

You use the traceroute test to display the route to a particular address (IP address or domain name), if this can be reached. The **Output** field displays the traceroute test messages. The ping test is launched by entering the IP address to be tested in **Traceroute Address** and clicking the **Go** button.

22.2 Software & Configuration

You can use this menu to manage the software version of your device, your configuration files and the language of the **GUI**.

22.2.1 Options

Your device contains the version of the system software available at the time of production. More recent versions may have since been released. You may therefore need to carry out a software update.

Every new system software includes new features, better performance and any necessary bugfixes from the previous version. You can find the current system software at www.teldat.de. The current documentation is also available here.



Important

If you want to update your software, make sure you consider the corresponding release notes. These describe the changes implemented in the new system software.

The result of an interrupted update (e.g. power failure during the update) could be that your gateway no longer boots. Do not turn your device off during the update.

An update of BOOTmonitor and/or Logic is recommended in a few cases. In this case, the release notes refer expressly to this fact. Only update BOOTmonitor or Logic if Teldat GmbH explicitly recommends this.

Flash

Your device saves its configuration in configuration files in the flash EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory). The data even remains stored in the flash when your device is switched off.

RAM

The current configuration and all changes you set on your device during operation are

stored in the working memory (RAM). The contents of the RAM are lost if the device is switched off. So if you modify your configuration and want to keep these changes for the next time you start your device, you must save the modified configuration in the flash memory before switching off: The **Save configuration** button over the navigation area of the **GUI**. This configuration is then saved in the flash in a file with the name *boot*. When you start your device, the *boot* configuration file is used by default.

Actions

The files in the flash memory can be copied, moved, erased and newly created. It is also possible to transfer configuration files between your device and a host via HTTP.

Configuration file format

The file format of the configuration file allows encryption and ensures compatibility when restoring the configuration on the gateway in various system software versions. This is a CSV format, which can be read and modified easily. In addition, you can view the corresponding file clearly using Microsoft Excel for example. The administrator can store encrypted backup files for the configuration. When the configuration is sent by e-mail (e.g for support purposes) confidential configuration data can be protected fully if required. You can save or import files with the actions "Export configuration", "Export configuration with status information" and "Load configuration". If you want to save a configuration file with the action ""Export configuration" or "Export configuration with status information", you can choose whether the configuration file is saved encrypted or without encryption.



Caution

If you have saved a configuration file in an old format via the SNMP shell with the `put` command, there is no guarantee that it can be reloaded to the device. As a result, the old format is no longer recommended.

Options

Currently Installed Software	
BOSS	V.9.1 Rev. 1 IPSec from 2012/06/29 00:00:00
System Logic	1.1
Software and Configuration Options	
Action	No Action

Go

Fig. 203: Maintenance->Software & Configuration ->Options

The **Maintenance->Software & Configuration->Options** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Currently Installed Software menu.

Field	Description
BOSS	Shows the current software version loaded on your device.
System Logic	Shows the current system logic loaded on your device.
ADSL Logic	Shows the current version of the ADSL logic loaded on your device.

Fields in the Software and Configuration Options menu.

Field	Description
Action	<p>Select the action you wish to execute.</p> <p>After each task, a window is displayed showing the other steps that are required.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>No Action</i> (default value):• <i>Export configuration</i>: The configuration file Current File Name in Flash is transferred to your local host. If you click the Go button, a dialog box is displayed, in which you can select the storage location on your PC and enter the desired file name.• <i>Import configuration</i>: Under Filename select a configuration file you want to import. Please note: Click Go to first load the file under the name <i>boot</i> in the flash memory for the device. You must restart the device to enable it. <p>Please note: The files to be imported must be in CSV format!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Copy configuration</i>: The configuration file in the Source File Name field is saved as Destination File Name.• <i>Delete configuration</i>: The configuration in the Select file field is deleted.• <i>Rename configuration</i>: The configuration file in the Select file field is renamed to New File Name.• <i>Restore backup configuration</i>: Only if, under Save configuration with the setting <i>Save configuration and</i>

Field	Description
	<p><i>back up previous boot configuration</i> the current configuration was saved as boot configuration and the previous boot configuration was also archived.</p> <p>You can load back the archived boot configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Delete software/firmware</i>: The file in the Select file field is deleted.• <i>Import language</i>: You can import additional language versions of the GUI into your device. You can download the files to your PC from the download area at www.teldat.de and from there import them to your device• <i>Update system software</i>: You can launch an update of the system software, the ADSL logic and the BOOTmonitor.• <i>Import Voice Mail Wave Files</i>: (Only displayed if an SD card is inserted.) In file name, select the <i>vms_wavfiles.zip</i> file that you wish to import.• <i>Export configuration with state information</i>: The active configuration from the RAM is transferred to your local host. If you click the Go button, a dialog box is displayed, in which you can select the storage location on your PC and enter the desired file name.
Action	<p>Select the action you wish to execute.</p> <p>After each task, a window is displayed showing the other steps that are required.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>No Action</i> (default value):• <i>Import configuration</i>: Under Filename select a configuration file you want to import. Please note: Click Go to first load the file under the name <i>boot</i> in the flash memory for the device. You must restart the device to enable it. <p>Please note: The files to be imported must be in CSV format!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Import language</i>: You can import additional language versions of the GUI into your device. You can download the files to your PC from the download area at www.teldat.de and from there import them to your device.• <i>Update system software</i>: You can launch an update of the system software, the ADSL logic and the BOOTmonitor.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Export configuration</i>: The configuration file Current File Name in Flash is transferred to your local host. If you click the Go button, a dialog box is displayed, in which you can select the storage location on your PC and enter the desired file name.• <i>Export configuration with state information</i>: The active configuration from the RAM is transferred to your local host. If you click the Go button, a dialog box is displayed, in which you can select the storage location on your PC and enter the desired file name.• <i>Restore backup</i>: Only if, under Save configuration with the setting <i>Save configuration and back up previous boot configuration</i> the current configuration was saved as boot configuration and the previous boot configuration was also archived. You can load back the archived boot configuration.• <i>Copy configuration</i>: The configuration file in the Source File Name field is saved as Destination File Name.• <i>Rename configuration</i>: The configuration file in the Select file field is renamed to New File Name.• <i>Delete configuration</i>: The configuration in the Select file field is deleted.• <i>Delete software/firmware</i>: The file in the Select file field is deleted.
Configuration Encryption	<p>Only for Action = <i>Import configuration, Export configuration, Export configuration with state information</i>. Define whether the data of the selected Action are to be encrypted..</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p> <p>If the function is enabled, you can enter the Password in the text field.</p>
Filename	<p>Only for Action = <i>Import configuration, Import language Update system software</i>.</p> <p>Enter the path and name of the file or select the file with</p>

Field	Description
	Browse... via the explorer/finder.
Source Location	<p>Only for Action = <i>Update system software</i></p> <p>Select the source of the update.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Local File</i> (default value): The system software file is stored locally on your PC. • <i>HTTP Server</i>: The file is stored on a remote server specified in the URL. • <i>Current Software from Teldat Server</i>: The file is on the official Teldat update server.
URL	<p>Only for Source Location = <i>HTTP Server</i></p> <p>Enter the URL of the update server from which the system software file is loaded.</p>
Current File Name in Flash	<p>For Action = <i>Export configuration</i></p> <p>Select the configuration file to be exported.</p>
Include certificates and keys	<p>For Action = <i>Export configuration, Export configuration with state information</i></p> <p>Define whether the selected Action should also be applied for certificates and keys.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Source File Name	<p>Only for Action = <i>Copy configuration</i></p> <p>Select the source file to be copied.</p>
Destination File Name	<p>Only for Action = <i>Copy configuration</i></p> <p>Enter the name of the copy.</p>
Select file	<p>Only for Action = <i>Rename configuration, Delete configuration or Delete software/firmware</i></p> <p>Select the file or configuration to be renamed or deleted.</p>


Field	Description
New File Name	Only for Action = <i>Rename configuration</i> Enter the new name of the configuration file.

22.3 Reboot

22.3.1 System Reboot

In this menu, you can trigger an immediate reboot of your device. Once your system has restarted, you must call the **GUI** again and log in.

Pay attention to the LEDs on your device. For information on the meaning of the LEDs, see the **Technical Data** chapter of the manual.



Note

Before a reboot, make sure you confirm your configuration changes by clicking the **Save configuration** button, so that these are not lost when you reboot.

System Reboot

Do you really want to reboot the system now?

OK

Fig. 204: Maintenance->Reboot->System Reboot

If you wish to restart your device, click the **OK** button. The device will reboot.

Chapter 23 External Reporting

In this system menu, you define what system protocol messages are saved on which computers, and whether the system administrator should receive an e-mail for certain events. Information on IP data traffic can also be saved--depending on the individual interfaces. In addition, SNMP traps can be sent to specific hosts in case of error. Moreover, you can prepare your device for monitoring with the activity monitor.

23.1 Syslog

Events in various subsystems of your device (e.g. PPP) are logged in the form of syslog messages (system logging messages). The number of messages visible depends on the level set (eight steps from *Emergency* over *Information* to *Debug*).

In addition to the data logged internally on your device, all information can and should be transmitted to one or more external PCs for storage and processing, e.g. to the system administrator's PC. The syslog messages saved internally on your device are lost when you reboot.



Warning

Make sure you only pass syslog messages to a safe computer. Check the data regularly and ensure that there is always enough spare capacity available on the hard disk of your PC.

Syslog Daemon

All Unix operating systems support the recording of syslog messages. For Windows PCs, the Syslog Demon included in the **DIME Tools** can record the data and distribute to various files depending on the contents (can be called in the download area at www.teldat.de).

23.1.1 Syslog Servers

Configure your device as a syslog server so that defined system messages can be sent to suitable hosts in the LAN.

In this menu, you define which messages are sent to which hosts and with which conditions.

A list of all configured system log servers displayed in the **External Reporting->Syslog->Syslog Servers** menu.

23.1.1.1 New

Select the **New** button to set up additional syslog servers.

Syslog Servers

Basic Parameters

IP Address

Level

Information

Facility

local0

Timestamp

☒ None ☐ Time ☐ Date & Time

Protocol

☒ UDP ☐ TCP

Type of Messages

☐ System ☐ Accounting ☒ System & Accounting

OK

Cancel

Fig. 205: **External Reporting->Syslog->Syslog Servers->New**

The menu **External Reporting->Syslog->Syslog Servers->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the host to which syslog messages are passed.
Level	<div>Select the priority of the syslog messages that are to be sent to the host.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">Emergency (highest priority)AlertCriticalErrorWarningNoticeInformation (default value)</div>

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Debug</i> (lowest priority) <p>Syslog messages are only sent to the host if they have a higher or identical priority to that indicated, i.e. at syslog level <i>Debug</i> all messages generated are forwarded to the host.</p>
Facility	<p>Enter the syslog facility on the host.</p> <p>This is only required if the Log Host is a Unix computer.</p> <p>Possible values: <i>local0</i> - 7</p> <p>.</p> <p>The default value is <i>local0</i>.</p>
Timestamp	<p>Select the format of the time stamp in the syslog.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): No system time indicated.• <i>Time</i>: System time without date.• <i>Date &Time</i>: System time with date.
Protocol	<p>Select the protocol for the transfer of syslog messages. Note that the syslog server must support the protocol.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>UDP</i> (default value)• <i>TCP</i>
Type of Messages	<p>Select the message type.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>System &Accounting</i> (default value)• <i>System</i>• <i>Accounting</i>

23.2 IP Accounting

In modern networks, information about the type and number of data packets sent and received over the network connections is often collected for commercial reasons. This information is extremely important for Internet Service Providers that bill their customers by data volume.

However, there are also non-commercial reasons for detailed network accounting. If, for example, you manage a server that provides different kinds of network services, it is useful for you to know how much data is generated by the individual services.

Your device contains the IP Accounting function, which enables you to collect a lot of useful information about the IP network traffic (each individual IP session).

23.2.1 Interfaces

In this menu, you can configure the IP Accounting function individually for each interface.

InterfacesOptions

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

#	Interface	IP Accounting Select all Deselect all
1	en1-0	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	en1-4	<input type="checkbox"/>

Page: 1, Items: 1 - 2

OKCancel

Fig. 206: External Reporting->IP Accounting->Interfaces

In the **External Reporting->IP Accounting->Interfaces** menu, a list of all interfaces configured on your device is shown. For each entry, you can activate IP Accounting by setting the checkmark. In the **IP Accounting** column, you do not need to click each entry individually. Using the options **Select all** or **Deselect all** you can enable or disable the IP accounting function for all interfaces simultaneously.

23.2.2 Options

In this menu, you configure general settings for IP Accounting.

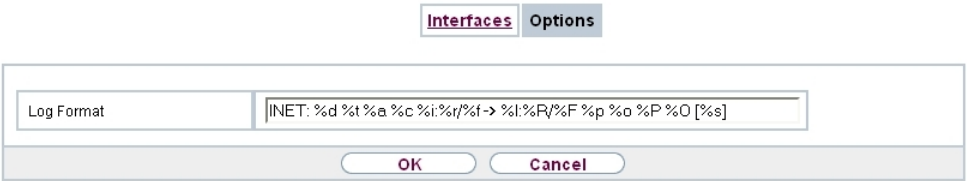


Fig. 207: External Reporting->IP Accounting->Options

In the **External Reporting->IP Accounting->Options** menu, you can define the **Log Format** of the IP accounting messages. The messages can contain character strings in any order, sequences separated by a slash, e.g. `\t` or `\n` or defined tags.

Possible format tags:

Format tags for IP Accounting messages

Field	Description
%d	Date of the session start in the format DD.MM.YY
%t	Time of the session start in the format HH:MM:SS
%a	Duration of the session in seconds
%c	Protocol
%i	Source IP Address
%r	Source Port
%f	Source interface index
%l	Destination IP Address
%R	Destination Port
%F	Destination interface index
%p	Packets sent
%o	Octets sent
%P	Packets received
%O	Octets received
%s	Serial number for accounting message
%%	%

By default, the following format instructions are entered in the **Log Format** field: `INET: %d %t %a %c %i:%r/%f -> %l:%R/%F %p %o %P %O [%s]`

23.3 Alert Service

It was previously possible to send syslog messages from the router to any syslog host. Depending on the configuration, e-mail alerts are sent to the administrator as soon as relevant syslog messages appear.

23.3.1 Alert Recipient

A list of Syslog messages is displayed in the **Alert Recipient** menu.

23.3.1.1 New

Select the **New** to create additional alert recipients.

Alert Recipient

Alert Settings

Add / Edit Alert Recipient

Alert Service	E-mail
Recipient	<input type="text"/>
Message Compression	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Subject	<input type="text"/>
Event	Syslog contains string <input type="button" value="v"/>
Matching String	<input type="text"/> (Wildcards allowed)
Severity	Emergency <input type="button" value="v"/>
Monitored Subsystems	<div>Subsystem <input type="text"/></div> <div>Add</div>
Message Timeout	<input type="text" value="60"/>
Number of Messages	<input type="text" value="1"/>

OK

Cancel

Fig. 208: External Reporting->Alert Service->Alert Recipient->New

The menu **External Reporting->Alert Service->Alert Recipient->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Add / Edit Alert Recipient menu.

Field	Description
Alert Service	Displays the alert service. Select the alert service (only for RS120wu, RS230au+ and RS230bu+).

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• E-mail• SMS
Recipient	<p>Enter the recipient's e-mail address. The entry is limited to 40 characters.</p>
Message Compression	<p>Select whether the text in the alert E-mail is to be shortened. The e-mail then contains the syslog message only once plus the number of relevant events.</p> <p>Enable or disable the field.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Subject	<p>You can enter a subject.</p>
Event	<p>This feature is available only for devices with Wireless LAN Controller.</p> <p>Select the event to trigger an email notification.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Syslog contains string</i> (default value): A Syslog message includes a specific string.• <i>New Neighbor AP found</i>: A new adjacent AP has been found.• <i>New Rogue AP found</i>: A new Rough AP has been found, i.e. an AP using an SSID of its own network, yet is not a component of this network.• <i>New Slave AP (WTP) found</i>: A new unconfigured AP has reported to the WLAN.• <i>Managed AP offline</i>: A managed AP is no longer accessible.
Matching String	<p>You must enter a "Matching String". This must occur in a syslog message as a necessary condition for triggering an alert.</p> <p>The entry is limited to 55 characters. Bear in mind that without the use of wildcards (e.g. "*"), only those strings that correspond exactly to the entry fulfil the condition. The "Matching String"</p>

Field	Description
	entered therefore usually contains wildcards. To be informed of all syslog messages of the selected level, just enter "".
Severity	<p>Select the severity level which the string configured in the Matching String field must reach to trigger an e-mail alert.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p><i>Emergency (default value), Alert, Critical, Error, Warning, Notice, Information, Debug</i></p>
Monitored Subsystems	<p>Select the subsystems to be monitored.</p> <p>Add new subsystems with Add.</p>
Message Timeout	<p>Enter how long the router must wait after a relevant event before it is forced to send the alert mail.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 86400. The value 0 disables the timeout. The default value is 60.</p>
Number of Messages	<p>Enter the number of syslog messages that must be reached before an E-mail can be sent for this case. If timeout is configured, the mail is sent when this expires, even if the number of messages has not been reached.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 99; the default value is 1.</p>

23.3.2 Alert Settings

Alert Recipient

Alert Settings

Basic Parameters

Alert Service

☒ Enabled

Maximum E-mails per Minute

6

E-mail Parameters

Sender E-mail Address

SMTP Server

SMTP Authentication

☒ None ☐ ESMTP ☐ SMTP after POP

OK

Cancel

Fig. 209: External Reporting->Alert Service->Alert Settings

The menu **External Reporting->Alert Service->Alert Settings** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Alert Service	<p>Select whether the alert service is to be enabled for the interface.</p> <p>The function is enabled with <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is enabled by default.</p>
Maximum E-mails per Minute	<p>Limit the number of outgoing mails per minute. Possible values are <i>1</i> to <i>15</i>, the default value is <i>6</i>.</p>

Fields in the E-mail Parameters menu.

Field	Description
E-mail Address	<p>Enter the mail address to be entered in the sender field of the E-mail.</p>
SMTP Server	<p>Enter the address (IP address or valid DNS name) of the mail server to be used for sending the mails.</p> <p>The entry is limited to 40 characters.</p>
SMTP Authentication	<p>Authentication expected by the SMTP server.</p>

Field	Description
	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): The server accepts and send emails without further authentication.• <i>ESMTP</i>: The server only accepts e-mails if the router logs in with the correct user name and password.• <i>SMTP after POP</i>: The server requires that e-mails are called via POP3 by the sending IP with the correct POP3 user name and password before sending an e-mail.
User Name	<p>Only if SMTP Authentication = <i>ESMTP</i> or <i>SMTP after POP</i></p> <p>Enter the user name for the POP3 or SMTP server.</p>
Password	<p>Only if SMTP Authentication = <i>ESMTP</i> or <i>SMTP after POP</i></p> <p>Enter the password of this user.</p>
POP3 Server	<p>Only if SMTP Authentication = <i>SMTP after POP</i></p> <p>Enter the address of the server from which the e-mails are to be retrieved.</p>
POP3 Timeout	<p>Only if SMTP Authentication = <i>SMTP after POP</i></p> <p>Enter how long the router must wait after the POP3 call before it is forced to send the alert mail.</p> <p>The default value is <i>600</i> seconds.</p>

Fields in the SMS Parameters menu (only for RS120wu, RS230au+ and RS230bu+)

Field	Description
SMS Device	<p>You can receive notification of system alerts in text messages. Select the device to be used to send the text message.</p>
Maximum SMS per Day	<p>Limit the maximum number of SMS sent during a single day.</p> <p>Activating <i>No Limitation</i> allows any number of SMS to be sent.</p> <p>The default value is 10 SMS per day.</p> <p>Note: Entering a value of <i>0</i> is equivalent to activating <i>No Limitation</i>.</p>

23.4 SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol from the IP protocol family for transporting management information about network components.

Every SNMP management system contains an MIB. SNMP can be used to configure, control and administrate various network components from one system. Such an SNMP tool is included on your device: the Configuration Manager. As SNMP is a standard protocol, you can use any other SNMP managers, e.g. HPOpenView.

For more information on the SNMP versions, see the relevant RFCs and drafts:

- SNMP V. 1: RFC 1157
- SNMP V. 2c: RFC 1901 - 1908
- SNMP V. 3: RFC 3410 - 3418

23.4.1 SNMP Trap Options

In the event of errors, a message - known as a trap packet - is sent unrequested to monitor the system.

In the **External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Options** menu, you can configure the sending of traps.

SNMP Trap Options [SNMP Trap Hosts](#)

Basic Parameters

SNMP Trap Broadcasting	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
SNMP Trap UDP Port	162
SNMP Trap Community	snmp-trap

OK

Cancel

Fig. 210: **External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Options**

The menu **External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
SNMP Trap Broadcast-	Select whether the transfer of SNMP traps is to be activated.

Field	Description
ing	<p>Your device then sends SNMP traps to the LAN's broadcast address.</p> <p>The function is activated by selecting <i>Enabled</i>.</p> <p>The function is disabled by default.</p>
SNMP Trap UDP Port	<p>Only if SNMP Trap Broadcasting is enabled.</p> <p>Enter the number of the UDP port to which your device is to send SNMP traps.</p> <p>Any whole number is possible.</p> <p>The default value is <i>162</i>.</p>
SNMP Trap Community	<p>Only if SNMP Trap Broadcasting is enabled.</p> <p>Enter a new SNMP code. This must be sent by the SNMP Manager with every SNMP request so that this is accepted by your device.</p> <p>A character string of between <i>0</i> and <i>255</i> characters is possible.</p> <p>The default value is <i>SNMP Trap</i>.</p>

23.4.2 SNMP Trap Hosts

In this menu, you specify the IP addresses to which your device is to send the SNMP traps.

In the **External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Hosts** menu, a list of all configured SNMP trap hosts is displayed.

23.4.2.1 New

Select the **New** button to create additional SNMP trap hosts.

SNMP Trap Options

SNMP Trap Hosts

Basic Parameters

IP Address

OK

Cancel

Fig. 211: External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Hosts->New

The menu **External Reporting->SNMP->SNMP Trap Hosts->New** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the SNMP trap host.

23.5 Activity Monitor

This menu contains the settings needed to monitor your device with the Windows tool **Activity Monitor** (part of **BRICKware** for Windows).

Purpose

The **Activity Monitor** enables Windows users to monitor the activities of your device. Important information about the status of physical interfaces (e.g. ISDN line) and virtual interfaces is easily obtained with a single tool. A permanent overview of the utilisation of your device is possible.

Method of operation

A Status Daemon collects information about your device and transfers it as UDP packets to the broadcast address of the first LAN interface (default setting) or to an explicitly entered IP address. One packet is sent per time interval, which can be adjusted individually to values from 1 - 60 seconds. Up to 100 physical and virtual interfaces can be monitored, provided the packet size of 4096 bytes is not exceeded. The **Activity Monitor** on your PC receives the packets and can display the information contained in them in various ways according to the configuration.

Activate the **Activity Monitor** as follows:

- configure the relevant device(s) to be monitored.

- Start and configure the Windows application on your PC (you can download **BRICKware** for Windows to your PC from the download area at www.teldat.de and from there import it to your device).

23.5.1 Options

Options

Basic Parameters

Monitored Interfaces	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Physical <input type="radio"/> Physical/WAN/VPN
Send information to	All IP Addresses (Broadcast) ▾
Update Interval	5 Seconds
UDP Destination Port	2107
Password	••••••••

OK Cancel

Fig. 212: External Reporting->Activity Monitor->Options

The menu **External Reporting->Activity Monitor->Options** consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Basic Parameters menu.

Field	Description
Monitored Interfaces	<div>Select the type of information to be sent in the UDP packets to the Windows application.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>None</i> (default value): Deactivates the sending of information to the Activity Monitor.• <i>Physical</i>: Only information about the physical interfaces is sent.• <i>Physical/WAN/VPN</i>: Information about physical and virtual interfaces is sent.
Send information to	<div>Select where your device sends the UDP packets.</div> <div>Possible values:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>All IP Addresses (Broadcast)</i> (default value): The default value <i>255.255.255.255</i> means that the broadcast address of the first LAN interface is used.

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Single Host</i>: The UDP packets are sent to the IP address entered in the adjacent input field.
Update Interval	<p>Enter the update interval (in seconds).</p> <p>Possible values are 0 to 60.</p> <p>The default value is 5.</p>
UDP Destination Port	<p>Enter the port number for the Windows application Activity Monitor.</p> <p>The default value is 2107 (registered by IANA - Internet Assigned Numbers Authority).</p>
Password	<p>Enter the password for the Activity Monitor.</p>

This menu contains information that enable you to locate problems in your network and monitor activities, e.g. at your device's WAN interface.

24.1.1 System Messages

System Messages

Fig. 213: Monitoring->Internal Log->System Messages

Field	Description
No.	Displays the serial number of the system message.
Date	Displays the date of the record.
Time	Displays the time of the record.
Level	Displays the hierarchy level of the message.

Field	Description
Subsystem	Displays which subsystem of the device generated the message.
Message	Displays the message text.

24.2 IPSec

24.2.1 IPSec Tunnels

A list of all configured IPSec tunnel providers is displayed in the **Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Tunnels** menu.

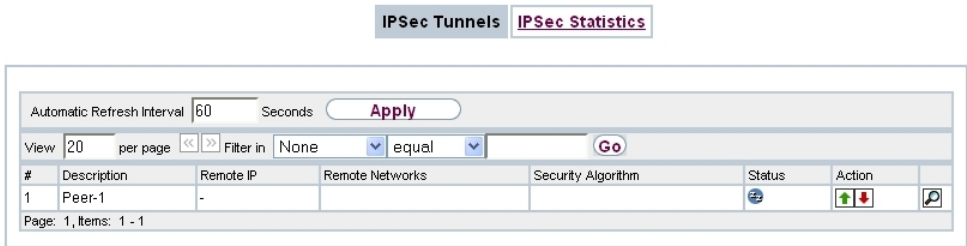





Fig. 214: **Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Tunnels**

Values in the IPSec Tunnels list

Field	Description
Description	Displays the name of the IPSec tunnel.
Remote IP	Displays the IP address of the remote IPSec Peers.
Remote Networks	Displays the currently negotiated subnets of the remote terminal.
Security Algorithm	Displays the encryption algorithm of the IPSec tunnel.
Status	Displays the operating status of the IPSec tunnel.
Action	Enables you to change the status of the IPSec tunnel as displayed.
Details	Opens a detailed statistics window.

You change the status of the IPSec tunnel by clicking the  button or the  button in the **Action** column.

By clicking the  button, you display detailed statistics on the IPSec connection.

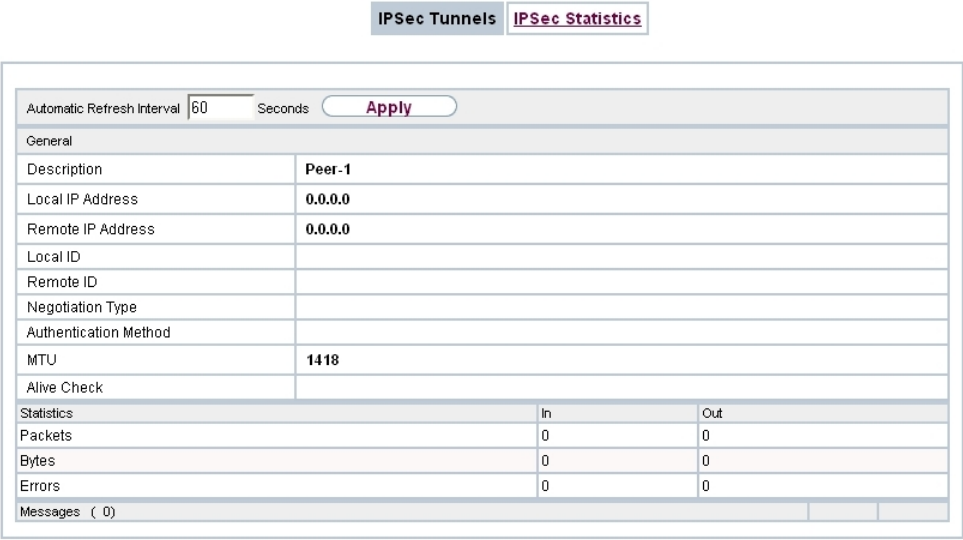


Fig. 215: Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Tunnels->

Values in the IPSec Tunnels list

Field	Description
Description	Shows the description of the peer.
Local IP Address	Shows the WAN IP address of your device.
Remote IP Address	Shows the WAN IP address of the connection partner.
Local ID	Shows the ID of your device for this IPSec tunnel.
Remote ID	Shows the ID of the peer.
Negotiation Type	Shows the exchange type.
Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
MTU	Shows the current MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit).
Alive Check	Shows the method for checking that the peer is reachable.
NAT Detection	Displays the NAT detection method.
Local Port	Shows the local port.
Remote Port	Shows the remote port.
Packets	Shows the total number of incoming and outgoing packets.
Bytes	Shows the total number of incoming and outgoing bytes.
Errors	Shows the total number of errors.
IKE (Phase-1) SAs (x)	The parameters of the IKE (Phase 1) SAs are displayed here.

Field	Description
Role / Algorithm / Life-time remaining / Status	
IPSec (Phase-2) SAs (x)	Shows the parameters of the IPSec (Phase 2) SAs.
Role / Algorithm / Life-time remaining / Status	
Messages	The system messages for this IPSec tunnel are displayed here.

24.2.2 IPSec Statistics

In the **Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Statistics** menu, statistical values for all IPSec connections are displayed.

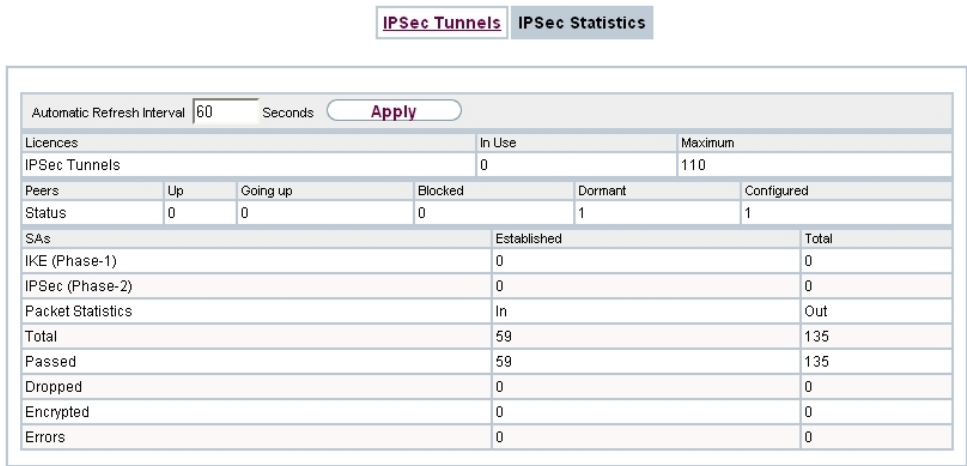


Fig. 216: Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Statistics

The **Monitoring->IPSec->IPSec Statistics** menu consists of the following fields:

Fields in the Licences menu

Field	Description
IPSec Tunnels	Shows the IPSec licences currently in use (In Use) and the maximum number of licenses usable (Maximum).

Fields in the Peers menu

Field	Description
Status	<p>Displays the number of IPSec tunnels by their current status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Up: Currently active IPSec tunnels.• Going up: IPSec tunnels currently in the tunnel setup phase.• Blocked: IPSec tunnels that are blocked.• Dormant: Currently inactive IPSec tunnels.• Configured: Configured IPSec tunnels.

Fields in the SAs menu.

Field	Description
IKE (Phase-1)	Shows the number of active phase 1 SAs (Established) from the total number of phase 1 SAs (Total).
IPSec (Phase-2)	Shows the number of active phase 2 SAs (Established) from the total number of phase 2 SAs (Total).

Fields in the Packet Statistics menu.

Field	Description
Total	Shows the number of all processed incoming (In) or outgoing (Out) packets.
Passed	Shows the number of incoming (In) or outgoing (Out) packets forwarded in plain text.
Dropped	Shows the number of all rejected incoming (In) or outgoing (Out) packets.
Encrypted	Shows the number of all incoming (In) or outgoing (Out) packets protected by IPSec.
Errors	Shows the number of incoming (In) or outgoing (Out) packets for which processing led to errors.

24.3 ISDN/Modem

24.3.1 Current Calls

In the **Monitoring->ISDN/Modem->Current Calls** menu, a list of the existing ISDN connections (incoming and outgoing) is displayed.

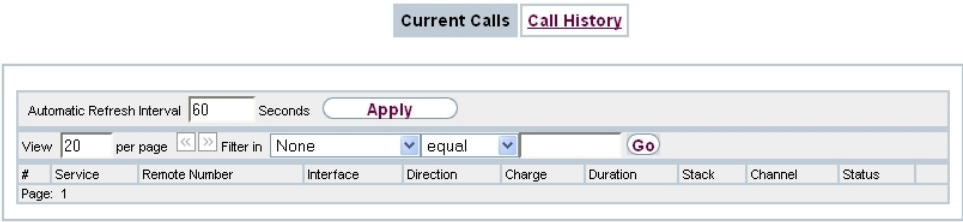


Fig. 217: Monitoring->ISDN/Modem->Current Calls

Values in the Current Calls list

Field	Description
Service	Displays the service to or from which the call is connected: <i>PPP, IPSec, X.25, POTS.</i>
Remote Number	Displays the number that was dialled (in the case of outgoing calls) or from which the call was made (in the case of incoming calls).
Interface	Displays additional information for PPP connections.
Direction	Displays the send direction: <i>Incoming, Outgoing.</i>
Charge	Displays the costs of the current connection.
Duration	Displays the duration of the current connection.
Stack	Displays the related ISDN port (STACK).
Channel	Displays the number of the ISDN B channel.
Status	Displays the state of the connection: <i>null, c-initiated, ovl-send, oc-procd, c-deliverd, c-present, c-recvd, ic-procd, up, discon-req, discon-ind, suspd-req, re-sum-req, ovl-recv.</i>

24.3.2 Call History

In the **Monitoring->ISDN/Modem->Call History** menu, a list of the last 20 ISDN calls (incoming and outgoing) completed since the last system start is displayed.

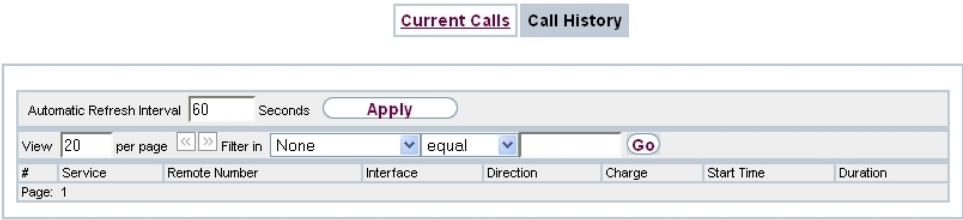


Fig. 218: **Monitoring->ISDN/Modem->Call History**

Values in the Call History list

Field	Description
Service	Displays the service to or from which the call was connected: <i>PPP, IPSec, X.25, POTS.</i>
Remote Number	Displays the number that was dialled (in the case of outgoing calls) or from which the call was made (in the case of incoming calls).
Interface	Displays additional information for PPP connections.
Direction	Displays the send direction: <i>Incoming, Outgoing.</i>
Charge	Displays the costs of the connection.
Start Time	Displays the time at which the call was made or received.
Duration	Displays the duration of the connection.

24.4 Interfaces

24.4.1 Statistics

In the **Monitoring->Interfaces->Statistics** menu, current values and activities of all device interfaces are displayed.

With the filter bar, you can select whether to display **Transfer Totals** or **Transfer Throughput**. The values per second are shown on the **Transfer Throughput** display.

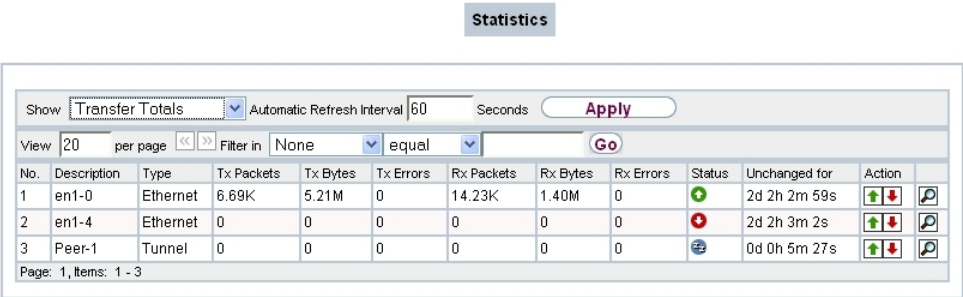


Fig. 219: Monitoring->Interfaces->Statistics

Change the status of the interface by clicking the or the button in the **Action** column.

Values in the Statistics list

Field	Description
No.	Shows the serial number of the interface.
Description	Displays the name of the interface.
Type	Displays the interface text.
Tx Packets	Shows the total number of packets sent.
Tx Bytes	Displays the total number of octets sent.
Tx Errors	Shows the total number of errors sent.
Rx Packets	Shows the total number of packets received.
Rx Bytes	Displays the total number of bytes received.
Rx Errors	Shows the total number of errors received.
Status	Shows the operating status of the selected interface.
Unchanged for	Shows the length of time for which the operating status of the interface has not changed.
Action	Enables you to change the status of the interface as displayed.

Press the button to display the statistical data for the individual interfaces in detail.

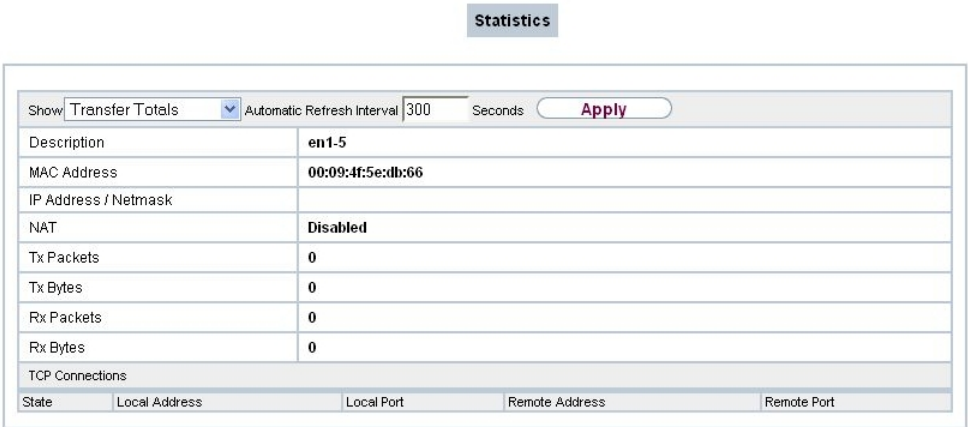


Fig. 220: Monitoring->Interfaces->Statistics->

Values in the Statistics list

Field	Description
Description	Displays the name of the interface.
MAC Address	Displays the interface text.
IP Address / Netmask	Shows the IP address and the netmask.
NAT	Indicates if NAT is activated for this interface.
Tx Packets	Shows the total number of packets sent.
Tx Bytes	Displays the total number of octets sent.
Rx Packets	Shows the total number of packets received.
Rx Bytes	Displays the total number of bytes received.

Fields in the TCP Connections menu

Field	Description
Status	Displays the status of an active TCP connection.
Local Address	Displays the local IP address of the interface for an active TCP connection.
Local Port	Displays the local port of the IP address for an active TCP connection.
Remote Address	Displays the IP address to which an active TCP connection exists.
Remote Port	Displays the port to which an active TCP connection exists.

24.5 Bridges

24.5.1 br<x>

In the **Monitoring->Bridges-> br<x>** menu, the current values of the configured bridges are shown.

br0

Automatic Refresh Interval300SecondsApply

MAC Address	Port
00:a0:f9:0b:08:98	en1-0

Fig. 221: Monitoring->Bridges

Values in the br<x> list

Field	Description
MAC Address	Shows the MAC addresses of the associated bridge.
Port	Shows the port on which the bridge is active.

24.6 HotSpot Gateway

24.6.1 HotSpot Gateway

A list of all linked hotspot users is displayed in the **Monitoring->HotSpot Gateway->Hot-Spot Gateway** menu.

HotSpot Gateway

Automatic Refresh Interval60SecondsApply

Authenticated HotSpot User

User Name	IP Address	Physical Address	Logon	Interface	
-----------	------------	------------------	-------	-----------	--

Fig. 222: Monitoring->HotSpot Gateway->HotSpot Gateway

Values in the HotSpot Gateway list

Field	Description
User Name	Displays the user's name.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the user.
Physical Address	Shows the physical address of the user.
Logon	Displays the time of the notification.
Interface	Shows the interface used.

24.7 QoS

In the **Monitoring->QoS** menu, statistics are displayed for interfaces on which QoS has been configured.

24.7.1 QoS

A list of all interfaces for which QoS was configured is displayed in the **Monitoring->QoS->QoS** menu.

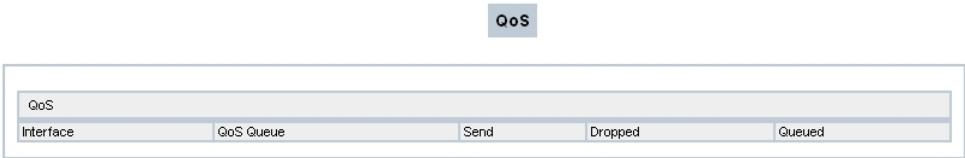


Fig. 223: **Monitoring->QoS->QoS**

Values in the QoS list

Field	Description
Interface	Shows the interface for which QoS has been configured.
QoS Queue	Shows the QoS queue, which has been configured for this interface.
Send	Shows the number of sent packets with the corresponding packet class.
Dropped	Shows the number of rejected packets with the corresponding packet class in case of overloading.
Queued	Shows the number of waiting packets with the corresponding packet class in case of overloading.

24.8 OSPF

In the **Monitoring+OSPF** menu information on OSPF is monitored . The OSPF monitor is arranged horizontally in three sections and shows information about OSPF interfaces, the detected neighbor and the LinkStateDatabase entries.

24.8.1 Status

In the **Monitoring->OSPF->Status** menu, a list of all interfaces configured for OSPF is displayed.

StatusStatistics

ViewAll

OSPF Interfaces

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Interface

Designated Router

Backup Designated Router

Admin Status

State

Page: 1

OSPF Neighbors

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Neighbor

Router ID

Interface

State

Page: 1

OSPF Link State Database

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Area

Type

Link State ID

Router ID

Sequence Age

Page: 1

Fig. 224: Monitoring->OSPF->Status

Values in the Status list

Field	Description
View	Select the desired view from the dropdown menu. Are available: <i>All, OSPF Interfaces, OSPF Neighbors and OSPF Link State Database</i>

In the **OSPF Interfaces** area all enabled OSPF interfaces are listed:

Values in the OSPF Interfaces list

Field	Description
Interface	Shows the interface for which OSPF has been configured.

Field	Description
Designated Router	<p>Shows the IP address of the designated router.</p> <p>The designated router generates network links and distributes these to all gateways within the BMA network (BMA = Broadcast Multi Access Network, e.g. Ethernet, FDDI, Tokenring).</p> <p>A designated router is not shown for non-BMA networks, e.g. X.25, Frame Relay, ATM.</p>
Backup Designated Router	<p>Shows the IP address of the backup designated router.</p>
Admin Status	<p>Shows the OSPF Admin Status (<i>active</i> or <i>passive</i>) of the interface.</p>
State	<p>The OSPF status of the interface displayed here can take on the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Down</i>: OSPF is not running on this interface.• <i>Waiting</i>: The initial phase of the OSPF, in which the DR and BDR are determined.• <i>Point-to-point</i>: The interface is a point-to-point interface. DR or BDR are not shown.• <i>Designated Router</i>: The gateway is the designated router within the BMA network.• <i>Designated Router Backup</i>: The gateway is the backup designated router within the BMA network.• <i>Other Designated Router</i>: Another gateway is designated router or backup designated router within the BMA network.

The **Neighbor** section lists the neighbor gateways that have been identified via the HELLO protocol.

Values in the OSPF Neighbors list

Field	Description
Neighbor	<p>Shows the IP address of the neighbor gateway.</p>
Router ID	<p>Shows the system-wide router ID of the neighbor gateway.</p>
Interface	<p>Indicates the interface over which the neighbor gateway was identified.</p>
State	<p>The OSPF status with this neighbor gateway can have the fol-</p>

Field	Description
	lowing values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Down</i>: The connection to this OSPF neighbor is inactive.• <i>Init</i>: The initial phase. A HELLO packet is received from the neighbor.• <i>Bidirectional</i>: Bidirectional communication with the neighbor. The HELLO packets sent are accepted by the neighbor gateway (with correct parameters).• <i>Start Exchange</i>: The exchange of Database Description packets between the gateways has started.• <i>Exchange</i>: Active exchange of Database Description packets with the neighbor.• <i>Loading</i>: The gateway now exchanges Link State Advertisements with the neighbor.• <i>Complete</i>: The Link State Databases of the gateway and its neighbor are now synchronized.

The headers of all Link State Advertisements (LSA) are listed in the section for the Link State Database.

Values in the OSPF Link State Database list

Field	Description
Area	Indicates the area database to which the LSA is assigned.
Type	Indicates the LSA type. There are five LSA types: Router Link, Network Link, Summary Link, Summary ASBR, and AS External.
Link State ID	The Link State ID of the LSA. The meaning of the Link State ID depends on the type of advertisement.
Router ID	Identifies the gateway that has generated this LSA.
Sequence Age	The age of the LSA (in seconds)

24.8.2 Statistics

In the **Monitoring+OSPF+Statistics** menu, current values and activities are displayed.

Status

Statistics

Received Hello Messages	0
Sent Hello Messages	0
Received Database Description Packets	0
Sent Database Description Packets	0
Received Link State Acknowledge Packets	0
Sent Link State Acknowledge Packets	0
Received Link State Request Packets	0
Sent Link State Request Packets	0
Received Link State Update Packets	0
Sent Link State Update Packets	0
Routing table updates caused by Summary Links Advertisements	0
Routing table updates caused by External Advertisements	0

Fig. 225: **Monitoring+OSPF+Statistics**

Values in the Statistics list

Field	Description
Received Hello Mes-sages	Displays the number of Hello packets received.
Sent Hello Messages	Displays the number of Hello packets sent.
Received Database De-scription Packets	Displays the number of received databank entries.
Sent Database De-scription Packets	Displays the number of sent databank entries.
Received Link State Acknowledge Packets	Displays the number of Link State Acknowledge packets re-ceived.
Sent Link State Ac-knowledge Packets	Displays the number of Link State Acknowledge packets sent.
Received Link State Request Packets	Displays the number of Link State Request packets received.
Sent Link State Re-quest Packets	Displays the number of Link State Request packets sent.
Received Link State Update Packets	Displays the number of Link State Update packets received.
Sent Link State Update Packets	Displays the number of Link State Update packets sent.
Routing table updates caused by Summary	Displays the number of incremental routing table updates per-formed when new Summary Link Advertisements have been re-

Field	Description
Links Advertisements	ceived.
Routing table updates caused by External Advertisements	Displays the number of incremental routing table updates performed when new external Advertisements have been received.

24.9 PIM

24.9.1 Global Status

The status of all configured PIM components is displayed in the **Monitoring+PIM+Global Status** menu.

Global Status

Not Interface-Specific Status

Interface-Specific States

ViewAll

PIM Interfaces

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

InterfaceIP AddressDesignated Router

Page: 1

PIM Neighbors

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

InterfaceGeneration IDIP AddressUptimeExpiry Timer

Page: 1

Multicast Group / RP Mappings

View20per page<<>>Filter inNoneequalGo

Multicast Group AddressMulticast Group Prefix LengthRendevous Point IP Address

Page: 1

Fig. 226: Monitoring+PIM+Global Status

Values in the Global Status list

Field	Description
View	Select the desired view from the dropdown menu. Are available: <i>All</i> , <i>PIM Interfaces</i> , <i>PIM Neighbors</i> and <i>Multicast Group / RP Mappings</i>

Values in the PIM Interfaces list

Field	Description
Interface	Displays the name of the PIM interface.
IP Address	Displays the primary IP address of the PIM interface.
Designated Router	Displays the primary IP address of the designated router on this PIM interface.

Values in the PIM Neighbors list

Field	Description
Interface	Displays the interface via which the PIM Neighbor is reached.
Generation ID	Displays the ID of the neighbor gateway.
IP Address	Displays the primary IP address of the PIM Neighbor.
Uptime	Indicates how long the last PIM Neighbor is a neighbor of the local router.
Expiry Timer	Indicates when the PIM Neighbor is no longer entered as neighbor. If the value 0 is displayed, the PIM Neighbor always remains entered as neighbor.

Values in the Multicast Group / RP Mappings list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast group address.
Multicast Group Prefix Length	Displays the related network mask.
Rendezvous Point IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Rendezvous point.

24.9.2 Not Interface-Specific Status

The menu **Monitoring+PIM+Not Interface-Specific Status** includes status information for all PIM interfaces.

Global Status

Not Interface-Specific Status

Interface-Specific States

View

All

(*,*RP) States

View

20

per page

<<

>>

Filter in

None

equal

Go

Rendezvous Point IP Address

Upstream Join State

Upstream Neighbor IP Address

Uptime

Upstream Join Timer

Page: 1

(*G) States

View

20

per page

<<

>>

Filter in

None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Upstream Neighbor IP Address

Reverse-Path-Forwarding (RPF)

Upstream Join State

Uptime

Upstream Join Timer

Page: 1

(S,G) States

View

20

per page

<<

>>

Filter in

None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Source IP Address

Upstream Neighbor IP Address

Upstream Join State

Uptime

Upstream Join Timer

Shortest Path Tree

Page: 1

(S,G,RPT) States

View

20

per page

<<

>>

Filter in

None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Source IP Address

Reverse-Path-Forwarding (RPF)

Uptime

Upstream Override Timer

Page: 1

Fig. 227: Monitoring+PIM+Not Interface-Specific Status

Values in the Not Interface-Specific Status list

Field	Description
View	Select the desired view from the dropdown menu. Are available: <i>All</i> , <i>(*,*RP) States</i> , <i>(*G) States</i> , <i>(S,G) States</i> and <i>(S,G,RPT) States</i>

Values in the (*,*RP) States list

Field	Description
Rendezvous Point IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Rendezvous Point (RP) for the group.
Upstream Join State	The Upstream (*,*RP) Join/Prune Status indicates the status of the Upstream (*,*RP) State Machine in the PIM-SM Specification.
Upstream Neighbor IP Address	Displays the primary IP address of the Upstream Neighbors, or unknown (0) if the Upstream Neighbor IP address is not known, or if it is not a PIM Neighbor.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan of the RP's existence.

Field	Description
Upstream Join Timer	Join/Prune Timer is used to periodically send Join(*,*,RP) messages, and to correct Prune(*,*,RP) messages from peers on an Upstream LAN interface.

Values in the (*,G) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast group address.
Upstream Neighbor IP Address	Displays the primary IP address of the Neighbor on pimStarGRPFIIndex, to which the local router periodically (*,G) sends Join messages. The InetAddressType is defined through the pimStarGUpstreamNeighborType. In the PIM-SM specification, this address is named RPF'(*,G).
Reverse-Path-Forwarding (RPF)	Indicates the address type of the RPF Next Hop to the RP, or unknown(0), if the Next Hop is not known.
Upstream Join State	Indicates whether the local router should join the group's RP Tree. This corresponds to the status of the Upstream (*,G) State Machine in the PIM-SM specification.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan since the entry was generated by the local router.
Upstream Join Timer	Indicates the remaining time until the local router sends out the next periodic (*,G) Join message on pimStarGRPFIIndex. In the PIM-SM specification, this address is named (*,G) Upstream Join Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0.

Values in the (S,G) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast group address. InetAddressType is defined in the pimSGAddressType object.
Source IP Address	Displays the source IP address. InetAddressType is defined in the pimSGAddressType object.
Upstream Neighbor IP Address	Displays the primary IP address of the Neighbor on pimSGRPFIndex, to which the router periodically (S,G) sends Join messages. The value is 0, if the RPF Next Hop is unknown or is no PM Neighbor. InetAddressType is defined in the pimSGAddressType object. In the PIM-SM specification, this address is named RPF'(S,G).
Upstream Join State	Indicates whether the local router should join the Shortest-Path-Tree for the source and the group represented by this

Field	Description
	entry. This corresponds to the status of the Upstream (S,G) State Machine in the PIM-SM specification.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan since the entry was generated by the local router.
Upstream Join Timer	Indicates the remaining time until the local router sends out the next periodic (S,G) Join message on pimSGRPFIIndex. In the PIM-SM specification, this timer is named (S,G) Upstream Join Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0.
Shortest Path Tree	Indicates whether the Shortest Path Tree Bit is set, i.e. whether forwarding via the Shortest Path Tree should take place.

Values in the (S,G,RPT) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast group address. InetAddressType is defined in the pimStarGAddressType object.
Source IP Address	Displays the source IP address. InetAddressType is defined in the pimStarGAddressType object.
Reverse-Path-Forwarding (RPF)	Indicates the address type of the RPF Next Hop to the RP, or unknown(0), if the RPF Next Hop is not known.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan since the entry was generated by the local router.
Upstream Override Timer	Indicates the remaining time until the local router sends out the next Triggered (S,G, rpt) Join message on pimSGRPFIIndex. In the PIM-SM specification, this timer is named (S,G, rpt) Upstream Override Join Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0.

24.9.3 Interface-Specific States

The menu **Monitoring+PIM+Interface-Specific States** includes interface-specific status information.

Global Status

Not Interface-Specific Status

Interface-Specific States

View -All-

(*,G,I) States

View 20 per page

Filter in None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Interface

Join/Prune State

Uptime

Expiry Timer

Assert State

Assert Winner IP Address

Page: 1

(S,G,I) States

View 20 per page

Filter in None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Source IP Address

Interface

Join/Prune State

Uptime

Expiry Timer

Assert State

Assert Winner IP Address

Page: 1

(S,G,Rpt,I) States

View 20 per page

Filter in None

equal

Go

Multicast Group Address

Source IP Address

Interface

Uptime

Join/Prune State

Expiry Timer

Page: 1

Fig. 228: Monitoring+PIM+Interface-Specific States

Values in the Interface-Specific States list

Field	Description
View	Select the desired view from the dropdown menu. Are available: All, (*,G,I) States, (S,G,I) States and (S,G,RPT) States

Values in the (*,G,I) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast group address. InetAddressType is defined in the pimStarGAddressType object.
Interface	Displays the name of the interface.
Join/Prune State	Indicates the status that results from the (*,G) Join/Prune messages received on this interface. This corresponds to the status of the Downstream Per-Interface (*,G) State Machine in the PIM-SM specification.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan since the entry was generated by the local router.
Expiry Timer	Displays the remaining time until the (*,G) Join State becomes invalid for this interface. In the PIM-SM specification, this address is named (*,G) Join Expiry Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0. The value 'FFFFFFF'h stands for infinite.

Field	Description
Assert State	Displays the (*,G) Assert State for this interface. This corresponds to the status of the Per-Interface (*,G) Assert State Machine in the PIM-SM specification. If pimStarGPimMode is 'bid-ir', this object must 'noInfo' be.
Assert Winner IP Address	Indicates the address of Assert Winner, if pimStarGIAssertState runs 'iAmAssertLoser'. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimStarGIAssertWinnerAddressType.

Values in the (S,G) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast IP address. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimSGAddressType.
Source IP Address	Displays the source IP address. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimSGAddressType.
Interface	Displays the name of the interface.
Join/Prune State	Indicates the status that results from the (S,G) Join/Prune messages received on this interface. This corresponds to the status of the Downstream Per-Interface (S,G) State Machine in the PIM-SM and PIM-DM.
Uptime	Indicates the time remaining before the local router reacts to an (S,G) Prune message received on this interface. The router waits this period to check whether another downstream router corrects the Prune message. In the PIM-SM specification, this timer is named (S,G) Prune-Pending Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0.
Expiry Timer	Displays the remaining time until the (S,G) Join State becomes invalid for this interface. In the PIM-SM specification, this timer is named (S,G) Join Expiry Timer . If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0. The value 'FFFFFFFF'h stands for infinite. In the PIM-DM specification, this timer is named (S,G) Prune Timer.
Assert State	Displays the (S,G) Assert State for this interface. This corresponds to the status of the Per-Interface (S,G) Assert State Machine in der PIM-SM Specification See "I-D.ietf-pim-sm-v2-new section 4.6.1"
Assert Winner IP Address	Indicates the address of Assert Winner, if pimStarGIAssertState runs 'iAmAssertLoser. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimSGIAssertWinnerAddressType.

Values in the (S,G,RPT) States list

Field	Description
Multicast Group Address	Displays the multicast IP address. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimSGAddressType.
Source IP Address	Displays the source IP address. InetAddressType is defined through the object pimStarGAddressType.
Interface	Displays the name of the interface.
Uptime	Indicates the timespan since the entry was generated by the local router.
Join/Prune State	Indicates whether the local router should sever the source of the RP tree. This corresponds in the PIM-SM specification to the status of the Upstream (S,G,rpt) State Machine for Triggered Messages.
Expiry Timer	Displays the remaining time until the (S,G, rpt) Prune State becomes invalid for this interface. In the PIM-SM specification, this timer is named (S,G, rpt) Prune Expiry Timer. If the timer is deactivated, it has the value 0. The value 'FFFFFFFF'h stands for infinite. In the PIM-DM specification, this timer is named (S,G) Prune Timer.

Glossary

10 Base 2	Thin Ethernet connection. Network connection for 10-mbps networks with BNC connector. T-connectors are used for the connection of equipment with BNC sockets.
100Base-T	Twisted pair connection, Fast Ethernet. Network connection for 100-mbps networks.
10Base-T	Twisted pair connection. Network connection for 10-mbps networks with RJ45 connector.
1TR6	D channel protocol used in the German ISDN. Today the more common protocol is DSS1.
3DES (Triple DES)	See DES.
802.11a/g	Specified data rates of 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9 and 6 mbps and a working frequency in the range of 5 GHz (for IEEE802.11a) or 2.4 GHz (for IEEE802.11g). IEEE802.11 g can be configured to run in compliance with 11b or 11b and 11 as well.
802.11b/g	One of the IEEE standards for wireless network hardware. Products that meet the same IEEE standard can communicate with each other, even if they come from different hardware manufacturers. The IEEE802.11b standard specifies the data rates of 1, 2, 5.5 and 11 mbps, a working frequency in the range of 2.4 to 2.4835 GHz and WEP encryption. IEEE802.11 wireless networks are also known as Wi-Fi networks.
A-subscriber	The A-subscriber is the caller.
a/b interface	For connection of an analogue terminal. In the case of an ISDN terminal (terminal adapter) with a/b interface, the connected analogue terminal is able to use the supported T-ISDN performance features.
AAA	Authentication, Authorisation, Accounting
Access code	PIN or password
Access list	A rule that defines a set of packets that should or should not be transmitted by the device.
Access point	An active component of a network consisting of wireless parts and optionally also of wired parts. Several WLAN clients (terminals) can log in to an access point (AP) and communicate via the AP data. If

	the optional wired Ethernet is connected, the signals between the two physical media, the wireless interface and wired interface, are bridged (bridging).
Access protection	Filters can be used to prevent external persons from accessing the data on the computers in your LAN. These filters are a basic function of a firewall.
Accounting	Recording of connection data, e.g. date, time, connection duration, charging information and number of data packets transferred.
Active probing	Active probing takes advantage of the fact that as standard, access points are to respond to client requests. Clients therefore send "probe requests" on all channels and wait for responses from an access point in the vicinity. The response packet then contains the SSID of the wireless LAN and information on whether WEP encryption is used.
Ad hoc network	An ad hoc network refers to a number of computers that form an independent 802.11 WLAN each with a wireless adapter. Ad hoc networks work independently without an access point on a peer-to-peer basis. Ad hoc mode is also known as IBSS mode (Independent Basic Service Set) and makes sense for the smallest networks, e.g. if two notebooks are to be linked to each other without an access point.
ADSL	Asymmetric digital subscriber line
AH	Authentication header
Alphanumeric display	Display unit e.g. for T-Concept PX722 system telephone, able to display letters and other characters as well as digits.
Analogue connections	For the connection of analogue terminals such as telephone, fax and answering machine.
Analogue terminals	Terminals that transmit voice and other information analogously, e.g. telephone, fax machine, answering machine and modem.
Analogue voice transmission	To transmit voice via the telephone, acoustic oscillations are converted to continuous electrical signals, which are transmitted via a network of lines (digital voice transmission).
Announcement	If you want to call your employees or family members to a meeting or the dinner table, you could call each one of them individually or simply use the announcement function. With just one call, you reach all the announcement-enabled telephones without the subscribers

	having to pick up the receiver.
Announcement function	Performance feature of a PBX. On suitable telephones (e.g. system telephones), announcements can be made as on an intercom.
Answering machine	You configure an analogue answering machine under "Terminal Type".
AOC-D	Display during and at end of connection.
AOC-D/E	Advice of charge-during/end.
AOC-E	Display only at end of connection.
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
Assignment	An external call can be signalled to internal subscribers. The entries in the "Day" option and "Night" option can be different.
Asynchronous	A method of data transmission in which the time intervals between transmitted characters can vary in length. This allows computers and peripheral devices to intercommunicate without being synchronised by clock signals. The beginning and end of the transmitted characters must be marked by start and stop bits – in contrast to synchronous transmission.
ATM	Asynchronous transfer mode
Attention tone	Superimposing of an acoustic signal during a telephone call e.g. for call waiting.
Authentication	Check on the user's identify.
Authorisation	Based on the identity (authentication), the user can access certain services and resources.
Auto Attendant	A system that forwards incoming calls.
Automatic callback	Special feature on telephones: By pressing a key or code, the caller requests a call back from the engaged terminal. If the subscriber you want is not at their desk or cannot take the call, they are automatically connected with the caller as soon as they have used the telephone again and replaced the receiver.
Automatic callback on busy	This function can only be used on telephones that permit suffix dialling. An automatic callback from an inquiry connection is not possible.

Automatic callback on busy (CCBS)	You urgently need to contact a business partner or internal subscriber. However, when you call, you always hear the engaged tone. If you were to receive notification that the subscriber had ended the call, your chance of reaching them would be very good. With "Callback on Busy" you can reach the engaged subscriber once they have replaced the receiver at the end of the call. Your telephone rings. When you lift the receiver, a connection to the required subscriber is set up automatically. An internal "Callback on Busy" is deleted automatically after 30 minutes. The external "Callback on Busy" is deleted after a period specified by the exchange (approx. 45 minutes). Manual deletion before this period has elapsed is also possible.
Automatic callback on no reply (CCBS)	You urgently need to contact a business partner or internal subscriber. When you call them, you always hear the ringing tone, but your business partner is not close to the telephone and does not pick up. With "Callback on no reply", you can reach the subscriber as soon as they have completed a call or lifted and replaced the receiver of their telephone. Your telephone rings. When you lift the receiver, a connection to the required subscriber is established automatically.
Automatic clearing of Internet connection (ShortHold)	You can activate ShortHold. When you do so, you define the time after which an existing connection is cleared if data transfer is no longer taking place. If you enter a time of 0, ShortHold is deactivated.
Automatic outside line	After the receiver of a telephone is lifted, the telephone number of the external subscriber can be dialled immediately.
Automatic redialling	Performance feature of a terminal. If the line is busy, several redial attempts are made.
B channel	Corresponds to a telephone line in T-Net. In T-ISDN, the basic connection contains two B channels, each with a data transmission rate of 64 kbps.
B channel	Bearer channel of an ISDN Basic Rate Interface or a Primary Rate Interface for the transmission of traffic (voice, data). An ISDN Basic Rate Interface consists of two B channels and one D channel. A B channel has a data transmission rate of 64 kbps. The data transmission rate of an ISDN Basic Rate Interface with your gateway can be increased to up to 128 kbps using channel bundling.
BACP/BAP	Bandwidth Allocation Control Protocols (BACP/BAP in accordance with RFC 2125)

Base station	Central unit of wireless telephone devices. There are two different types: The simple base station is used to charge the handheld unit. For special-feature telephones, the base station can also be used as a telephone, the handheld unit is charged using separate charging stations.
Basic Rate Interface	ISDN connection that includes two basic channels (B channels) each with 64 kbps and one control and signalling channel (D channel) with 16 kbps. The two basic channels can be used independently of each other for each service offered in the T-ISDN. You can therefore telephone and fax at the same time. T-Com offers the Basic Rate Interface as a point-to-multipoint or point-to-point connection.
Bit	Binary digit. Smallest unit of information in computer technology. Signals are represented in the logical states "0" and "1".
Blacklist (dialling ranges)	You can define a restriction on external dialling for individual subscribers. The telephone numbers entered in the blacklist table cannot be called by the terminals subject to dialling control, e.g. entry 0190 would block all connections to expensive service providers.
Block Cipher Modes	Block-based encryption algorithm
Blowfish	An algorithm developed by Bruce Schneier. It relates to a block cipher with a block size of 64 bit and a key of variable length (up to 448 bits).
Bluetooth	Bluetooth is a wireless transfer technology that can connect up different devices. Bluetooth replaces cables to connect various devices e.g. Notebook, PC, PDA, etc. Thanks to Bluetooth, these devices can exchange data with each other without a fixed connection. For example, PCs, notebooks or a PDA can access the Internet or a local network. The appointments on a PDA can be synchronised with the appointments on the PC without the need for a cable connection. Because of the many different application areas for the Bluetooth technology, the different types of connections between the devices are divided into profiles. A profile determines the service (function) that the individual Bluetooth clients can use among each other.
BOD	Bandwidth on Demand
BootP	Bootstrap protocol
Bps	Bits per second. A unit of measure for the transmission rate.

Break-in	In a PBX, the option of breaking in to an existing call. This is signalled acoustically by an attention tone.
BRI	Basic Rate Interface
Bridge	Network component for connecting homogeneous networks. As opposed to a gateway, bridges operate at layer 2 of the OSI model, are independent of higher-level protocols and transmit data packets using MAC addresses. Data transmission is transparent, which means the information contained in the data packets is not interpreted.
Broadcast	Broadcasts (data packages) are sent to all devices in a network in order to exchange information. Generally, there is a certain address (broadcast address) in the network that allows all devices to interpret a message as a broadcast.
Brokering	Brokering makes it possible to switch between two external or internal subscribers without the waiting subscriber being able to hear the other conversation.
Browser	Program for displaying content on the Internet or World Wide Web.
Bundle	The external connections of larger PBXs can be grouped into bundles. When an external call is initiated by the exchange code or in the event of automatic external line access a bundle released for this subscriber is used to establish the connection. If a subscriber has authorisation for several bundles, the connection is established using the first released bundle. If one bundle is occupied, the next released bundle is used. If all the released bundles are occupied, the subscriber hears the engaged tone.
Bus	A data transmission medium for use by all the devices connected to a network. Data is forwarded over the entire bus and received by all devices on the bus.
Busy On Busy	Call to engaged team subscriber. If one subscriber in a team has taken the receiver off the hook or is on the telephone, you can decide whether other calls are to be signalled for this team. The setting for reaching a subscriber can be toggled between "Standard" and "Busy On Busy". In the basic configuration, it is set to Standard. If Busy on Busy is set for a team, other callers hear the engaged tone.
CA	Certificate Authority
Calendar	By allocating a calendar, you switch between Day and Night call as-

signment. For each day of the week, you can select any day/night switching time. A calendar has four switch times, which can be specifically assigned to each individual day of the week.

Call allocation

In a PBX, calls can be assigned to certain terminals.

Call costs account

You can set up a "call costs account" for a subscriber here. The maximum available number of units, in the form of a limit, can be assigned to each subscriber on their personal "call costs account". The "cost limit" is to be activated so that units can be booked. Once the units have been used up, no further external calls are possible. Internal calls can still be made at any time. The units are booked to the account each time a call is ended.

Call diversion

Also known as call forwarding. An incoming call is diverted to a specified telephone, Internet or wireless connection.

Call filter

Performance feature e.g. of the T-Concept PX722 system telephone, special-feature telephones or answering machines. The call is only signalled in the case of certain previously defined telephone numbers.

Call forwarding in the exchange

You can only use the options of call forwarding in the exchange via the keypad if certain services are activated for your connection. You can receive more information on this from your T-Com advisor. The exchange connects the calling subscriber with an external subscriber you have specified.

Call forwarding in the PBX

The call forwarding (CF) performance feature of the PBX enables you to be reached even if you are not in the vicinity of your telephone. You achieve this by automatically forwarding your calls to the required internal or external telephone number. You can use the configuration program to define whether call forwarding should be carried out in the PBX or the exchange. You should use call forwarding in the exchange if certain services are activated for your connection. You can receive more information on this from your T-Com advisor.

Call option day/night Option of changing the call allocation on a PBX using a calendar. Calls received after office hours are forwarded to a telephone still manned, or to the answering machine or fax.

Call pickup

Performance feature of a PBX. Calls can be received on an internal terminal that is not part of active call allocation.

Call pickup

An external call is only signalled for your colleague. As you belong

	to several different teams, this is not surprising. You can now form various groups of subscribers in which call pickup is possible. A call can only be picked up by subscribers/terminals in the same pickup group. The assignment of subscribers in pickup groups is not dependent on the settings in the Day and Night team call assignment.
Call Relay on Busy	Reject
Call Through	Call Through is a dial-in via an external connection to the PBX with the call put through from the PBX via another external connection.
Call to engaged subscriber	Busy on busy
Call waiting	The "Call Waiting" performance feature means that other people can contact you during a telephone call. If another subscriber calls while you are on the telephone, you hear your telephone's call waiting tone. You can then decide whether to continue with your first call or speak to the person whose call is waiting.
Call waiting protection	If you do not want to use the call waiting feature, you switch on call waiting protection. If you are taking a call, a second caller hears the engaged tone.
Callback on Busy	Performance feature in T-ISDN, PBXs and T-Net. A connection is set up automatically as soon as the Busy status on the destination connection ends. When the connection is free, this is signalled to the caller. As soon as the caller lifts the receiver, the connection is set up automatically. However, Callback must first be activated by the caller on his or her terminal.
Callback on no reply	You call a subscriber, who does not pick up. With "Callback on no reply", this is not a problem for you, because with this special feature, you can set up the connection without having to redial. If you are not on the telephone yourself, a new connection with the subscriber is set up - for a maximum of 180 minutes.
Called party number	Number of the terminal called.
Caller list	Special-feature telephones such as the T-Concept PX722 system telephone enable call requests to be stored during absence.
Calling party number	Number of the calling terminal.
CAPI	Common ISDN Application Programming Interface
CAST	A 128-bit encryption algorithm with similar functionality to DES. See

	Block Cipher Modes.
CBC	Cipher Block Chaining
CCITT	Consultative Committee for International Telegraphy and Telephony
CD (Call Deflection)	The forwarding of calls. This performance feature enables you to forward a call without having to take it yourself. If you forward a call to an external subscriber, you bear any connection costs from your connection to the destination of the forwarded call. This feature can therefore be used by system telephones and ISDN telephones that support this function (see user's guide for terminals). For more information on using this performance feature with the telephone, please see the user's guide.
Central speeddial memory	Performance feature of a PBX. Telephone numbers are stored in a PBX and can be called from every connected telephone using a key combination.
Certificate	Certificate
Channel Bundling	Channel bundling
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
Checksum field	Frame Check Sequence (FCS)
CLID	Calling Line Identification
Client	A client uses the services provided by a server. Clients are usually workstations.
CLIP	Abbreviation for Calling Line Identification Presentation. Telephone number display of calling party.
CLIR	Abbreviation for Calling Line Identification Restriction. Temporary suppression of the transmission of the calling party's telephone number.
COLR	Connected Line Identification Restriction (suppress B telephone number). This performance feature permits or suppresses the display of the called subscriber's telephone number. If display of the B telephone number is suppressed, your telephone number is not transmitted to the caller when you take a call. Example: You have set up call diversion to another terminal. If this terminal has activated suppression of the B telephone number, the calling party does not see a telephone number on the terminal display.

Combination device	If an analogue terminal connection of the PBX is set up as a "multi-functional port" for combination devices, all calls are received, regardless of the service. In the case of trunk prefixes using codes, the service ID "Analogue Telephony" or "Telefax Group 3" can also be transmitted, regardless of the configuration of the analogue connection. If 0 is dialled, the service ID "Analogue Telephony" is also transmitted.
Conference call	Performance feature of a PBX: Several internal subscribers can telephone simultaneously. Three-party conferences are also possible with external subscribers.
Configuration Manager	Windows application (similar to the Windows Explorer), which uses SNMP commands to request and carry out the settings of your gateway. The application was called the DIME Browser before BRICKware version 5.1.3.
Configuration of the PBX with the PC	One important prerequisite for the transfer of your configuration to the PBX is that you have set up a connection between the PC and PBX. You can do this using the LAN Ethernet connection.
Configuration of the PBX with the telephone	With some restrictions, you can also program your PBX using the telephone. For information on programming your PBX using the telephone, please see the accompanying user's guide.
Connection of analogue terminals	The performance features for analogue terminals can only be used with terminals that use the MFC dialling method and that have an R or flash key.
Connection of ISDN terminals	The internal telephone number of the connection, and not the external number (multiple subscriber number) must be entered as the MSN in the ISDN terminal connected to the internal ISDN bus. See the user's guide for the ISDN terminals: Enter MSN. Please note that not all the ISDN terminals available on the market can use the performance features provided by the PBX via their key interface.
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
CTI	Computer Telephony Integration. Term for connection between a PBX and server. CTI enables PBX functions to be controlled and evaluated by a PC.
D channel	Control and signalling channel of an ISDN Basic Rate Interface or Primary Rate Interface. The D channel has a data transmission rate of 16 kbps. In addition to the D channel, each ISDN BRI has two B channels.

Data compression	A process for reducing the amount of data transmitted. This enables higher throughput to be achieved in the same transmission time. Examples of this technique include STAC, VJHC and MPPC.
Data Link Layer	(DLL)
Data packet	A data packet is used for information transfer. Each data packet contains a prescribed number of characters (information and control characters).
Data transmission rate	The data transmission rate specifies the number of information units for each time interval transferred between sender and recipient.
Datagram	A self-contained data packet that is forwarded in the network with minimum protocol overhead and without an acknowledgement mechanism.
Datex-J	Abbreviation for Data Exchange Jedermann, the T-Online access platform. Local dial-in node in every local network. Some German cities offer additional high-speed access over T-Net/T-Net-ISDN.
Day/Night option	If you want to transfer important calls made after office hours to your home office to an answering machine, so that you are not disturbed, you can use call assignment. You can allocate each subscriber two different call allocations (call assignment Day and call assignment Night). With call assignments, it is also possible to forward the call to an external subscriber, so that you can be contacted at all times. With call assignment Day/Night, therefore, you define which internal terminals are to ring in the event of an external call. Call assignment Day/Night is achieved using a table in which all the incoming calls are assigned to internal subscribers.
Day/Night/Calendar	You define switching of call variant Day/Night.
DCE	Data Circuit-Terminating Equipment
DCN	Data communications network
DECT	Digital European Cordless Telecommunication. European standard for wireless telephones and wireless PBXs. Internal calls can be made free of charge between several handheld units. Another advantage is the higher degree of interception protection (GAP).
Default gateway	Describes the address of the gateway to which all traffic not destined for its own network is sent.
Denial-Of-Service At-	A Denial-of-Service (DoS) attack is an attempt to flood a gateway or

tack	host in a LAN with fake requests so that it is completely overloaded. This means the system or a certain service can no longer be run.
DES	Data Encryption Standard
Destination number memory	Speeddial memory
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
Dial preparation	On some telephones with a display, you can first enter a telephone, check it first, and then dial it.
Dial-in parameters	Define the dial-in parameters i.e. you enter the provider's dial-in number and specify:
Dialling control	In the configuration for certain terminals, you can define restrictions for external dialling.
Dialup connection	A connection is set up when required by dialling an extension number, in contrast to a leased line.
Digital exchange	Allows computer-controlled crossbar switches to set up a connection quickly, and special features such as inquiries, call waiting, three-party conference and call forwarding to be activated. All T-Com exchanges have been digital since January 1998.
Digital voice transmission	As a result of the internationally standardised Pulse Code Modulation (PCM), analogue voice signals are converted to a digital pulse flow of 64 kbps. Advantages: Better voice quality and less susceptibility to faults during analogue voice transmission.
DIME	Desktop Internetworking Management Environment
DIME Browser	Old name for Configuration Manager.
Direct Call	You are not at home. However, there is someone at home who needs to be able to reach you quickly and easily by telephone if necessary (e.g. children or grandparents). As you can set up the Direct Call function for one or more telephones, the receiver of the telephone simply needs to be lifted. After five seconds, the PBX automatically calls the defined direct call number, if you do not start dialling another number first. You can enter up to 12 destination numbers when you configure Direct Call. A direct call number can only be used by one subscriber. If you want to change an entered direct call number, you can simply enter the new direct call number without having to delete the old direct call number. The old number is auto-

	atically overwritten when the new configuration is transferred to the PBX.
Direct dial-in	Performance feature of larger PBXs at the point-to-point connection: The extensions can be called directly from outside.
Direct dialling range	See Extension numbers range
DISA	Direct Inward System Access
Display and output of connection data	In the configuration, it is possible to define storage of data records for specific terminals or all terminals. In the ex works setting, all incoming external connections and all external calls you make are stored.
Display of caller's number	A suitable telephone is a prerequisite for this feature. Transmission of the telephone number must be permitted by the caller.
DLCI	In a Frame Relay network, a DLCI uniquely describes a virtual connection. Note that a DLCI is only relevant for the local end of the point-to-point connection.
DMZ	Demilitarised Zone
DNS	Domain Name System
Do not disturb	Station guarding
DOI	Domain of Interpretation
Domain	A domain refers to a logical group of devices in a network. On the Internet, this is part of a naming hierarchy (e.g. bintec.de).
Door intercom	Door intercom device. It can be connected to various PBXs. A telephone can be used to take an intercom call and open the door.
Door intercom on analogue connection	An analogue connection can be set up for connected of function module M06 to connect a DoorLine intercom system.
Door terminal adapter	The function module can be installed on an analogue connection of your PBX. If a door intercom (DoorLine) is connected to your PBX via a function module, you can speak with a visitor at the door via every authorised telephone. You can assign particular telephones to each ring button. These phones then ring if the ring button is pressed. On analogue telephones, the signal on the telephone matches the intercom call. In place of the internal telephones, an external telephone can also be configured as the call destination for

	the ring button. Your door intercom can have up to 4 ring buttons. The door opener can be pressed during an intercom call. It is not possible activate the door opener if an intercom call is not taking place.
Dotted Decimal Notation	The syntactic representation of a 32-bit whole number, written in four 8-bit numbers in decimal form and subdivided by a point. It is used to represent IP addresses on the Internet, e.g. 192.67.67.20
Download	Data transfer during online connections, where files are "loaded" from a PC or data network server to the user's own PC, PBX or terminal, so that they can be used there.
Downstream	Data transmission rate from the ISP to the customer.
DSA (DSS)	Digital Signature Algorithm (Digital Signature Standard).
DSL and ISDN connections	Data is transferred between the Internet and your PBX over ISDN or T-DSL. The PBX determines the remote terminal to which a data packet is to be sent. For a connection to be selected and set up, parameters must be defined for all the required connections. These parameters are stored in lists which together permit the right connection to be set up. The PBX uses the PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol) for ISDN access, and PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) for access over T-DSL. The traffic on these two Internet connections is monitored separately by the PBX.
DSL modem	Special modem for data transmission using DSL access technology.
DSL splitter	A DSL splitter is a device that splits the data or frequencies of various applications that run via a subscriber line or distribution point, and provides this via separate connections.
DSL/xDSL	Digital Subscriber Line
DSS1	Digital Subscriber Signalling System
DSSS	Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum is a wireless technology that was originally developed for the military and offers a high level of protection against faults because the wanted signal is spread over a wide area. The signal is spread by means of a spread sequence or chipping code consisting of 11 chips across 22 MHz. Even if there is a fault on one or more of the chips during transfer, the information can still be obtained reliably from the remaining chips.
DTE	Data Terminal Equipment

DTMF	Dual Tone Multi Frequency (tone dialling system)
Dynamic IP address	In contrast to a static IP address, a dynamic IP address is assigned temporarily by DHCP. Network components such as the web server or printer usually have static IP address, while clients such as notebooks or workstations usually have dynamic IP addresses.
E1/T1	E1: European variant of the 2.048 mbps ISDN Primary Rate Interface, which is also called the E1 system.
ECB	Electronic Code Book mode
ECT	Explicit Call Transfer. This performance feature allows two external connections to be transferred without blocking the two B channels of the exchange connection.
Email	Electronic mail
Emergency numbers	You urgently need to contact the police, fire brigade or another telephone number. To make things worse, all the connections are busy. However, you have informed your PBX of the telephone numbers that need to be contactable in an emergency. If you now dial one of these numbers, it is recognised by the PBX and a B channel of the T-ISDN is automatically freed up for your emergency call. Emergency calls are not subject to configuration restrictions. If "Calling with prefix plus code number" is set for a connection, the internal connection is busy. To make an external call, first dial 0 and then the required emergency number.
Encapsulation	Encapsulation of data packets in a certain protocol for transmitting the packets over a network that the original protocol does not directly support (e.g. NetBIOS over TCP/IP).
Encryption	Refers to the encryption of data, e.g. MPPE.
Entry of external connection data	In the ex works setting, all external connections made and received via your PBX are recorded and stored in the form of connection data records.
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
ESS	The Extended Service Set describes several BSS (several access points) that form a single, logical wireless network.
Ethernet	A local network that connects all devices in the network (PC, printers, etc.) via a twisted pair or coaxial cable.

Ethernet connections	The 4 connections are led equally through an internal switch. Network clients can be directly connected to the connection sockets. The ports are designed as 100/BaseT full-duplex, autosensing, auto MDIX upwardly compatible to 10/Base T. Up to 4 SIP telephones or IP softclients with SIP standard can be directly connected to PCs with a network card.
Eumex Recovery	If the power supply to the PBX cuts out while new firmware is being loaded, the PBX functions are deleted.
Euro ISDN	Harmonised ISDN standardised within Europe, based on signalling protocol DSS1, the introduction of which network operators in over 20 European countries have committed to. Euro-ISDN has been introduced in Germany, replacing the previous national system 1 TR6.
Eurofile transfer	Communication protocol for the exchange of files between two PCs over ISDN using an ISDN card (file transfer) or telephones or PBXs configured for this.
Exchange	Node in the public telecommunication network. We differentiate between local exchanges and remote exchanges.
Exchange access right	PBXs differentiate between the following "exchange access rights". These can be set up differently for each subscriber in the configuration.
Extended redialling	A selected telephone number is "parked" in the telephone's memory. It can be redialled later, even if you have called other numbers in the meantime.
Extension	For PBXs, describes the terminal (e.g. telephone) connected to the exchange. Each extension can access PBX services and communicate with other extensions.
Extension number	An extension is an internal number for a terminal or subsystem. In point-to-point ISDN accesses, the extension is usually a number from the extension numbers range assigned by the telephone provider. In point-to-multipoint connections, it can be the MSN or a part of the MSN.
Extension numbers range	(direct dialling range)
Fall Back: Priority of the Internet provider entries	The priority of the Internet provider entries is defined by the sequence in which they are entered in the list. The first entry of a DSL connection is the standard access. If a connection cannot be set up

via the standard access after a predefined number of attempts, setup is attempted using the second entry then subsequent entries. If the final entry in the list does not enable a connection to be set up successfully, the operation is terminated until a new request is made. When fall back occurs and all other ISPs can only be reached by dialup connections, both B channels may be occupied. If channel bundling is used, you cannot be reached for the duration of this connection.

Fax	Abbreviation of telefax.
FHSS, Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum	In a FHSS system, the frequency spread is achieved through constantly changing frequencies based on certain hopping patterns. In contrast to DSSS systems, hopping patterns are configured, not the frequency. The frequency changes very frequently in one second.
File transfer	Data transmission from one computer to another, e.g. based on the Eurofile transfer standard.
Filter	A filter comprises a number of criteria (e.g. protocol, port number, source and destination address). These criteria can be used to select a packet from the traffic flow. Such a packet can then be handled in a specific way. For this purpose, a certain action is associated with the filter, which creates a filter rule.
Firewall	Describes the whole range of mechanisms to protect the local network against external access. Your gateway provides protection mechanisms such as NAT, CLID, PAP/CHAP, access lists, etc.
Firmware	Software code containing all a device's functions. This code is written to a PROM (programmable read only memory) and is retained there, even after the device is switched off. Firmware can be updated by the user when a new software version is available (firmware upgrade).
First-level domain	Describes the last part of a name on the Internet. For www.t-com.de, the first-level domain is de and in this case stands for Germany.
Flash key	The flash key on a telephone is the R button. R stands for Rückfrage (inquiry). The key interrupts the line briefly to start certain functions such as inquiries via the PBX.
Follow-me	Performance feature of a PBX for diverting calls on the destination telephone.

Fragmentation	Process by which an IP datagram is divided into small parts in order to meet the requirements of a physical network. The reverse process is known as reassembly.
Frame	Unit of information sent via a data connection.
Frame relay	A packet switching method that contains smaller packets and fewer error checks than traditional packet switching methods such as X.25. Because of its properties, frame relay is used for fast WAN connections with a high density of traffic.
Freecall	Telephone number. Previous service 0130. These telephone numbers have been switched to freecall 0800 since January 1, 1998.
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
Full duplex	Operating mode in which both communication partners can communicate bidirectionally at the same time.
Function keys	Keys on the telephone that can be assigned telephone numbers or network functions.
G.991.1	Data transmission recommendation for HDSL
G.991.2	Data transmission recommendation for SHDSL
G.992.1	Data transmission recommendation for ADSL. See also G.992.1 Annex A and G.992.1 Annex B.
G.992.1 Annex A	Data transmission recommendation for ADSL: ITU-T G.992.1 Annex A
G.992.1 Annex B	Data transmission recommendation for ADSL: ITU-T G.992.1 Annex B
G.SHDSL	See G.991.2.
Gateway	Entrance and exit, transition point
Half duplex	Bidirectional communication method in which it is only possible to either send or receive at a particular point in time. Also known as Simplex.
Handheld unit	Mobile component of wireless telephone units. In the event of digital transmission, it is also possible to make telephone calls between the handheld units (DECT).
Hands free	If the telephone has a microphone and speaker installed, you can

	conduct a call without using your hands. As a result, other people in the room can also participate in the call.
Hashing	The process of deriving a number (hash) from a character string. A hash is generally far shorter than the text flow it was derived from. The hashing algorithm is designed so that there is a relatively low probability of generating a hash that is the same as another hash generated from a text sequence with a different meaning. Encryption methods use hashing to make sure that intruders cannot change transmitted messages.
HDLC	High Level Data Link Control
HDSL	High Bit Rate DSL
HDSL2	High Bit Rate DSL, version 2
Headset	Combination of headphones and microphone as a useful aid for anyone who makes a lot of telephone calls and wants to keep hands free for making notes.
HMAC	Hashed Message Authentication Code
HMAC-MD5	Hashed Message Authentication Code - uses Message Digest Algorithm Version 5.
HMAC-SHA1	Hashed Message Authentication Code - uses Secure Hash Algorithm Version 1.
Holding a call	A telephone call is put on hold without breaking the connection (inquiry/brokering).
Holding in the PBX	Both B channels of the ISDN connection are needed for the performance features "Call another person during a call" and "Speak alternately with two people" (brokering). As a result, you cannot be reached from outside or make external calls via your PBX's second B channel. With this setting, an external caller put on hold hears the PBX's on-hold music.
Hook flash	The use of the inquiry, brokerage and three-party conference special features in T-Net and certain performance features of some PBXs is only possible with the hook flash function (long flash) of the signal key on the telephone. On modern telephones, this key is indicated with an "R".
Host name	A name used in IP networks instead of the corresponding address. A host name consists of an ASCII string that uniquely identifies the

	host computer.
HTTP	HyperText Transfer Protocol
Hub	Network component used to connect several network components together to form a local network (star-shaped).
IAE	ISDN connection unit, ISDN connection socket.
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
ICV	Integrity Check Value
Identify malicious callers (intercept)	You have to request this performance feature from T-Com. The company will provide you with further information on the procedure. If you enter code 77 during a call or after the caller has ended a call (you hear the engaged tone from the exchange), the caller's telephone number is stored in the exchange. ISDN telephones can also use separate functions for this performance feature. For more information on this function, please see your user's guide.
IEEE	The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). A large, global association of engineers, which continuously works on standards in order to ensure different devices can work together.
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
Index	The index from 0...9 is fixed. Every external multiple subscriber number entered is assigned to an index. You need this index when configuring performance features using the telephone's codes, e.g. configuring "Call forwarding in the exchange" or "Define telephone number for the next external call".
Infrastructure mode	A network in infrastructure mode is a network that contains at least one access point as the central point of communication and control. In a network in infrastructure mode, all clients communicate with each other via access points only. There is no direct communication between the individual clients. A network of this kind is also known as a BSS (basic service set), and a network that consists of several BSS is known as an ESS (extended service set). Most wireless networks operate in infrastructure mode to establish a connection with the wired network.
Inquiry	Makes it possible to put the first call on hold in the event of a call waiting and take a new call.
Internal call tone	Special signal on a PBX to differentiate between internal and extern-

	al calls.
Internal calls	Free-of-charge connection between terminals in a PBX.
Internal telephone numbers	Your PBX has a fixed internal telephone number plan.
Internet	The Internet consists of a number of regional, local and university networks. The IP protocol is used for data transmission on the Internet.
Internet time sharing	Allows several users to surf the Internet simultaneously over an ISDN connection. The information is requested by the individual computers with a time delay.
Intranet	Local computer network within a company based on Internet technology providing the same Internet services, e.g. homepages and sending email.
IP	Internet Protocol
IP Address	The first part of the address by which a device is identified in an IP network, e.g. 192.168.1.254. See also netmask.
IPComP	IP payload compression
IPCONFIG	A tool used on Windows computers to check or change its own IP settings.
IPoA	IP over ATM
ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network
ISDN address	The address of an ISDN device that consists of an ISDN number followed by further numbers that relate to a specific terminal, e.g. 47117.
ISDN Basic Rate Interface	ISDN subscriber connection. The Basic Rate Interface consists of two B channels and one D channel. In addition to the Basic Rate Interface, there is the Primary Rate Interface. The interface to the subscriber is provided by an So bus.
ISDN card	Adapter for connecting a PC to the ISDN Basic Rate Interface. From a technical perspective, we differentiate between active and passive cards. Active ISDN cards have their own processor, which handles communication operations independently of the PC processor and therefore does not require any resources. A passive ISDN card, on

	the other hand, uses the PC's resources.
ISDN Login	Function of your gateway. Your gateway can be configured and administrated remotely using ISDN Login. ISDN Login operates on gateways in the ex works state as soon they are connected to an ISDN connection and therefore reachable via an extension number.
ISDN number	The network address of the ISDN interface, e.g. 4711.
ISDN router	A router that does not have network connections but provides the same functions between PC, ISDN and the Internet.
ISDN-BRI	ISDN Basic Rate Interface
ISDN-Dynamic	This performance feature requires the installation of the T-ISDN Speedmanager. If you are surfing the Internet and use two B channels for downloading, you cannot be reached by telephone from outside. As a further call is signalled over the D channel, your PBX can, depending on the setting, specifically shut down a B channel so that you can take the call.
ISDN-Internal/External	Alternative name for the So bus.
ISDN-PRI	ISDN Primary Rate Interface
ISO	International Standardization Organization
ISP	Internet Service Provider
ITU	International Telecommunication Union
Key Escrow	Stored keys can be viewed by the government. The US government, in particular, requires key storages to prevent crimes being covered up through data encryption.
LAN	Local Area Network
LAPB	Link Access Procedure Balanced
Last access	The last access by T-Service is stored and displayed in the configuration.
Layer 1	Layer 1 of the ISO OSI Model, the bit transfer layer.
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display, a screen in which special liquid crystal is used to display information.

LCP	Link Control Protocol
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
Lease Time	The "Lease Time" is the time a computer keeps the IP address assigned to it without having to "talk" to the DHCP server.
Leased Line	Leased line
LLC	Link Layer Control
Local exchange	Switching node of a public local telephone network that supports the connection of end systems.
Loudspeaker	Function on telephones with an integrated loudspeaker: You can press a button so that the people present in the room can also hear the telephone call.
MAC Address	Every device in the network is defined by a fixed hardware address (MAC address). The network card of a device defines this internationally unique address.
Man-in-the-Middle Attack	Encryption using public keys requires the public keys to be exchanged first. During this exchange, the unprotected keys can be intercepted easily, making a "man-in-the-middle" attack possible. The attacker can set a key at an early stage so that a key known to the "man-in-the-middle" is used instead of the intended key from the real communication partner.
MD5	See HMAC-MD5
MFC	Multifrequency code dialling method
MIB	Management Information Base
Microphone mute	Switch for turning off the microphone. The subscriber on the telephone cannot hear the discussions in the room.
Mixed mode	The access point accepts WPA and WPA2.
MLPPP	Multilink PPP
Modem	Modulator/Demodulator
MPDU	MAC Protocol Data Unit - every information packet exchanged on the wireless medium includes management frames and fragmented MSDUs.

MPPC	Microsoft Point-to-Point Compression
MPPE	Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption
MSDU	MAC Service Data Unit - a data packet that ignores fragmentation in the WLAN.
MSN	Multiple subscriber number
MSSID	See SSID
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
Multicast	A specific form of broadcast in which a message is simultaneously transmitted to a defined user group.
Multiple subscriber number	Multiple subscriber number
Multiprotocol gateway	A gateway that can route several protocols, e.g. IP, X.25, etc.
Music on hold (MoH)	Your PBX has two internal music-on-hold melodies. On delivery, internal melody 1 is active. You can choose between melody 1 or 2, or deactivate the music on hold.
Music on hold (MoH)	Performance feature of a PBX. During an inquiry or call forwarding, a melody is played that the waiting subscriber hears. On your PBX, you can choose between two internal melodies.
MWI	Transmission of a voice message from a mailbox e.g. T-NetBox or MailBox to a terminal. The receipt of the message on the terminal is signalled e.g. by a LED.
NAT	Network Address Translation
NDIS WAN	NDIS WAN is a Microsoft enhancement of this standards in relation to wide area networking (WAN). The NDIS WAN CAPI driver permits the use of the ISDN controller as a WAN card. The NDIS WAN driver enables the use of a DCN network on Windows. NDIS is the abbreviation for Network Device Interface Specification and is a standard for the connection of network cards (hardware) to network protocols (software).
Net surfing	A "journey of discovery" for interesting information in wide-ranging data networks such as T-Online. Known mainly from the Internet.

NetBIOS	Network Basic Input Output System
Netmask	The second part of an address in an IP network, used for identification of a device, e.g. 255.255.255.0. See also IP address.
Network	Your PBX has a DSL router so that one or more PCs can surf the Internet and download information.
Network address	A network address designates the address of a complete local network.
Network termination (NTBA)	In telecommunications, the network termination is the point at which access to a communication network is provided to the terminal.
Netz-Direkt (keypad functions)	You can use the "Netz-Direkt" (keypad) function (automatic external line access) to enter a key sequence from your ISDN or analogue telephone to use current T-ISDN functions. For more information on this, consult your T-Com client advisor and request the necessary codes (e.g. call forwarding in the exchange).
NMS	Network Management Station
Notebook function	During a telephone call, a telephone number can be entered in the telephone's buffer so that it can be dialled at a later point in time.
NT	Network Termination
NTBA	Network Termination for Basic Access
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OAM	Operation and Maintenance
Offline	Without connection. Connectionless operating state e.g. of the PCs.
Online	With connection. For example the state of a connection between a PC and data network or for data exchange between two PCs.
Online banking	Term for electronic banking e.g. using T-Online.
Online Pass	Part of the T-Com certification services for the Internet. Digital pass for the Internet. With the Online Pass, an Internet user can be authenticated as a customer in a company.
Online services	Services available around the clock via communication services such as T-Online and the Internet.
OSI model	OSI = Open Systems Interconnection

OSPF	Open Shortest Path First
Outgoing extension number signal	The "outgoing extension number signal" is intended for internal connections on the point-to-point to which an explicit extension number was not assigned. When an external call is made, the extension number entered under Outgoing Extension Number Signal is also transmitted.
Outgoing telephone number	If you have not suppressed transmission of your telephone number, and the telephone of the person you are calling supports the CLIP function, the person you are calling can see the telephone number of the connection you are calling from on their telephone display. This telephone number transmitted during an external call is called the outgoing telephone number.
Packet switching	Packet switching
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
Parking	The call is held temporarily in the exchange. The main difference to on hold: The call is interrupted, the receiver can be replaced. Can be used for brokering. Possible in T-Net, T-ISDN and PBXs. The terminal must have MFC and the R key.
PBX	Private Branch Exchange
PBX	The features offered by a PBX are manufacturer-specific and enable operation of exchanges, free internal calls, callback on busy, and conference calls, among other things. PBXs are used e.g. for office communication (voice, text and data transfer).
PBX	Private Branch Exchange (PBX)
PBX	Private Automatic Branch Exchange
PBX number	A point-to-point ISDN access includes a PBX number and an extension numbers range. The PBX number is used to reach the PBX. A certain terminal of the PBX is then dialled via one of the extension numbers of the extension numbers range.
PCMCIA	The PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) is an industry association founded in 1989 that represents credit card-sized I/O cards such as WLAN cards.
PDM	Abbreviation for pulse dialling method. Conventional dialling procedure in the telephone network. Dialled numbers are represented by a defined number of dc impulses. The pulse dialling method is being

	replaced by the multifrequency code method (MFC) .
PGP	Pretty Good Privacy
PH	Packet handler
Phone book	The PBX has an internal phone book. You can store up to 300 telephone numbers and the associated names. You can access the PBX's phone book with the Teldat devices (for example CS 410). You add entries to the phone book using the configuration interface.
PIN	Personal identification number
Ping	Packet Internet Groper
PKCS	Public Key Cryptography Standards
Point-to-multipoint	Point-to-multipoint connection
Point-to-multipoint	Basic connection in T-ISDN with three telephone numbers and two lines as standard. The ISDN terminals are connected directly on the network termination (NTBA) or ISDN internet connection of a PBX.
Point-to-multipoint	Point-to-multipoint
Point-to-multipoint connection for the PBX	You enter the multiple subscriber numbers received from T-Com with the order confirmation in the table fields defined for them in the configuration. As a rule, you receive three multiple subscriber numbers, but can apply for up to 10 telephone numbers for each connection. When you enter the telephone numbers, they are assigned to an "index" and also to a team. Note that initially, all telephone numbers are assigned to team 00. The internal telephone numbers 10, 11 and 20 are entered in team 00 ex works. External calls are therefore signalled with the internal telephone numbers 10, 11 and 20 for the connections entered in team 00.
Point-to-point	Point-to-point
Point-to-point ISDN access	Point-to-point
Polling	Fax machine function that "fetches" documents provided by other fax machines or fax databases.
Port	Input/output
POTS	Plain Old Telephone System

PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PPP authentication	Security mechanism. A method of authentication using passwords in PPP.
PPPoA	Point to Point Protocol over ATM
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet
PRI	Primary Rate Interface
Primary Rate Interface (PRI)	ISDN subscriber connection. The PRI consists of one D channel and 30 B channels (in Europe). (In America: 23 B channels and one D channel.) There is also the ISDN Basic Rate Interface.
Protocol	Protocols are used to define the manner and means of information exchange between two systems. Protocols control and rule the course of data communication at various levels (decoding, addressing, network routing, control procedures, etc.).
Proxy ARP	ARP = Address Resolution Protocol
PSN	Packet Switched Network
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network
PVID	Port VLAN ID
R key	Telephones that have a R key (inquiry key) can also be connected to a PBX. In modern telephones, the R key triggers the hook flash function. This is required for use of performance features in T-Net such as inquiry/brokering and three-party conference.
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial In User Service
RADSL	Rate-Adaptive Digital Subscriber Line
RAS	Remote access service
Real Time Clock (RTC)	Hardware clock with buffer battery
Receiver volume	Function for controlling the volume in the telephone receiver.
Reconnection on the bus (parking)	For a point-to-multipoint connection, enables the terminal connection to be reconnected to another ISDN socket during the telephone call.

Recording telephone calls	Performance feature of an answering machine. Enables a conversation to be recorded during the telephone call.
Remote	Remote, as opposed to local.
Remote access	Opposite to local access, see Remote.
Remote CAPI	bintec's own interface for CAPI.
Remote diagnosis/remote maintenance	Some terminals and PBXs are supported and maintained by T-Service support offices over the telephone line, which often means a service engineer does not have to visit the site.
Remote query	Answering machine function. Involves listening to messages remotely, usually in connection with other options such as deleting messages or changing recorded messages.
Repeater	A device that transmits electrical signals from one cable connection to another without making routing decisions or carrying out packet filtering. See Bridge and Router.
Reset	Resetting the device enables you to return your system to a pre-defined initial state. This may be necessary if you have made incorrect configuration settings or the device is to be reprogrammed.
RFC	Specifications, proposals, ideas and guidelines relating to the Internet are published in the form of RFCs (request for comments).
Rijndael (AES)	Rijndael (AES) was selected as AES due to its fast key generation, low memory requirements and high level of security against attacks. For more information on AES, see http://csrc.nist.gov/encryption/aes .
RIP	Routing Information Protocol
RipeMD 160	RipeMD 160 is a cryptographic hash function with 160 bits. It is regarded as a secure replacement for MD5 and RipeMD.
RJ45	Plug or socket for maximum eight wires. Connection for digital terminals.
Roaming	In a multicell WLAN, clients can move freely and log off from one access point and log on to another when moving through cells, without the user noticing this. This is known as roaming.
Room monitoring (acoustic)	To use the "Room Monitoring" performance feature, the telephone must be activated in the room to be monitored by means of a code,

	and the receiver must be lifted or "Hands-free" switched on. If you replace the telephone receiver or turn off "Hands-free", room monitored ends and the performance feature is switched off.
Room monitoring from external telephones	This function can be used to monitor rooms from an external telephone.
Room monitoring from internal telephones	You can acoustically monitor a room from an internal telephone in your PBX. This is set up using the telephone procedures described in the user's guide. Please read the information on the described functions in the user's guide.
Router	A device that connects different networks at layer 3 of the OSI model and routes information from one network to the other.
RSA	The RSA algorithm (named after its inventors Rivest, Shamir, Adleman) is based on the problem of factoring large integers. It therefore takes a large amount of data processing capacity and time to derive a RSA key.
RTSP	Real-Time Streaming Protocol
S2M interface	See Primary Rate Interface.
SAD	The SAD (=Security Association Database) contains information on security agreements such as AH or ESP algorithms and keys, sequence numbers, protocol modes and SA life. For outgoing IPSec connections, an SPD entry refers to an entry in the SAD i.e. the SPD defines which SA is to be applied. For incoming IPSec connections, the SAD is queried to determine how the packet is to be processed.
SDSL	Symmetric Digital Subscriber Line
Server	A server offers services used by clients. Often refers to a certain computer in the LAN, e.g. DHCP server.
ServerPass	Part of the T-Com certification services for the Internet. Digital pass for a company. With the ServerPass, T-Com confirms that a server on the Internet belongs to a particular company and that this was verified through the presentation of an excerpt from the business register.
Service 0190	Additional voice service from T-Com for the commercial distribution of private information services. The T-Com services are limited to providing the technical infrastructure and collection processing for

	the information providers. The provided information is accessed using the telephone number 0190 which is uniform across Germany plus a 6-digit telephone number. Information offering: Entertainment, weather, finance, sport, health, support and service hotlines.
Service 0700	Additional voice service from T-Com. Allows calls to be received via a location-independent telephone number uniform across Germany, starting with the numbers 0700. Free-of-charge routing to national fixed network. Enhancement with Vanity possible.
Service 0900	Additional voice service from T-Com. Replaces Service 0190.
Service number 0180	Additional voice service 0180call from T-Com to receive calls from a location-dependent telephone number uniform across Germany, starting with the numbers 0180.
Services	Euro ISDN contains service indicates with defined names. Some of these have only historical meaning. In general, you should choose the "Telephony" service for "real" telephone calls. If this selection does not work (depends on network operator), you can try "speech", "audio 3k1Hz" or "telephony 3k1Hz". The same applies for faxing. Here, too, there is the collective term "Fax" plus a couple of more specific cases. From a purely technical point of view, the services are bits in a data word evaluated by means of a mask. If you include several bits in the mask, all these services are approved for activation, while in the case of just one bit, it is just the one selected service.
Setup Tool	Menu-driven tool for the configuration of your gateway. The Setup Tool can be used as soon as the gateway has been accessed (serial, ISDN Login, LAN).
SHA1	See HMAC-SHA.
SHDSL	Single-Pair High-Speed
Short hold	Is the defined amount of time after which a connection is cleared if no more data is transmitted. Short hold can be set to static (fixed amount of time) or dynamic (according to charging information).
Signalling	Simultaneous signalling: All assigned terminals are called simultaneously. If a telephone is busy, call waiting can be used.
Simplex operation (ISDN subscribers only)	This connection can only be used for an ISDN telephone (only T-Concept PX722 system telephones) with a simplex function. If you call an ISDN telephone with a simplex function, this automatically

activates the Loudspeaker function so that a conversation can take place immediately. Please see the information on the telephone user's guide on the simplex operation function.

SIP

Session Initiation Protocol

SMS

Short Message Service

SMS receipt

If you have connected an SMS-enabled terminal, you can decide whether SMS receipt is to be permitted for the connection. The ex works setting is no SMS receipt. To receive an SMS with your SMS-enabled terminal, you must register once with the T-Com SMS Service. One-time registration is free. You simply send an SMS containing ANMELD to the destination call number 8888. You then receive a free-of-charge confirmation of registration from the T-Com SMS Service. You can deregister your device or telephone number by sending an SMS containing ABMELD to the destination number 8888. Incoming SMS are then read out. Information on which telephones are SMS-enabled can be obtained from T-Punkt, our customer hotline 0800 330 1000 or on the Internet at <http://www.t-com.de>.

SMS server telephone numbers

You can connect SMS-enabled telephones to your PBX and thus use the SMS performance feature in the T-Com fixed network. SMSs are forwarded to the recipient via the T-Com SMS server. To send an SMS with an SMS-enabled terminal, the telephone number 0193010 of the SMS server must be prefixed to the recipient number. This telephone number is already stored in your PBX, so manual input of the server telephone is not necessary and does not need to be sent from the telephone. To receive an SMS with your SMS-enabled fixed-network telephone, you must register once with the Deutsche Telekom SMS Service. Charges are made for sending SMSs. There are no costs for receiving SMSs.

SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol

SNMP shell

Input level for SNMP commands.

So bus

All ISDN sockets and the NTBA of an ISDN point-to-multipoint connection. All So buses consist of a four-wire cable. The lines transmit digital ISDN signals. The So bus is terminated with a terminating resistor after the last ISDN socket. The So bus starts at the NTBA and can be up to 150 m long. Any ISDN devices can be operated on this bus. However, only two devices can use the So bus at any one time, as only two B channels are available.

So connection	See ISDN Basic Rate Interface
So interface	Internationally standardised interface for ISDN systems. This interface is provided on the network side by the NTBA . On the user side, the interface is intended for connecting a PBX (point-to-point connection) and for connecting up to eight ISDN terminals (point-to-multipoint connection).
SOHO	Small Offices and Home Offices
SPD	The SPD (=Security Policy Database) defines the security services available for IP traffic. These security services are dependent on parameters such as the source and destination of the packet etc.
Special features	Performance features of the T-Net and T-ISDN networks such as display of the caller's number, callback on busy, call forwarding, changeable connection lock, changeable telephone number lock, connection without dialling and transmission of charge information. Availability depends on the standard of the connected terminals.
Special-features connection	T-ISDN Basic Rate Interface with an extensive range of services: call waiting, call forwarding, third-party conference, display of call costs at the end of a connection, inquiry/brokering, telephone number transmission. In the special-features connection, three multiple subscriber numbers are included as standard.
Specify own telephone number for next call	If you want to make a business call late in the evening from your private sphere - say the living room - for example, you can define your business telephone number as the outgoing multiple subscriber number (MSN) for this call. The advantages of this are that the costs for the connection are recorded for the selected MSN and the person you are calling can identify you by the transferred MSN. Before you call an external number, you can define which of your telephone numbers is to be sent to the exchange and called party. You make the selection using the telephone number index.
Speeddial number	A speeddial index (000...299) can be assigned to each of the 300 telephone numbers in the telephone book. You then dial this speeddial index instead of the long telephone number. Note that telephone numbers dialled using the speeddial function must also comply with the dialrule.
SPID	Service Profile Identifier
Splitter	The splitter separates data and voice signals on the DSL connection.

Spoofing	Technique for reducing data traffic (and thus saving costs), especially in WANs.
SSID	The Service Set Identifier (SSID) or Network Name refers to the wireless network code based on IEEE 802.11.
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer A technology, now standard, developed by Netscape, which is generally used to secure HTTP traffic between a web browser and a web server.
STAC	Data compression procedure.
Standard connection	T-ISDN Basic Rate Interface with the performance features Inquiry/ Brokering and Telephone Number Transmission. The standard connection contains three multiple subscriber numbers.
Static IP address	A fixed IP address, in contrast to a dynamic IP address.
Station guarding	Deactivation of acoustic call signalling: do not disturb.
Subaddressing	In addition to the transmission of ISDN telephone numbers, additional information in the form of a subaddress can be transmitted from the caller to the called party over the D channel when the connection is set up. Addressing that goes beyond the pure MSN, which can be used e.g. specifically to locate several ISDN terminals that can be reached on one telephone number for a particular service. In the called terminal - e.g. a PC - various applications can also be addressed and in some cases executed. Costs are charged for the performance feature, and it must be requested separately from the network operator.
Subnet	A network scheme that divides individual logical networks into smaller physical units to simplify routing.
Subnet mask	A method of splitting several IP networks into a series of subgroups or subnetworks. The mask is a binary pattern that must match the IP addresses in the network. 255.255.255.0 is the default subnet mask. In this case, 254 different IP addresses can occur in a subnet, from x.x.x.1 to x.x.x.254.
Subscriber Name	To distinguish between connections more easily, you can assign a subscriber name for each internal subscriber.
Suppress A-telephone number (CLIR)	CLIP/CLIR: Calling line identification presentation/calling line identification restriction

Suppress B telephone number (COLR)	COLP/COLR: Connected line identification presentation/connected line identification restriction = Activate/suppress transmission of called party's telephone number to caller. This performance feature suppresses the display of the called subscriber's telephone number. If display of the B telephone number is suppressed, your telephone number is not transmitted to the caller when you take a call.
Suppress own telephone number	Temporary deactivation of the transmission of your own telephone number.
Suppression of the telephone number	Performance feature of a PBX. The display of the telephone number can be deactivated on an individual basis.
Switch	LAN switches are network components with a similar function to bridges or even gateways. They switch data packets between the input and output port. In contrast to bridges, switches have several input and output ports. This increases the bandwidth in the network. Switches can also be used for conversion between networks with different speeds (e.g. 100-mbps and 10-mbps networks).
Switchable dialling method	Option of switching between the pulse dialling method and MFC method by means of a switch or key input on the terminal, such as the telephone or fax machine.
Synchronous	Transmission process in which the sender and receiver operate with exactly the same clock signals – in contrast to asynchronous transmission. Spaces are bridged by a stop code.
Syslog	Syslog is used as the de facto standard for transmitting log messages in an IP network. Syslog messages are sent as unencrypted text messages over the UDP port 514 and collected centrally. They are usually used to monitor computer systems.
System telephones	Telephone that belongs to a modern PBX, which - depending on the PBX - has a number of special features and keys, e.g. the T-Concept PX722.
T-DSL	Product name used by Deutsche Telekom AG for its DSL services and products.
T-Fax	Product name for T-Com fax machines.
T-ISDN	Telephony, faxing, data transfer and online services from one network and a single connection: T-ISDN offers exciting services with numerous benefits, for example a point-to-multipoint connection - the ideal solution for families or small businesses. This connection

	<p>option, which can be used with the existing telephone cable, costs less than two telephone connections but offers far greater quality and ease of use: Two independent lines, so that you can still make a phone call, receive a fax, or surf the Internet when another family member is making a long call on the other line. Three or more telephone numbers, which you can assign individually to your devices and distribute differently if needed through simple programming steps. Most ISDN telephones can "manage" several telephone numbers, so you can set up a "central" telephone in your household, for example, to allow you to react to calls to all ISDN telephone numbers with this telephone. The fax and telephone in your home office can also each be assigned a number, as can your son or daughter's phone. As a result, each family member can be contacted with a separate number, helping to eliminate "day-to-day friction"! And as far as the costs are concerned, on request you can have your bill broken down to show which units have been charged for the individual ISDN telephone numbers.</p>
T-Net	The digital telephone network of T-Com for connecting analogue terminals.
T-NetBox	The answering machine in T-Net and T-ISDN. The T-NetBox can store up to 30 messages.
T-NetBox telephone number	Enter the current T-NetBox telephone number here if it differs from the 08003302424 entered ex works. As soon as your T-NetBox receives a voice or fax message, notification is sent to your PBX.
T-Online	Umbrella term the T-Com online platform. Offers services such as e-mail and Internet access.
T-Online software	T-Com software decoder for all conventional computer systems that enables access to T-Online. Supports all functions such as KIT, e-mail and the Internet with a browser. T-Online users receive this software free of charge.
T-Service	T-Service carries out all installation work and configurations for the PBX at the customer's request. The service ensures optimum voice and data transmission at all times thanks to maintenance work.
T-Service access	T-Service access enables you to have your PBX configured by T-Service. Give T-Service a call! Get advice and provide information on your configuration requirements. T-Service will then configure your PBX remotely without you having to do anything.
TA	Terminal Adapter

TAPI	Telephony Application Program Interface
TAPI configuration	You can use the TAPI configuration to modify the TAPI driver in line with the program that uses this driver. You can check which MSN is to be assigned to a terminal, define a line name, and configure the dialling parameters. First configure your PBX. You must then configure the TAPI interface. Use the "TAPI Configuration" program.
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
TCU	Telecommunication connection unit
TE	Terminal equipment
TEI	Terminal Endpoint Identifier
Telefax	Term that describes the remote copying for transmitting texts, graphics and documents true to the original over the telephone network.
Telematics	Telematics is a combination of telecommunication and computer technology and describes data communication between systems and devices.
Telnet	Protocol from the TCP/IP protocol family. Telnet enables communication with a remote device in the network.
Terminal adapter	Device for interface adaptation. It enables different equipment to be connected to T-ISDN. The terminal adapter a/b is used to connect analogue terminals to the So interface of the ISDN Basic Rate Interface. Existing analogue terminals can still be operated with tone dialling.
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
Three-party conference	A three-way telephone call. Performance feature in T-Net, T-ISDN and your PBX.
Tiger 192	Tiger 192 is a relatively new and very fast hash algorithm.
TLS	Transport Layer Security
Tone dialling	Multifrequency code method (MFC)
Transfer internal code	If you receive an internal call, e.g. from the subscriber with internal telephone number 22, while you are away, this subscriber's internal

telephone number is stored in your telephone's caller list. However, because your connection is automatically set to Automatic Outside Line as a result of the ex works settings, you would first have to dial ** for a callback in order to obtain the internal dialling tone, and then 22. If "Transfer Internal Code" is active, ** is placed before the 22 and the callback can be made directly from the caller list.

Transmission speed	The number of bits per second transmitted in T-Net or T-ISDN from the PC or fax machine. Fax machines achieve up to 14.4 kbps, modems 56 kbps. In the ISDN, data and fax exchange with 64 kbps is possible. With T-DSL, up to 8 mbps can be received and up to 768 kbps sent.
TSD	Terminal Selection Digit
TTL	TTL stands for Time to Live and describes the time during which a data packet is sent between the individual servers before it is discarded.
Twofish	Twofish was a possible candidate for the AES (Advanced Encryption Standard). It is regarded as just as secure as Rijndael (AES), but is slower.
U-ADSL	Universal Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
Update	Update to a software program (PBX firmware). An update is the updated version of an existing software product, and is indicated by a new version number.
Upload	Data transfer during online connections, where files are transferred from the user's PC to another PC or to a data network server.
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
Upstream	Data transmission rate from the client to the ISP.
URL	Universal/Uniform Resource Locator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
User guidance	Electronic user guidance that takes the user through the required functions of a terminal such as a telephone, answering machine or fax machine step by step (menu-guided operation).
UUS1 (User to User)	This function is only possible for system telephones and ISDN tele-

Signalling 1)	phones.
V.11	ITU-T recommendation for balanced dual-current interface lines (up to 10 mbps).
V.24	CCITT and ITU-T recommendation that defines the interface between a PC or terminal as Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) and a modem as Data Circuit-terminating Equipment (DCE).
V.28	ITU-T recommendation for unbalanced dual-current interface line.
V.35	ITU-T recommendation for data transmission at 48kbps in the range from 60 to 108kHz.
V.36	Modem for V.35.
V.42bis	Data compression procedure.
V.90	ITU standard for 56 kbps analogue modems. In contrast to older V.34 modems, data is sent in digital form to the client when the V.90 standard is used and does not need to be first converted from digital to analogue on one side of the modem (provider), as was the case with V.34 and earlier modems. This makes higher transmission rates possible. A maximum speed of 56 kbps can be achieved only under optimum conditions.
Vanity	Letter dialling
VDSL	Very high bit rate digital subscriber line (also called VADSL or BD-SL).
VID	VLAN ID
VJHC	Van Jacobson Header Compression
VLAN	Virtual LAN
VoIP	Voice over IP
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VSS	Virtual Service Set
WAN	Wide Area Network
WAN interface	WAN interface
WAN partner	Remote station that is reached over a WAN, e.g. ISDN.

Web server	Server that provides documents in HTML format for access over the Internet (WWW).
Webmail	T-Online service with which e-mails can be sent and received worldwide on the Internet by means of a browser.
WEP	Wired Equivalent Privacy
Western plug	(also known as RJ-45 plug) Plug used for ISDN terminals with eight contacts. Developed by the US telephone company Western Bell. Western plugs for analogue telephones have four or six contacts.
WINIPCFG	A graphical tool on Windows 95, 98 and Millennium that uses Win32 API to view and configure the IP address configuration of computers.
WLAN	A group of computers wirelessly connected to each other (wireless LAN).
WMM	Wireless multimedia
WPA	Wi-Fi-protected access
WPA Enterprise	Concentrates primarily on the needs of companies and offers secure encryption and authentication. Uses 802.1x and the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) and thus offers an effective means of user authentication.
WPA-PSK	Intended for private users or small businesses that do not run a central authentication server. PSK stands for Pre-Shared Key and means that AP and client use a fixed character string (8 to 63 characters) known to all subscribers as the basis for key calculation for wireless traffic.
WWW	World Wide Web
X.21	The X.21 recommendation defines the physical interface between two network components in packet-switched data networks (e.g. Datex-P).
X.21bis	The X.21bis recommendation defines the DTE/DCE interface to V-series synchronous modems.
X.25	An internationally agreed standard protocol that defines the interface between network components and a packet-switched data network.
X.31	ITU-T recommendation on the integration of X.25-compatible DTEs

in ISDN (D channel).

X.500

ITU-T standards that cover user directory services, see LDAP. Example: The phone book is the directory in which you find people on the basis of their name (agreement with the telephone directory). The Internet supports several databases with information on users, such as e-mail addresses, telephone numbers and postal addresses. You can search these databases to obtain information about individuals.

X.509

ITU-T standards that define the format of the certificates and certificate queries and their use.

Index

187

ISDN Timeserver 80

Modem Init Sequence 120

System Admin Password 76

#

#1 #2, #3 114

A

Access 459

Access Control 180

Access Filter 233

Access Filter 228

Access Rules 226

ACCESS_ACCEPT 97

ACCESS_REJECT 97

ACCESS_REQUEST 97

ACCOUNTING_START 97

ACCOUNTING_STOP 97

Action 187 , 233 , 385 , 455 , 467 ,
483 , 510 , 531 , 537

Action if license not registered 453

Action if server not reachable 453

Action to be performed 479

Actions 467

Active Clients 181

Active IPSec Tunnels 71

Active Radio Profile 165

Active Sessions (SIF, RTP, etc...) 71

Activity Monitor 527

Additional Traffic Filter 331 , 333

Additional freely accessible Domain
Names 492

Additional Wire Pairs 142

Address Mode 146 , 307

Address Range 392

Address Type 392

Address List 392

Address / Subnet 392

Addresses 392

Admin Status 211 , 250

Admin Status 541

Administration 152

Administrative Status 327 , 399 , 409
, 416 , 418 , 434

Administrative Access 89

ADSL Line Profile 141

ADSL Logic 510

Advertisement send interval 501

Airtime fairness 170

Alert Service 520

Alert Service 523

Alert Recipient 520

Alert Settings 523

Alert Service 520

Alive Check 100 , 347 , 352

Alive Check 532

All Multicast Groups 261

Allowed Addresses 180

Allowed HotSpot Client 494

Always on 272 , 278 , 283 , 288 , 296
, 365 , 372

Answer to client request 488

APN (Access Point Name) 120

Application Level Gateway 398

Apply QoS 385

Area 543

Area ID 248 , 250

Areas 248

ARP Lifetime 236

ARP Processing 175

As DHCP Server 433

As IPCP Server 433

Assert State 550 , 551

Assert Winner IP Address 550 , 551

Assigned Wireless Network (VSS)
165

Assistants 69

Associated Line 422

ATM 303

ATM Interface 142

ATM PVC 283

ATM Service Category 310
 Attacked Access Point 185
 Authentication 275 , 280 , 285 , 291 ,
 298 , 368 , 375
 Authentication ID 404 , 409
 Authentication Key 250
 Authentication Method 327 , 342
 Authentication Type 98 , 103 , 250
 Authentication Method 532
 Authentication for PPP Dialin 106
 Autoconfiguration on Bootup 126
 Autosave Mode 115 , 467
 AUX 119 , 295
 AUX Port Status 120

B

Back Route Verify 335
 Back Route Verify 197
 Back-up of configuration on SD card
 71
 Backup Designated Router 541
 Bandwidth 168
 Based on Ethernet Interface 146
 Beacon Period 171
 Bearer Service 135
 Black / White List 457
 Blacklisted 457
 Block after connection failure for 275 ,
 280 , 285 , 291 , 298 , 368 , 375
 Block Time 104 , 347
 BOSS 510
 BOSS Version 71
 Bridges 539
 BRRP 496
 Bundle Type 133
 Burst size 223
 Burst Mode 170
 Bytes 532

C

CA Certificate 111
 CA Certificates 347
 CA Name 467

Cache 438
 Cache Hitrate (%) 439
 Cache Hits 439
 Cache Size 431
 Call Number 294 , 301 , 412
 Call History 535
 Call Routing 415
 Call Translation 421
 Call Number 126
 Callback 377
 Callback Mode 291 , 298
 Called Address 416 , 419
 Called Line 419
 Called Address Translation 418
 Calling Address 416
 Calling Line 416 , 419
 Calling Address Translation 419
 CAPI Server 458
 CAPI Server TCP Port 460
 CAPWAP Encryption 164
 Category 455
 Certificate Request 110
 Certificate List 107
 Certificate Servers 118
 Certificate is CA Certificate 108
 Certificate Request Description 111 ,
 467
 Certificate Revocation List (CRL)
 Checking 108
 Certificates 106
 Channel 165 , 535
 Channel Bundling 293
 Channel Plan 171
 Channel Selection 130
 Charge 535 , 536
 Class ID 217 , 223
 Class map 217
 CLID Translation 419
 Client Type 308
 Client Band select 178
 Clock Mode 130
 Clock Rate 142
 Code 394
 Codec Proposal Sequence 406 , 413

Comfort Noise Generation (CNG) 407
 , 414
 Command Mode 467
 Command Type 467
 Common Name 113
 Compare Condition 462
 Compare Value 462
 Compression 94 , 318 , 321 , 368 ,
 375
 Config Mode 330
 Configuration Encryption 510
 Configuration contains
 certificates/keys 467
 Configuration Interface 86
 Configured Speed / Mode 123
 Confirm Admin Password 76
 Congestion Avoidance (RED) 225
 Connection State 214 , 229
 Connection Type 288 , 365
 Connection Idle Timeout 272 , 278 ,
 283 , 288 , 296 , 365 , 372
 Consider 206
 Contact 73
 Continuity Check (CC) End-to-End
 314
 Continuity Check (CC) Segment 314
 Control Mode 220 , 323
 Controlled Interfaces 322
 Controller Configuration 160
 COS Filter (802.1p/Layer 2) 214 , 229
 Count 467
 Country 113
 CPU Usage 71
 Create area default route (only ABR)
 248
 Create NAT Policy 274 , 279 , 284 ,
 289 , 297 , 366 , 374
 CRLs 116
 CSV File Format 467
 Current Calls 534
 Current File Name in Flash 510
 Current Local Time 79
 Current Speed / Mode 123
 Custom 113

Custom Time Slots 130
 Cyclic Background Scanning 171

D

D Channel Mode 339
 Data Packets Sequence Numbers
 363
 Date 530
 Date and Time 77
 Day 455
 Default Route 274 , 279 , 284 , 289 ,
 297 , 317 , 320 , 330 , 366 , 374 ,
 381
 Default Drop Extension 425
 Default Ethernet for PPPoE Interfaces
 307
 Default Idle Timeout 494
 Default Route Distribution 244
 Default User Password 98
 Delete 185 , 195
 Delete complete IPSec configuration
 357
 Demand Circuit Options 250
 Description 108 , 118 , 133 , 164 ,
 168 , 193 , 199 , 211 , 214 , 217 ,
 223 , 229 , 233 , 272 , 278 , 283 ,
 288 , 296 , 305 , 317 , 320 , 327 ,
 333 , 342 , 350 , 355 , 362 , 365 ,
 372 , 381 , 391 , 392 , 393 , 394 ,
 397 , 399 , 404 , 409 , 416 , 419 ,
 422 , 424 , 434 , 451 , 462 , 467 ,
 531 , 532 , 537 , 538
 Description - Connection Information -
 Link 73
 Designated Router 541 , 545
 Designated Router Priority 263
 Destination 385
 Destination Interface 261
 Destination Port 193 , 333
 Destination Port/Range 201 , 211 ,
 214 , 229
 Destination File Name 510
 Destination IP Address 462 , 467 ,
 484

- Destination IP Address/Netmask 192
 - , 201 , 211 , 214 , 229 , 333
 - Destination IP Address 195
 - Destination Port Range 394
 - Details 531
 - Device 164
 - Device Mode 142
 - DH Group 342
 - DHCP Hostname 148 , 307
 - DHCP Options 448
 - DHCP Server 160
 - DHCP Configuration 446
 - DHCP Broadcast Flag 148
 - DHCP Client on Interface 236
 - DHCP MAC Address 148 , 307
 - DHCP Relay Settings 451
 - DHCP Server 445
 - Diagnostics 506
 - Dial Latency 425
 - Dialling Number 486
 - Direction 217 , 242 , 422 , 535 , 536
 - Distribution Mode 206
 - Distribution Policy 206 , 207
 - Distribution Ratio 208
 - DNS 429
 - DNS Hostname 436
 - DNS Negotiation 275 , 280 , 285 ,
 - 294 , 298 , 369 , 376
 - DNS Server 303 , 356 , 380 , 437 ,
 - 446
 - DNS Requests 439
 - DNS Servers 433
 - DNS Test 507
 - Domain 437
 - Domain Forwarding 436
 - Domain at the HotSpot Server 492
 - Domain Name 431
 - Done 187
 - Downstream 139
 - Drop non-members 152
 - Drop In 235
 - Drop In Groups 235
 - Drop untagged frames 152
 - Dropped 534 , 540
 - Dropping Algorithm 225
 - DSA Key Status 93
 - DSCP / TOS Value 193
 - DSCP/TOS Filter (Layer 3) 214 , 229
 - DSL Chipset 138
 - DSL Configuration 137
 - DSL Mode 139
 - DSL Modem 137
 - DSL SyncType 139
 - DSP Module 72
 - DTIM Period 171
 - Duration 535 , 536
 - Dynamic blacklisting 180
 - Dynamic LS Update Compression
 - 252
 - Dynamic RADIUS Authentication 358
 - DynDNS Provider 443
 - DynDNS Update 441
 - DynDNS Client 441
- E**
- E-mail 113
 - E-mail Address 523
 - EAP Preauthentication 176
 - Echo Cancellation 407 , 414
 - Enable authentication 501
 - Enable update 442
 - Enable BRRP 504
 - Enable IPsec 357
 - Enable server 460
 - Enable VLAN 153
 - Enabled 381
 - Encapsulation 305
 - Encrypt configuration 467
 - Encrypted 534
 - Encryption 104 , 291 , 368 , 375
 - Encryption Algorithms 92
 - End-to-End Pending Requests 313
 - End-to-End Send Interval 313
 - Entries 294 , 301
 - Entry active 98 , 103
 - Error 187
 - Errors 532 , 534
 - Ethernet Interface 500

- Ethernet Interface Selection 123
- Ethernet Ports 122
- Event 520
- Event Type 462
- Event List 462 , 467
- Event List Condition 467
- Ex works setting 10
- Exclude from NAT (DMZ) 236
- Expire Time 404 , 409
- Expiry Timer 546 , 550 , 551 , 551
- Export indirect static routes 250
- Extended Route 195
- Extension / User Name 404
- Extensions 403
- External Address 422
- External Filename 116 , 117
- External Port 401
- External Reporting 515

F

- Facility 516
- Fallback interface to get DNS server 431
- Faxheader 460
- File Encoding 116 , 117
- File Name 467
- File Name in Flash 467
- Filename 510
- Filter 217
- Filter Rules 388
- Filter Rules 384
- Filter List 455
- Filtered Input Interface(s) 453
- Firewall 383
- Firewall Status 389
- Firmware Maintenance 186
- First Timeserver 80
- First seen 185
- Flow Control 123
- Force certificate to be trusted 108
- Forward 437
- Forward to 437
- Forwarded Requests 439
- Forwarding 261

- Fragmentation Threshold 171
- Frozen Parameters 212
- Full Filtering 389

G

- Garbage Collection Timer 245
- Gateway 195 , 448
- Gateway IP Address 192
- General 255 , 453 , 489
- Generate Private Key 111
- Generate default route for the AS 252
- Generation ID 546
- Global Settings 252 , 431
- Global Status 545
- Global Settings 73
- GRE 380
- GRE Tunnels 381
- GRE Window Adaption 378
- GRE Window Size 378
- Group Description 98 , 206 , 207 , 236
- Group ID 479
- Groups 391 , 393 , 396

H

- Hashing Algorithms 92
- Hello Interval 264
- Hello Intervall 363
- Hello Hold Time 264
- High Priority Class 217
- History 458
- Hold Down Timer 246
- Host 437
- Host for multiple locations 496
- Host Name 442
- Hosts 478
- HotSpot Gateway 491
- HotSpot Gateway 490 , 539
- HTTP 89
- HTTPS 89 , 440
- HTTPS Server 440
- HTTPS TCP Port 440

I

- IGMP 256
- IGMP Proxy 259
- IGMP State Limit 257
- IGMP State Limit 260
- IGMP Status 260
- Ignore Certificate Request Payloads 359
- IKE (Phase-1) 534
- IKE (Phase-1) SAs 532
- Image already exists. 187
- Import external routes 248
- Import summary routes 248
- Include certificates and keys 510
- Incoming Number 486
- Incoming ISDN Number 377
- Incoming Phone Number 339
- Incoming Service Type 120
- Index Variables 462, 467
- Interface 87, 88, 91, 152, 160, 190, 195, 197, 199, 208, 220, 234, 242, 257, 263, 323, 388, 434, 437, 442, 447, 467, 481, 483, 488, 492, 535, 536, 539, 540, 541, 542, 545, 546, 550, 551, 551
- Interface Action 481
- Interface Mode 146, 434
- Interface Status 462
- Interface Traffic Condition 462
- Interface Type 404
- Interface Description 86
- Interface Assignment 233
- Interface - Connection Information - Link 72
- Interface is UPnP controlled 488
- Interface Mode / Bridge Groups 84
- Interface Selection 236
- Interface-Specific States 549
- Interfaces 86, 145, 217, 250, 316, 391, 481, 488, 518, 536
- Internal Port 401
- Internal IP Address 401
- Internal Log 530
- Internal Time Server 80
- Internet + Dialup 269
- Internet Key Exchange 327
- Interval 462, 467, 479, 484
- Intra-cell Repeating 175
- Invalid DNS Packets 439
- IP Compression 352
- IP Accounting 518
- IP Configuration 145
- IP Address 249, 307, 308, 436, 451, 500, 516, 527, 539, 545, 546
- IP Address Assignment 330
- IP Address Mode 274, 279, 284, 289, 297, 366, 374
- IP Address Range 303, 356, 374, 380, 446
- IP Address Range 160
- IP Address / Netmask 146, 242
- IP Address / Netmask 538
- IP Address Owner 496
- IP Assignment Pool 289, 297, 330
- IP Assignment Pool (IPCP) 366, 374
- IP Pool Name 303, 356, 380, 446, 447
- IP Pool Configuration 445
- IP Pools 302, 356, 379
- IP/MAC Binding 450
- IPSec 324, 531
- IPSec (Phase-2) 534
- IPSec Tunnels 533
- IPSec Statistics 533
- IPSec Tunnels 531
- IPSec (Phase-2) SAs 532
- IPSec Debug Level 357
- IPSec over TCP 358
- IPSec Peers 325
- IPv4 Routes 189
- IPv4 Routing Table 195
- ISDN 286
- ISDN Configuration 125
- ISDN Configuration Type 126
- ISDN Line Framing 130
- ISDN Login 89

ISDN Mode 424
 ISDN Port 135
 ISDN Ports 125
 ISDN Switch Type 126 , 130
 ISDN Theft Protection Service 486
 ISDN Theft Protection 485
 ISDN Trunks 423
 ISDN Usage External 71
 ISDN Usage Internal 71
 ISDN/Modem 534

J

Join/Prune Interval 264
 Join/Prune State 550 , 551 , 551
 Join/Prune Hold Time 264

K

Keepalive Period 268
 Key Size 467
 Key Value 381

L

L2TP 360
 LAN 145
 Language for login window 492
 Last configuration stored 71
 Last Member Query Interval 257
 Last seen 185
 Layer 4 Protocol 193
 LCP Alive Check 275 , 280 , 285 ,
 298 , 318 , 321 , 368 , 375
 LDAP URL Path 118
 Lease Time 448
 Leased Line 315
 LED Mode 73
 Level 516 , 530
 Licence Key 83
 Licence Status 454
 Licence Key 454
 Licence Serial Number 83
 License valid until 454
 Lifetime 342 , 350
 Line 418

Line Speed 120
 Line Speed Interval 142
 Link State ID 543
 Load Balancing 182
 Load Balancing 205
 Load Balancing Groups 205
 Local Address 422
 Local Certificate 342
 Local Hostname 362
 Local Address 538
 Local Certificate 440
 Local Certificate Description 116 ,
 117 , 467
 Local File Name 467
 Local GRE IP Address 381
 Local ID 327 , 532
 Local ID Type 327 , 342
 Local ID Value 342
 Local IP Address 192 , 236 , 274 ,
 279 , 284 , 289 , 297 , 317 , 320 ,
 330 , 363 , 366 , 374 , 381
 Local IP Address 532
 Local Port 532 , 538
 Local PPTP IP Address 280
 Local Services 429
 Locality 113
 Location 73 , 164
 Log Format 519
 Logged Actions 389
 Logging Level 94
 Login Frameset 494
 Login Grace Time 94
 Logon 539
 Long Retry Limit 171
 Loopback End-to-End 313
 Loopback Segment 313
 Loopback active 198
 Low Latency Transmission 399

M

MAC Address 146 , 307 , 451
 MAC Address 538 , 539
 Mail Exchanger (MX) 443
 Maintenance 186 , 506

- Management VID 153
- Manual WLAN Controller IP Address 73
- Manually resetting the device 10
- Master down trials 501
- Matching String 520
- Max. incoming control connections per remote IP Address 378
- Max. number of clients - hard limit 178
- Max. number of clients - soft limit 178
- Max. queue size 225
- Max. Transmission Rate 170
- Maximum Number of Dialup Retries 275 , 280 , 285 , 291 , 298
- Maximum Retries 363
- Maximum Groups 260
- Maximum Message Level of Syslog Entries 73
- Maximum Number of Accounting Log Entries 73
- Maximum Number of History Entries 453
- Maximum Sources 260
- Maximum Burst Size (MBS) 310
- Maximum E-mails per Minute 523
- Maximum Number of Syslog Entries 73
- Maximum number of concurrent connections 92
- Maximum Response Time 257
- Maximum Time between Retries 363
- Maximum TTL for Negative Cache Entries 431
- Maximum TTL for Positive Cache Entries 431
- Maximum Upload Speed 220 , 223 , 323
- Maximum Upstream Bandwidth 139
- Media Gateway 402
- Media Gateway Status 425
- Media Stream Termination 425
- Members 391 , 397 , 424
- Memory Usage 71
- Memory Card 71
- Message 530
- Message Compression 520
- Message Timeout 520
- Messages 532
- Metric 192 , 195 , 330
- Metric Determination 250
- Metric (direct routes) 250
- Metric Offset for Inactive Interfaces 242
- Metric Offset for Active Interfaces 242
- MIB Variables 467
- MIB/SNMP Variable to add/edit 467
- Min. queue size 225
- Minimum Number of active Links 142
- Minimum Time between Retries 363
- MobiKE 335
- Mode 111 , 193 , 197 , 236 , 257 , 260 , 294 , 301 , 339 , 342 , 355
- Mode / Bridge Group 86
- Modem Escape Character 120
- Monitored Certificate 462
- Monitored Interface 462 , 481
- Monitored Subsystems 520
- Monitored Variable 462
- Monitored Interfaces 486 , 528
- Monitored IP Address 479
- Monitoring 181 , 530
- Monitoring Mode 503
- MSN 135
- MSN Configuration 134
- MSN Recognition 135
- MTU 381 , 532
- Multicast 254
- Multicast Group Prefix Length 266
- Multicast Group Prefix Length 546
- Multicast Routing 256
- Multicast Group Address 261 , 266
- Multicast Group Range 266
- Multicast Group Address 546 , 548 , 548 , 549 , 550 , 551 , 551
- N**
- Name 164 , 355

NAT 197, 538
 NAT method 199
 NAT Traversal 347
 NAT Detection 532
 NAT Configuration 199
 NAT active 198
 NAT Interfaces 197
 Negative Cache 431
 Negotiation Type 532
 Neighbor 542
 Neighbor APs 183
 Netmask 195, 236, 307, 308, 366
 Network Address 236
 Network Configuration 236
 Network Name (SSID) 175
 Networking 189
 New Destination Port 204
 New Destination IP Address/Netmask 204
 New File Name 510
 New Source Port 204
 New Source IP Address/Netmask 193, 204
 No. 197, 530, 537
 Not Interface-Specific Status 546
 Number of Messages 520
 Number of Spatial Streams 168
 Number of Dialling Retries 487
 Number of Admitted Connections 334
 Number of B Channels 293
 Number of Used Ports 294

O

OAM Controlling 311
 OAM Flow Level 312
 Operation Band 168
 Operation Mode 165, 168
 Options 105, 196, 259, 357, 370, 378, 389, 424, 460, 477, 485, 495, 504, 508, 518, 528
 Organization 113
 Organizational Unit 113
 OSPF 246, 541
 OSPF Status 252

OSPF Mode 294, 318, 321, 369, 376
 Other Inactivity 390
 Outbound Interface 223
 Outbound Proxy 409
 Outgoing Number 486
 Outgoing ISDN Number 377
 Outgoing Phone Number 339
 Overbooking allowed 223
 Override Interval 264
 Overwrite similar certificate 467

P

P-P Base Number 130
 Packet Size 407, 414
 Packets 532
 Passed 534
 Password 111, 116, 117, 272, 278, 283, 288, 296, 355, 362, 365, 372, 404, 409, 442, 459, 467, 510, 523, 528
 Password for protected Certificate 467
 Passwords 75
 Peak Cell Rate (PCR) 310
 Peer Address 327
 Peer ID 327
 Phase-1 Profile 334
 Phase-1 Profiles 341
 Phase-2 Profile 334
 Phase-2 Profiles 349
 Physical Address 539
 Physical Connection 138
 Physical Interfaces 119
 PIM 262, 545
 PIM Mode 263
 PIM Status 268
 PIM Interfaces 262
 PIM Options 267
 PIM Rendezvous Points 266
 Ping 89
 Ping Generator 484
 Ping Test 506
 Poisoned Reverse 244

- Policies 384
- Policy 100 , 104
- Pool Usage 447
- Pop-Up window for status indication 494
- POP3 Server 523
- POP3 Timeout 523
- Port 198 , 404 , 444 , 539
- Port Configuration 152
- Port Configuration 123
- Port Name 126 , 130
- Port Usage 126 , 130
- Positive Cache 431
- PPPoA 282
- PPPoE 271
- PPPoE Mode 272
- PPPoE Ethernet Interface 272
- PPPoE Interfaces for Multilink 272
- PPTP 277 , 371
- PPTP Inactivity 390
- PPTP Passthrough 198
- PPTP Tunnels 371
- PPTP Address Mode 280
- PPTP Ethernet Interface 278
- PPTP Mode 372
- Pre-empt mode (go back into master state) 501
- Precedence 266
- Preshared Key 176 , 327
- Primary DHCP Server 452
- Primary DNS Server 434
- Primary IP Address 496
- Prioritisation Algorithm 220
- Prioritize TCP ACK Packets 275 , 280 , 285 , 298 , 308 , 318 , 321 , 368 , 375
- Priority 98 , 103 , 223 , 385 , 418 , 434
- Priority Queueing 223
- Profiles 304
- Propagate PMTU 352
- Propagate routes bound on discard/re-fuse interface 252
- Propagation Delay 264

- Proposals 342 , 350
- Protocol 201 , 211 , 214 , 229 , 333 , 394 , 399 , 401 , 404 , 409 , 444 , 467 , 516
- Protocol Header Size below Layer 3 220
- Provider 305 , 442
- Provider Name 444
- Provisioning Server (code 3) 449
- Proxy Interface 259
- Proxy ARP 148 , 335
- Proxy ARP Mode 294 , 301 , 318 , 321 , 369 , 376
- Public Source IP Address 335
- PVID 152

Q

- QoS 213 , 388 , 540
- QoS Classification 216
- QoS Interfaces/Policies 219
- QoS Filter 213
- QoS Queue 540
- Query Interval 257
- Queued 540
- Queues/Policies 220

R

- RA Encrypt Certificate 111
- RA Sign Certificate 111
- Radio Profiles 167
- RADIUS 96
- RADIUS Dialout 100
- RADIUS Secret 98
- Radius Server 176
- RADIUS Server Group ID 355
- Real Time Jitter Control 220
- Real Time Jitter Control 322
- Realm 409
- Reboot 514
- Reboot after execution 467
- Reboot device after 467
- Receive Version 240
- Received Database Description

- 544
- Received DNS Packets 439
- Received Hello Messages 544
- Received Link State Acknowledge Packets 544
- Received Link State Request Packets 544
- Received Link State Update Packets 544
- Recipient 520
- Region 160
- Register Suppression Timer 268
- Registrar 409
- Registration 404 , 409
- Remaining Validity 462
- Remote Hostname 362
- Remote Port 401
- Remote Address 538
- Remote Networks 531
- Remote Number 535 , 536
- Remote Port 532 , 538
- Remote Authentication 96
- Remote File Name 467
- Remote GRE IP Address 381
- Remote ID 532
- Remote IP 531
- Remote IP Address 362
- Remote IP Address 532
- Remote PPTP IP Address 280 , 372
- Remote PPTP IP AddressHost Name 372
- Remote User (for Dialin only) 288
- Rendevous Point IP Address 546 , 547
- Rendezvous Point IP Address 266
- Reporting Method 234
- Requested Rate 142
- Reset 10
- Resetting the settings 10
- Response 436
- Restore Default Settings 90
- Result of Autoconfiguration 126
- Retransmission Timer 246
- Retries 100
- Reverse-Path-Forwarding (RPF) 548 , 549
- RFC 2091 Variable Timer 244
- RFC 2453 Variable Timer 244
- RIP 239
- RIP Filter 241
- RIP Interfaces 239
- RIP Options 244
- RIP UDP Port 244
- Robustness 257
- Rogue Clients 185
- Rogue APs 184
- Rogue Client MAC Address 185
- Role 355
- Route Announce 240
- Route Class 190
- Route Entries 274 , 279 , 284 , 289 , 297 , 317 , 320 , 330 , 366 , 374 , 381
- Route Selector 208
- Route Timeout 245
- Route Type 190 , 195
- Router ID 542 , 543
- Routes 189
- Routing Protocols 239
- Routing table updates caused by External Advertisements 544
- Routing table updates caused by Summary Links Advertisements 544
- RSA Key Status 93
- RTS Threshold 171
- RTSP 427
- RTSP Port 428
- RTSP Proxy 428 , 428
- RTT Mode (Realtime Traffic Mode) 223
- Rule Chain 233 , 234
- Rule Chains 232
- Running 187
- Rx Bytes 537 , 538
- Rx Errors 537
- Rx Packets 537 , 538

S

- SCEP URL 111
- Schedule Interval 478
- Schedule (Start / Stop Time) 455
- Scheduling 460
- Second Timeserver 80
- Secondary DHCP Server 452
- Secondary DNS Server 434
- Security Mode 176
- Security Algorithm 531
- Segment Pending Requests 313
- Segment Send Interval 313
- Select radio 467
- Select vendor 449
- Select analogue interface 404
- Select file 510
- Select ISDN interface 404
- Selected Ports 378
- Selection 393
- Send 540
- Send Version 240
- Send Certificate Chains 359
- Send Certificate Request Payloads 359
- Send CRLs 359
- Send information to 528
- Send Initial Contact Message 358
- Send Key Hash Payloads 359
- Sent Database Description Packets 544
- Sent Hello Messages 544
- Sent Link State Acknowledge Packets 544
- Sent Link State Request Packets 544
- Sent Link State Update Packets 544
- Sequence Age 543
- Serial Number 71
- Server 444
- Server Address 467
- Server Timeout 100
- Server URL 467
- Server Failures 439
- Server IP Address 98 , 103
- Service 135 , 201 , 211 , 214 , 229 , 385 , 535 , 536
- Service Categories 309
- Session Timeout 399
- Session Border Controller Mode 425
- Set status 467
- Set Time 79
- Set COS value (802.1p/Layer 2) 217
- Set Date 79
- Set DSCP/TOS value (Layer 3) 217
- Set interface status 467
- Severity 520
- SHDSL 141
- SHDSL Configuration 141
- SHDSL Type 142
- Short Guard Interval 171
- Short Retry Limit 171
- Shortest Path Tree 548
- Show passwords and keys in clear text 77
- Signal dBm 185
- Silent Deny 234
- Silent Deny 198
- SIM Card Uses PIN 120
- SIP Endpoints 400
- SIP Accounts 408
- SIP Endpoint IP Address 404 , 409
- SIP Header Field(s) for Caller Address 412
- SIP Proxies 398
- Slave Access Points 163
- Slave AP location 160
- Slave AP configuration 162
- SMS Device 524
- SMTP Authentication 523
- SMTP Server 523
- SNMP 89 , 95 , 525
- SNMP Version 95
- SNMP Listen UDP Port 95
- SNMP Read Community 76
- SNMP Trap Broadcasting 525
- SNMP Trap Community 525
- SNMP Trap Hosts 526
- SNMP Trap Options 525
- SNMP Trap UDP Port 525
- SNMP Write Community 76

- Software & Configuration 508
 - Sort Order 406 , 413
 - Source 385
 - Source Interface 193 , 211 , 261
 - Source Location 467
 - Source Port 193 , 201 , 333
 - Source Port/Range 201 , 211 , 214 , 229
 - Source Location 187 , 510
 - Source File Name 510
 - Source IP Address 462 , 467 , 479 , 484
 - Source IP Address/Netmask 201 , 211 , 214 , 229 , 333
 - Source IP Address 548 , 549 , 551 , 551
 - Source Port Range 394
 - Special Handling Timer 211
 - Special Session Handling 209
 - Specific Ports 378
 - Specify bandwidth 388
 - Speed Dialing 427
 - SSH 89 , 91
 - SSH Port 92
 - SSH service active 92
 - SSID 185
 - Stack 535
 - Start Mode 334
 - Start Time 465
 - Start Time 536
 - State 541 , 542
 - State/Province 113
 - Static Blacklist 185
 - Static Hosts 435
 - Statistics 439 , 536 , 543
 - Status 70 , 462 , 531 , 533 , 535 , 537 , 538 , 541
 - Stop Time 465
 - Subject 520
 - Subject Name 467
 - Subsystem 530
 - Successful Trials 479
 - Successfully Answered Queries 439
 - Summary 113
 - Surveillance 478
 - Sustained Cell Rate (SCR) 310
 - Switch Port 123
 - Sync SAs with ISP interface state 358
 - Synchronisation Mode 504
 - Syslog 515
 - Syslog Servers 515
 - System 73
 - System Logic 510
 - System Name 73
 - System Licences 82
 - System Messages 530
 - System Reboot 514
 - System Management 70
 - System Date 71
- T**
- TACACS+ 102
 - TACACS+ Secret 103
 - TCP Inactivity 390
 - TCP Keepalives 94
 - TCP Port 104
 - TCP-MSS Clamping 148
 - Telnet 89
 - Temperature 482
 - Terms & Conditions 492
 - Third Timeserver 80
 - Ticket Type 494
 - Time 530
 - Time Condition 465
 - Time Update Interval 80
 - Time Update Policy 80
 - Time Zone 79
 - Timeout 104 , 487
 - Timeslot Matrix 133
 - Timeslot Range 133
 - Timeslot Selection 133
 - Timestamp 516
 - Total 534
 - Traceroute Test 507
 - Tracking IP Address 208
 - Traffic Direction 462
 - Traffic shaping 220 , 223 , 388
 - Transfer Mode 339

- Transfer own IP address over ISDN/
 - GSM 339
- Transferred Traffic 462
- Transmit Key 176
- Transmit Power 165
- Transmit Shaping 139
- Transparent MAC Address 88
- Trials 462 , 484
- Trigger 461 , 481 , 483
- Trigger Status 467
- Triggered Hello Interval 264
- Trunk Mode 409
- TTL 436
- Tunnel Profile 365
- Tunnel Profiles 361
- Tx Bytes 537 , 538
- Tx Errors 537
- Tx Packets 537 , 538
- Type 214 , 229 , 305 , 394 , 416 , 537 , 543
- Type of Endpoint 401
- Type of Messages 516
- Type of traffic 199
- Type of attack 185

U

- UDP Inactivity 390
- UDP Destination Port 362
- UDP Destination Port 370 , 528
- UDP Port 100
- UDP Source Port 362
- UDP Source Port Selection 370
- Unchanged for 537
- Unsuccessful Trials 479
- Update Interval 444
- Update Path 444
- Update Interval 528
- Update Timer 245
- UPnP 487
- UPnP Status 489
- UPnP TCP Port 489
- Upstream 139
- Upstream Join State 547 , 548 , 548
- Upstream Join Timer 547 , 548 , 548

- Upstream Neighbor IP Address 547 , 548 , 548
- Upstream Override Timer 549
- Uptime 71 , 546 , 547 , 548 , 548 , 549 , 550 , 551 , 551
- URL 187 , 510
- URL / IP Address 457
- URL Path Depth 453
- URL SCEP Server URL 467
- Usage Type 291 , 298
- Use CRL 467
- Use as Stub interface 263
- Use PFS Group 350
- Use Zero Cookies 358
- Used Channel 165
- User 458
- User Defined Channel Plan 171
- User Name 272 , 278 , 283 , 288 , 296 , 365 , 372 , 409 , 442 , 459 , 523 , 539
- Users 355 , 364

V

- Vendor Mode 98
- Version Check 467
- View 541 , 545 , 547 , 550
- Virtual Routers 497
- Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI) 305
- Virtual Channel Connection (VCC) 310 , 312
- Virtual Interface Priority 500
- Virtual Path Connection (VPC) 312
- Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) 305
- Virtual Router 496
- Virtual Router ID 500 , 503 , 504
- Virtual Router Interface 500
- Virtual Router Backup 496
- Virtual Router IP Address 500
- Virtual Router Master 496
- VLAN 149 , 180 , 272
- VLAN Identifier 151
- VLAN Members 151
- VLAN ID 146 , 180 , 272
- VLAN Name 151

VLANs 151
VoIP 398
VPN 324
VR Synchronisation 503
VRRP Advertisement 496
VRRP router 496

W

Walled Garden 492
Walled Garden URL 492
Walled Network / Netmask 492
WAN 269
Web Filter 452
Web Filter Status 453
Weight 223
WEP Key 1-4 176
Whitelisted 457
Wildcard 443
Wildcard Mode 88
Wildcard MAC Address 88
WINS Server 431
Wire Mode 142
Wireless Mode 170
Wireless Networks (VSS) 174 , 182
WLC SSID 467
WMM 175
WPA Cipher 176
WPA Mode 176
WPA2 Cipher 176
Write certificate in configuration 467

X

X.31 (X.25 in D Channel) 128
X.31 TEI Service 128
X.31 TEI Value 128
X.75 Layer 2 Mode 133
XAUTH Profile 334
XAUTH Profiles 354

Z

Zero Cookie Size 358